NEW HELLO

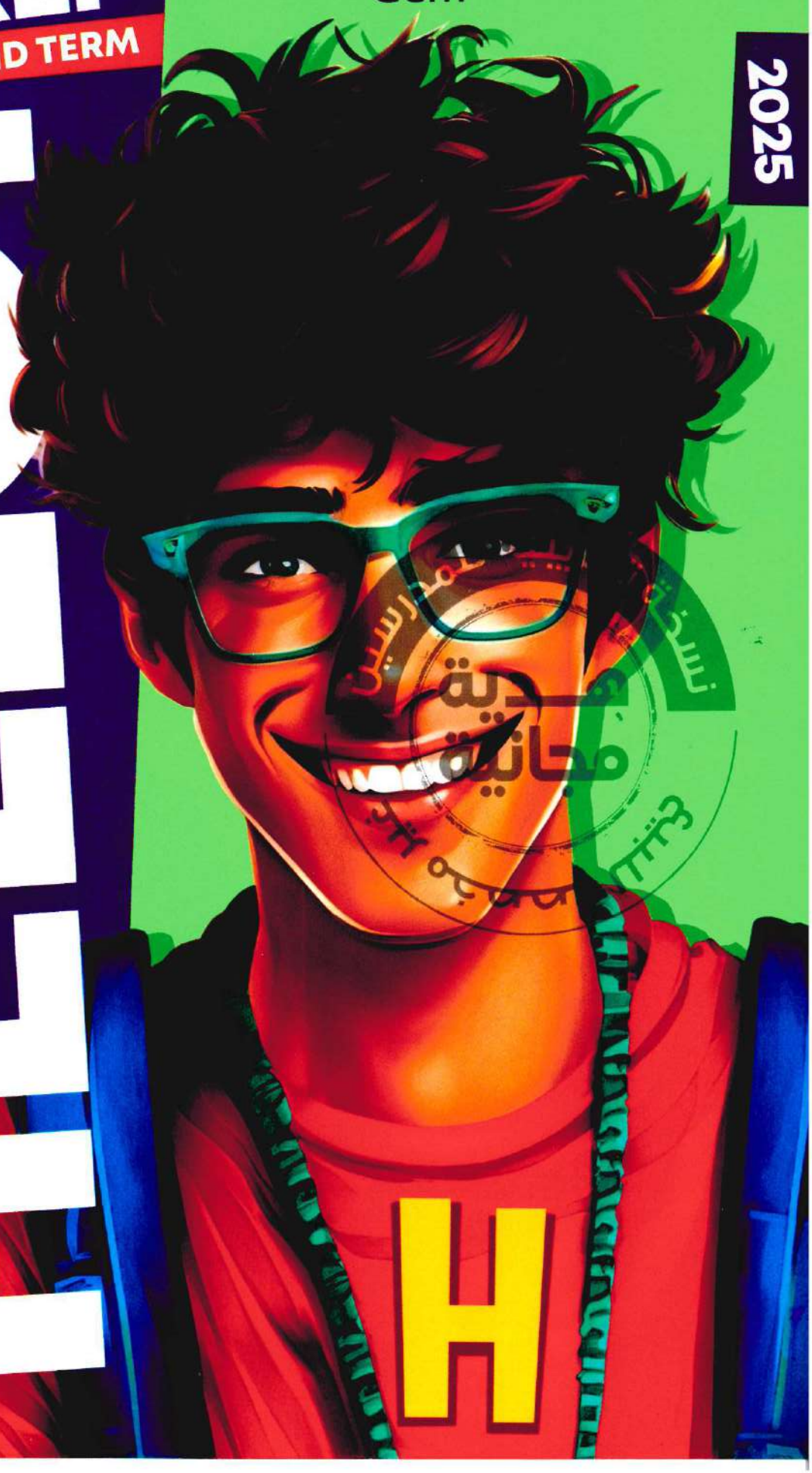
2nd PREP

SECOND TERM

ALADWAA Gem

أكبر بنك أسئلة على الشهور

2025



Contents

Module 4

Unit 7 — Technology and the future 6

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 7 40

Unit 8 — You are what you eat 44

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 8 86

Units 7 & 8 Question Bank 90

Module 5

Unit 9 — Watch, listen and make 93

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 9 126

Review — Review C 130

Unit 10 — We are what we wear 134

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 10 164

Units 9 & 10 Question Bank 168

Module 6

Unit 11 — The future of our planet 171

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 11 207

Unit 12 — Languages and learning 211

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 12 246

Units 11 & 12 Question Bank 250

Review — Review D 252

Answers — Listening Texts 254

Challenging Questions Answers 255

توزيع منهج اللغة الإنجليزية للصف الثانى الإعدادى للعام الدراسى 2025-2024

الفصل الدراسى الثانى

Month	New Hello! English for preparatory schools Year Two (SB + WB)
February	Unit 7
March	Unit 8 + Unit 9 + Review C + Unit 10
April	Unit 10 Cont. + Unit 11 + Unit 12
May	Review D + General Revision

MODULE 4

مقرر الشهور
فبراير ومارس



Unit 7 Technology and the future

Unit 8 You are what you eat

Module 4 Question Bank

Selected from Previous Exams



Unit 7

TECHNOLOGY AND THE FUTURE

OBJECTIVES OF THE UNIT

Reading	A magazine article about online shopping; *The Time Machine*; a poster about the dangers of technology
Writing	A reply to an online message; a formal email about a problem with a delivery
Listening	A discussion about new inventions; people's problems with technology and suggested solutions
Speaking	Giving opinions about inventions and technology; a debate
Language	If/When + should for advice
Life Skills	Critical thinking: technological awareness

WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات SB تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب

STUDY Lessons 1 & 2

Watch a video

SB pages 2 - 5 | WB pages 70 & 71

A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

app (n)	تطبيق	invention (n)	اختراع
benefit (n)	فائدة	motorbike (n)	دراجة نارية
clever jacket (n)	سترة ذكية	online shopping (n)	التسوق عبر الإنترنت
delivery (n)	توصيل/تسليم	push (ed) (v)	يدفع
electricity (n)	كهرباء	shop (ped) online	يتسوق عبر الإنترنت
headphones (n)	سماعات الرأس	solar panels (n)	ألواح الطاقة الشمسية
helicopter (n)	طائرة عمودية/هليكوبتر	speed (n)	سرعة
invent (ed) (v)	يخترع	technology (n)	التكنولوجيا

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

article (n)	مقال	prediction (n)	تنبؤ
businesses (n)	أعمال تجارية	prefer (red) (v)	يفضل
description (n)	وصف	real (adj)	حقيقى
environment (n)	البيئة	resources (n)	موارد
flying (adj)	طائر (شىء يطير)	science fiction (n)	خيال علمى
free time (n)	وقت الفراغ	used (adj)	مستخدَم/مستعمَل
owe (d) (v)	يدين	war (n)	حرب
pass (ed) (v)	ينجح فى/يجتاز	wing (n)	جناح

Check Point

Choose and complete: free – speed – delivery – push

1. I always take the train to work as it moves at high ..... .
2. Nayera spends her ..... time learning a new language.
3. Please, ... the door to open it.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

(n) = noun | (adj) = adjective | (prep) = preposition
(v) = verb | (adv) = adverb | (conj) = conjunction

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

do	the shopping	يقوم بالتسوق		a story	يؤلف قصة
have	a choice	لديه اختيار	make	electricity	يولد كهرباء
take	turns	يتبادل الأدوار		pollution	يسبب تلوثًا

Prepositions — حروف الجر

agree/disagree with	يتفق/لا يتفق مع	look online for	يبحث على الإنترنت عن
at the speed of	على سرعة	make into	يُحول إلى
change into	يتحول/ يتغير إلى	on the road	على الطريق
famous for	مشهور بـ	push into the air	يدفع فى الهواء
find out about	يعرف/يكتشف عن	translate into	يترجم إلى
for or against	مع أو ضد	useful for	مفيد لـ
good for	مفيد لـ	wait for	ينتظر لـ

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.	Present		Past simple	P.P.
become	يصبح	became	become	fly	يطير	flew	flown
drive	يقود/يسوق	drove	driven	spend	يقضى/ينفق	spent	spent
find	يجد	found	found	wear	يرتدى/يلبس	wore	worn

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها	Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
important	هام	unimportant	غير هام	save	يدخر/يوفر	waste	يهدر/يضيع
online	متصل بالإنترنت	offline	غير متصل بالإنترنت	strong	قوى	weak	ضعيف
pass	ينجح فى	fail	يفشل فى	useful	مفيد	useless	عديم الفائدة

Check Point

Choose and complete: into – strong – spend – have – at

1. We ..... a choice of watching TV or playing computer games.
2. This invention can push you into the air ..... the speed of a fast car.
3. You are quite weak. You should eat to be ..... .
4. I don't want to ..... too much money on clothes.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر وتصريفات الأفعال والكلمات وعكسها.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 **use + شئ + (to + inf.)** — يستخدم .... لـ

- This clever jacket uses an app to make you warmer.

useful for + something/(inf. + ing) — مفيد لـ

- My new car will be very useful for travelling.

2 **help + مفعول + (inf. / to + inf.)** — يساعد

- It helps people speak/to speak other languages.

3 **spend + وقت + (inf. + ing)** — يقضى

- I don't want to spend lots of time travelling to the shops.

waste + وقت + (inf. + ing) — يهدر

- I don't like to waste time waiting for a delivery.

prefer + (inf. + ing) — يفضل

- I prefer going to real shops in my city.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You shouldn't spend all your time ..... video games.
   a) play b) to play c) playing d) to playing
2. Farmers use their animals ..... help them plant their fields.
   a) for b) to c) in d) at
3. My mother always helps me ..... my lessons.
   a) study b) to study c) studying d) a & b

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word — الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning) — مرادفها
pass — ينجح فى	succeed in — ينجح فى
useful — مفيد	helpful — مساعد/مفيد

Suffix اللاحقة

Word — الكلمة	Suffix — اللاحقة	Function — الوظيفة	The new word — الكلمة الجديدة
invent (v) — يخترع	-ion	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	invention (n) — اختراع
use (v) — يستخدم	-ful	تحويل الفعل إلى صفة	useful (adj) — مفيد

Similar Spelling - Different Meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
invent	يخترع	invite	يدعو
invention	اختراع	invitation	دعوة

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

B Reading & Listening Skills

Listening Text

Lesson 1

Pre-listening question:

- Which invention do you think the world needs today?

Listen to four people. Match the inventions 1 – 4 on page 2 with the people who talk about them. *SB page 3*

(Is it a motorbike (1)? Is it a helicopter (2)? No, this invention is half-motorbike and half-helicopter! It can push you into the air at the speed (3) of a fast car!)

Hatem Wow! That looks so cool! I'm not sure it's very useful though. It won't be able to fly very high, will it?

(When these headphones (4) hear another language, they can translate (5) it into your language.)

Manal I think lots of people will want to buy one of these; they'll be very useful for travelling. It won't help people to speak other languages though, will it? It's only good for listening.

(1) دراجة نارية
(2) هليكوبتر/طائرة عمودية
(3) سرعة
(4) سماعات الرأس
(5) يترجم
(6) سترة ذكية
(7) تطبيق
(8) ألواح الطاقة الشمسية
(9) اختراع
(10) ينتج كهرباء





(This clever jacket (6) uses an app (7) to make you warmer when the weather is cold.)

Tarek I think this is a good idea for people in cold places. It won't be very useful for me though! Maybe they will make one to make people feel cooler. That would be good here in the summer!



(Change roads into solar panels (8)! This invention (9) uses strong glass that you can drive on and make electricity (10) at the same time.)

Sawsan I think that is an amazing invention. I hope they will build lots of these in Egypt. We have lots of sun and we could make lots of electricity.



Post-listening question:

- Do you agree with Tarek that the clever jacket won't be useful in Egypt? Why?

Pre-reading question:

- How was your experience of shopping online?

Read the article. *SB page 4*

Shopping online – Yes or No?

Injy – I love online shopping[1]!
Shopping online is great! Firstly, it saves me time[2].
I don't want to spend lots of time travelling to the shops. I can stay at home and buy the things I want in a few minutes. Secondly, I have more choices[3] online. Also, if more people shop online[4], there will be fewer cars on the road and less pollution[5]! I will do all my shopping[6] online when I am older.

(1) التسوق عبر الإنترنت
(2) يوفر وقتًا
(3) خيارات
(4) يتسوق عبر الإنترنت
(5) تلوث
(6) يقوم بكل التسوق
(7) توصيل/تسليم
(8) أعمال تجارية



Baher – I prefer going to real shops in my city.
Every time I buy clothes online, the thing that I buy is wrong! At a shop, I can see what I am buying and I can try it first. Also, I don't like to waste time waiting for a delivery[7] – I want things now!
If everyone shops online, the shops in our towns and cities will close. If they close, then lots of other businesses[8] like cafés will close, too.



Choose the correct words. *WB page 71*

Some people think that online shopping **saves** time and money. Other people like to **spend** time with friends at the shops. We all **have** the choice to either do online shopping or go to shops, but you need to think **of** the benefits of both first.

Comprehension Skills

"Critical Thinking Skill" «مهارة التفكير النقدى»

- What is critical thinking?

ما هى مهارة التفكير النقدى؟

- هـو عمليـة تحليل وتقييـم المعلومات التى جمعـت من خلال الملاحظة وبناء رأى نقدى شـخصى ودائمًـا ما تكـون إجابـة هذه النوعية من الأسـئلة غير مرتبطة بإجابة واحدة، ولكن تعتمـد الإجابة على فهمك وتحليلك للمعلومات الواردة بالفقرة أو النص.

Example:
What do you think of online shopping?
I think online shopping is great as it saves a lot of time.

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An ..... is a small computer program that we can use on a mobile. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) blog b) email c) letter d) app
2. This ..... jacket uses an app to make you warmer. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) stupid b) clever c) bored d) ugly
3. I ordered a medium pizza, but the ..... was late. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
   a) travelling b) delivery c) driving d) diving
4. I like to use my ..... to listen to music on my mobile phone. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٤
   a) charger b) headphones c) laptop d) microphones
5. The road is not big enough for cars, but you can go down it on a ..... . السويس ٢٠٢٤
   a) helicopter b) motorbike c) headphone d) computer
6. I would like to ..... a machine to tidy my bedroom! القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) invite b) invent c) travel d) disappear
7. Some people think shopping online ..... time. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
   a) cleans b) saves c) reads d) speeds
8. We should use ..... on buildings in sunny countries like Egypt. أسوان ٢٠٢٤
   a) wind turbines b) solar panels c) mobile phones d) plastic bottles
9. Which ..... do you think has changed our lives the most? القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) invention b) internet c) astronaut d) copy
10. Regular exercise has many ..... for your health.
    a) resources b) benefits c) troubles d) inventions
11. Many people can ..... their shopping online. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
    a) go b) do c) save d) waste
12. My dad owns two small ..... in town. He has many workers there.
    a) inventions b) businesses c) resources d) apps
13. I agree ..... your idea to go to the park.
    a) with b) in c) for d) at
14. We ..... a lot to our parents and teachers.
    a) owe b) waste c) save d) try
15. Cutting down trees can ..... pollution worse by reducing clean air.
    a) do b) take c) make d) have
16. My friend asked me to wait ..... her at the bus stop.
    a) into b) to c) for d) at

C Language

The future with "will" المستقبل

e.g. I will live in a big city when I'm older.

Usage الاستخدام

We use "will + inf. مصدر الفعل" to talk about future predictions. (without evidence)

تستخدم للتحدث عن التنبؤات المستقبلية. (تنبؤ بدون دليل)

e.g. The new bikes will **be** very useful for travelling.

Form التكوين

1. Affirmative الإثبات

Subject الفاعل + **will ('ll)** + **inf.** مصدر الفعل

Subject:
I, We, They, You, He, She, It
اسم مفرد/ اسم جمع

e.g. - Sara will **go** to the cinema tonight.
- They will **buy** a new car next month.

2. Negative النفى

Subject الفاعل + **will not (won't)** + **inf.** مصدر الفعل

e.g. - My father will not (won't) **come** late tonight.
- Anas and Kady won't **visit** their grandparents tomorrow morning.

Question السؤال

1. Yes/No question

- السؤال بهل:

Will + **subject** الفاعل + **inf.** مصدر الفعل?

e.g. **A:** Will you **travel** to Alexandria next holiday? **B:** Yes, I will./ **B:** No, I won't.

لاحظ: يتم تحويل you فى السؤال إلى I/ we فى الإجابة.

2. Wh- question

- السؤال بأداة استفهام:

Q. Word أداة استفهام + **will** + **subject** الفاعل + **inf.** مصدر الفعل?

e.g. - When will Ali **return** home? - How will we **go** to the club?

Key words الكلمات الدالة

I'm sure – I think – I promise – I hope – maybe – in the future – soon – if/ when

e.g. - **Maybe** they will make a jacket to help people be cooler.
- **I hope** the weather will be nice for our picnic.

لاحظ أن If/ When من الكلمات الدالة ولكن لها قاعدة خاصة حيث أنها تربط بين جملتين.

If/When إذا/عندما

Usage الاستخدام

We use If/ When to talk about things in the future which we think will probably happen. نستخدم (إذا/عندما) للتحدث عن أشياء فى المستقبل نعتقد أنها من المحتمل أن تحدث.

e.g. **If** I finish studying my lessons early today, I will go to the party.

Form التكوين

If/When + subject الفاعل **+ present simple** مضارع بسيط**,**

subject الفاعل **+ will/won't + inf.** مصدر الفعل

e.g. **If** everyone shops online, the shops in our towns and cities will close.

Subject + will/won't + inf. + if/when + subject + present simple

e.g. Samera will do all her shopping online **when** she is older.

لاحظ أن

١- عند التعبير عن القدرة على عمل شىء فى المستقبل نستخدم:

Subject الفاعل **+** (will/won't) **be able to** **+ inf.** مصدر الفعل سوف يكون قادرًا على

e.g. - If you exercise regularly, you will be able to **improve** your health.

- If I'm busy, I won't be able to **go** shopping with my friends.

٢- استخدام (will) مع المجهول passive:

Object المفعول به **+** will/won't **+ be +** التصريف الثالث للفعل **Past Participle (P.P.)**

e.g. I hope the flying motorbike will **be invented** soon.

Will **+ object** المفعول به **+ be +** التصريف الثالث للفعل **Past Participle (P.P.)?**

e.g. Will these inventions **be used** very much in Egypt?

Got it ?

تُمكِّنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If he saves enough money, he ..... (buy) a new laptop.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (will buy) لوجود If التى يتبعها جملة فى المضارع البسيط، تليها جملة فى المستقبل.

2. If you practise enough, you ..... (able) to play the guitar fluently.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (will be able) لأنها تعبر عن قدرة فى المستقبل.

3. The car ..... (will repair) next week.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (will be repaired) لأن الجملة تبدأ بالمفعول وهى فى زمن المستقبل لوجود next.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I hope the weather ..... good on our trip.
   a) going to be b) won't be c) will be d) not going to be
2. You ..... travel to Italy this summer. You will travel to Canada.
   a) will b) won't c) isn't d) doesn't
3. ..... go to the beach tomorrow?
   a) Will they b) They will c) Do they d) They have to
4. What ..... your family do next summer holiday?
   a) are b) will c) do d) have
5. Ramez will watch a film when he ..... his homework.
   a) will finish b) finishing c) finish d) finishes
6. It will not snow if it ..... warm.
   a) will b) will be c) does d) is
7. My brother ..... his friend if he gets his phone back.
   a) call b) called c) will call d) calling
8. Mayada and Nancy will bake cookies if they ..... time.
   a) will have b) have c) had d) has
9. My sister and I will be ..... the house this weekend.
   a) cleaned b) able to clean c) clean d) cleans
10. Nelly won't ..... a new car if her old one works fine.
    a) buying b) buy c) buys d) to buy

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I won't go to my friend's wedding if he ..... (not/ invite) me.
2. Shahenda ..... (not) go to the party if she feels unwell.
3. Where ..... (you will) go if it rains?
4. Will he finish his homework if he ..... (start) now?
5. I hope my car ..... (repair) well tomorrow.

Time to Practise

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I don't think we ..... our project on time. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) finish b) will finish c) finished d) to finish
2. This machine ..... be able to fly very high. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) was b) are c) is d) won't
3. If everyone ..... online, the shops in our towns will close. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٤
   a) shop b) shops c) shopped d) will shop
4. If he has free time, he ..... to the park. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
   a) go b) will go c) went d) going
5. What clothes will I wear if it ..... cold? دمياط ٢٠٢٤
   a) does b) will be c) was d) is
6. If you listen to too much music, you ..... get a headache. دمياط ٢٠٢٤
   a) should b) would c) won't d) will
7. If Ahmed ..... hard, he will pass the exam. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) will study b) study c) studied d) studies
8. Ola will take this medicine if she ..... sick. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) feels b) feel c) felt d) will feel
9. If you ..... exercise, you will be healthy. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) will do b) have done c) should do d) do
10. We won't go to the beach this weekend if it ..... very windy. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
    a) is b) will be c) was d) should be

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I think Ahmed ..... (arrive) next Thursday. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
2. Sama ..... (not/travel) abroad when she leaves school. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
3. If you have a car, ... (you will) drive me to work? القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
4. If I'm not ill, I ..... (not/ take) the medicine. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
5. If you ..... (played) well, you will win the match. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

D Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

1. Speaking

Discussing new inventions

مناقشة الاختراعات الحديثة

Situation ما يقال فى هذا الموقف **Response** جملة الرد

online

Which of the inventions do you think will become the most used? Why?
أى من الاختراعات تعتقد أنه سيصبح الأكثر استخدامًا؟ ولماذا؟

I think the headphones will become the most used because we need to communicate with people from different countries.
أعتقد أن سماعات الأذن ستصبح الأكثر استخدامًا؛ لأننا بحاجة للتواصل مع أشخاص من مختلف الدول.

Which of the things do you think won't be used very much in Egypt? Why not?
أى من الأشياء تعتقد أنها لن تصبح مستخدمة بشكل كبير فى مصر؟ ولمَ لا؟

I agree that the jacket won't be very useful in Egypt because the weather is fine.
أعتقد أنه لن يتم استخدام الجاكيت بشكل كبير؛ لأن الجو رائع فى مصر.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue: الشرقية ٢٠٢٤

Waleed is talking with Alaa about the internet.

Waleed : The internet is very important in our life. Do you agree?
Alaa : (1)..... . Why do you think it is very important?
Waleed : (2)..... .
Alaa : Saves time! How does it save time?
Waleed : (3)..... .
Alaa : (4).....?
Waleed : Yes, I did research last year on the internet.
Alaa : (5).....?
Waleed : It was about pollution in Cairo.
Alaa : That's interesting.

2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about new inventions

كيفية الكتابة عن الاختراعات الحديثة

- Inventions are very important because they make our life easier and better.
- I think scientists will invent (اسم الاختراع).
- The (الاختراع) can (نكتب تفاصيل عمّا يمكن للاختراع القيام به).
- I also think they will invent (اسم الاختراع).
- New inventions will have a great effect on our lives.

Writing tips

Before starting writing, you should brainstorm ideas and organise your topic.

قبل البدء فى الكتابة فكر جيدًا فيما سوف تتحدث عنه و قم بترتيب أفكارك.

Example

New inventions

Inventions are very important because they make our lives easier and better. Scientists work hard to invent new things. I think they will invent new headphones. These headphones can translate any language. When these headphones hear another language, they can translate it into your language. I also think they will invent a new machine that can push you into the air at the speed of a fast car. It's half-motorbike and half-helicopter. They will probably invent a new jacket. It's a clever jacket. It uses an app to make you warmer when the weather is cold. There will also be new roads. They will change roads into solar panels. These roads use strong glass that you can drive on and make electricity at the same time. New inventions will have a great effect on our lives.

Check Point

Write a paragraph on:

"The most useful invention"

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

بنى سويف ٢٠٢٤

1. What do you think of shopping online?
   a) Bad. b) Expensive. c) Cheap. d) Great.
2. What does shopping online save?
   a) Cars. b) Time. c) Money. d) Water.
3. You can stay at ..... while shopping online.
   a) home b) the school c) the park d) the hotel
4. If more people shop online, the streets will be less ..... .
   a) clean b) polluted c) attractive d) nice

2 Complete the following dialogue:

المنوفية ٢٠٢٢

Wafaa is talking with Rahma about technology.

Wafaa : What are you reading about, Rahma?
Rahma : (1)..... .
Wafaa : Are you interested in technology?
Rahma : (2)..... .
Wafaa : (3).....?
Rahma : I think the mobile phone is the most important invention.
Wafaa : (4)..... . For me, the internet is more important.
Rahma : (5).....?
Wafaa : Because it helps us do research and get many things.
Rahma : I agree with you.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. ..... are like planes, but they do not have wings. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
   a) Computers b) Ships c) Helicopters d) Motorbikes
2. Read the sentence and ..... it into Arabic. القليوبية ٢٠٢٤
   a) cook b) design c) translate d) think
3. Old cars and factory rubbish cause the problem of ..... . القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) correction b) population c) pollution d) technology
4. Scientists want to find new ways to ..... electricity. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) do b) make c) explore d) cover
5. We will ..... turns reading aloud from the book.
   a) take b) have c) make d) do

6. Ahmed ..... his driving test. He has to practise a lot. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣

a) passed b) fell c) failed d) succeeded

7. If you go to the Egyptian Museum in Cairo this afternoon, you ..... Ali because he is in Luxor. WB

a) should see b) will see c) won't see d) don't see

8. Life ..... easier in the future. الجيزة ٢٠٢٢

a) is b) was c) will be d) were

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If Ali ..... (go) to Giza, he will visit the Pyramids. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٤
2. Wael ..... (not/watch) TV if he has to study.
3. ..... (Does) your mother bake a cake if she has all the ingredients?
4. ..... (you/come) if we invite you to the wedding party?
5. If she ..... (eat) too much candy, she will get a stomachache.

5 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Modern inventions" بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

1. I could ..... the distant thunder رعد, but I wasn't sure if it would rain.

a) listen b) hear c) see d) watch

2. My brother ..... three languages.

a) says b) tells c) talks d) speaks

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If you freeze water, it ..... (turn) into ice.
2. I hope ..... (get) high marks in the next exam.

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك فى كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

QUESTION	1	2	3	4	5
TACKLES	Listening	Speaking	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
MARK					

STUDY Lessons 3 & 4

Watch a video

SB pages 6 - 8 | WB pages 72 & 73

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

addicted (to) (adj)	مدمن (لـ)	headache (n)	صداع
advice (n)	نصيحة	lever (n)	رافعة/عتلة/مقبض
check (ed) (v)	يراجع/يفحص	model (n)	نموذج
climate change (n)	التغير المناخى	pain (n)	ألم
copy (y ied) (n/v)	نسخة/ينسخ	suddenly (adv)	فجأة
expert (n/adj)	خبير	take away (v)	يبعِد
explore (d) (v)	يستكشف	traveller (n)	مسافر

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

allow (ed) (v)	يسمح	laugh (ed) (v)	يضحك
communicate (d) (v)	يتواصل	planet (n)	كوكب
handle (n)	مقبض	reply (y ied) (v/n)	يرد/استجابة/رد
illness (n)	مرض	sound like	يبدو مثل
instead (adv)	بدلًا من	strange (adj)	غريب

Check Point

Choose and complete: Travellers – pain – illness – handle

1. Shorouk felt a sharp ..... in her leg when she fell down.
2. The ..... of the door is broken, so we can't open it.
3. ..... like to take photos of the famous buildings.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

build/make	a machine	يبنى آلة	make	friends with	يكون صداقات مع
drop	rubbish	يلقى القمامة	share	a photo	ينشر صورة
have	a break	يأخذ استراحة	tidy	a bedroom	يرتب غرفة النوم
	a headache	لديه صداع	feel	tired/ worried	يشعر بالتعب/ بالقلق
give	advice	يعطى نصيحة			

Prepositions — حروف الجر

believe in	يؤمن بـ	pick up	يلتقط
by mistake	عن طريق الخطأ	a problem with	مشكلة فى
for the first time	لأول مرة	talk (ed) to	يتكلم إلى
on social media	على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى	through time/space	عبر الزمن أو الفضاء
for a long time	لمدة طويلة	worried about	قلق على

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
build يبنى	built	built	show يبين/يعرض	showed	shown
cost يكلف	cost	cost	sleep ينام	slept	slept
say يقول	said	said	tell يخبر	told	told

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym) عكسها	Word الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym) عكسها
disappear يختفى	appear يظهر	impossible مستحيل	possible ممكن
horrible رهيب/فظيع	fantastic رائع	pull يسحب/يشد/يجر	push يدفع
inside داخل	outside خارج	turn on يفتح (جهاز)	turn off يغلق (جهاز)

Check Point

Choose and complete: on – with – drop – costs – off

1. Do not ..... rubbish on the ground.
2. There is a problem ..... the internet connection.
3. This watch is very expensive. It ..... too much.
4. Please, turn ..... the light, it's too dark in here.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر وتصريفات الأفعال والكلمات وعكسها.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 use + شئ + for + (n/inf. + ing) — يستخدم لـ

- He uses his laptop for work.
- We use the pen for writing.

2 stop + (inf. + ing) — يتوقف عن (فعل شىء)

- You should stop watching too much TV.

3 take + وقت + (to + inf.) — يستغرق

- It took me two years to build the time machine.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Nancy decided to stop ..... and have a break.
   a) writing b) write c) writes d) wrote
2. It's important to take time ..... after a long, tiring day.
   a) to relaxing b) relaxing c) relax d) to relax
3. I often use my bicycle ..... to work during the week.
   a) travelling b) for travelling c) travel d) to travelling

Vocabulary Builder



جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Definitions — التعريفات

addicted مدمن	always needs to do or have something
by mistake عن طريق الخطأ	without planning or wanting to do something
disappear يختفى	suddenly go somewhere and become impossible to find
explore يستكشف	look around a place where you have never been in order to find out what is there
impossible مستحيل	if an action or event is impossible, it cannot happen or be done
lever رافعة	a handle that you push or pull to make a machine work
pull يسحب	hold something and move it towards you
social media وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى	websites and apps that allow people to talk to each other on the internet

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning) مرادفها
horrible رهيب/فظيع	terrible فظيع
turn on يفتح (جهاز)	switch on يفتح (جهاز)

Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
head (n) رأس	-ache	تعطى معنى ألم	headache (n) صداع

Prefix البادئة

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Word الكلمة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
dis-	تعطى عكس المعنى	appear (v) يظهر	disappear (v) يختفى
im-		possible (adj) ممكن	impossible (adj) غير ممكن/ مستحيل

Similar Spelling - Different Meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
drop	يلقى	drip	ينقط
lever	رافعة/عتلة/مقبض	liver	الكبد (عضو جسدى)
model	نموذج	medal	ميدالية
planet	كوكب	plant	نبات
reply	يرد	replay	يعيد التشغيل

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

B Reading & Listening Skills

Listening Text

Lesson 3

SB page 6

Listen to these four people talking about the problems they have with technology.

Narrator **Shady**

Shady I'm not sleeping very well at the moment. I usually watch some videos on the internet before I go to sleep but sometimes I watch them for a few hours and then I can't sleep. My head often hurts (1) lots in the morning, too.



Narrator **Hala**

Hala I found this great online (2) game but I didn't know that when I got new things on it, it costs (3) real money! I hope (4) my parents aren't going to be angry when I tell them how much money I spent.



Narrator **Randa**

Randa I love social media (5), I love watching videos online and I love talking to my friends on my phone. But now I feel worried if I don't have my phone or I can't check (6) it. I think it is starting to become a problem.



Narrator **Adam**

Adam My friends and I like to put funny (7) pictures online but when I share (8) a photo, everyone says my clothes are not cool or my hair looks strange (9). It makes me feel sad.



(1) يؤلم (2) عبر الإنترنت (3) يكلف

(4) يأمل (5) وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى (6) يفحص

(7) مضحك (8) يشارك (9) غريب

Pre-reading question:

- Would you like to travel in time? Where would you like to go? Why?

Read part of the story *The Time Machine* and answer the questions.

SB page 8

The Time Machine (1)

by H. G. Wells



London, England, 1895

A group of friends meet for dinner at the Time Traveller's house. After dinner, the Time Traveller (2) asks his friends if they think that it is possible to travel through time.

"It's impossible (3)!" they reply, "We can only travel through space (4), not time."

The Time Traveller shows them a small model of a machine that he has in his hand.

"This is a copy of a machine that I believe (5) can go through time. It took me two years to build," he tells them. The friends laugh.

"Pull (6) this lever (7)," he tells one of them.

They feel some wind and then the machine suddenly disappears (8)!

"Where is it?" the other men ask.

"The model machine is in the future," the Time Traveller says. "Would you like to see the real machine?" he asks.

He takes them to another room. Inside the room is another, bigger machine. It is not finished.

"In this machine," he says "I will explore (9) the past and the future!"

(1) آلة الزمن

(2) مسافر عبر الزمن

(3) مستحيل

(4) الفضاء

(5) يؤمن/يعتقد

(6) يسحب/يجر/يشد

(7) رافعة/مقبض

(8) يختفى

(9) يستكشف

Comprehension Skills

"Critical Thinking Skill" «مهارة التفكير النقدى»

كما ذكرنا من قبل هو عملية تحليل وتقييم المعلومات التى جمعت من خلال الملاحظة، والسؤال فى الغالب يأتى فى اتجاهين:

الأول: أن يسألك عن رأيك بناء على التفكير والاستنتاجات (تمت مناقشته من قبل).

الثانى: أن يضعك محل أحد الاشخاص ويسألك عن تصرفك ورد فعلك فى هذا الوضع.

فعلى سبيل المثال من القصة السابقة:

If you were one of the Time Traveller's friends, what would you do?

If I were one of the Time Traveller's friends, I would be very excited. I would want to see the real machine work and try to travel through time.

يمكن أن تختلف الإجابة من شخص لآخر فعبر عن رد فعلك كما ترى من وجهة نظرك.

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I think I am ..... to my phone. I use it a lot. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) horrible b) addicted c) worried d) deaf
2. Many young people spend much time ..... their social media. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) checking b) looking c) playing d) wasting
3. It's getting hotter these days because of the ..... change. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) system b) travel c) chemistry d) climate
4. Some animals can ..... sounds. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) touch b) feed c) copy d) see
5. A/An ..... is a person, who has great experience. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
   a) export b) expert c) addicted d) student
6. When you pull this ....., the machine starts working. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) lever b) model c) scenery d) liver
7. He didn't intend to break the glass. He broke it by ..... . القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) mistake b) wrong c) luck d) hand
8. When I visited London, I bought a ..... of the Big Ben Clock. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) metal b) machine c) medal d) model
9. To travel around an area to find out about it means "....." .
   a) import b) export c) explore d) explode
10. Mariam ..... with her friend using a walkie-talkie.
    a) connects b) hopes c) laughs d) communicates
11. That film had a ..... ending that I didn't expect.
    a) strange b) cool c) possible d) pleased
12. We need to take care of our ..... by reducing pollution.
    a) lever b) plant c) planet d) handle
13. My mother was worried ..... me when I came home late. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
    a) of b) about c) with d) for
14. I believe we can't travel through time. It's ..... . بنى سويف ٢٠٢٤
    a) important b) impatient c) impossible d) impolite
15. Don't ..... friends with bad people. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
    a) give b) wear c) have d) make
16. It was cloudy this morning, but the clouds soon ..... when the sun came out. دمياط ٢٠٢٤
    a) picked b) pulled c) disappeared d) decided

C Language

Giving advice إعطاء النصح

e.g. You should eat healthy food.

Usage & Form الاستخدام والتكوين

We use "**should**" to give advice. نستخدم "**should**" لإعطاء النصيحة

1. Affirmative الإثبات

Subject الفاعل + **should** + **inf.** مصدر الفعل (ينبغى أن)

e.g. - They should be kind to others.
- Suzy should clean her room.

Subject:
I, We, They, You,
He, She, It
اسم مفرد/ اسم جمع

2. Negative النفى

Subject الفاعل + **should not** + **inf.** مصدر الفعل (ينبغى ألا)

e.g. - Hazem should not drive too fast. - We should not stay up too late.

Question السؤال

1. Yes/No question

- السؤال بهل:

Should + subject الفاعل **+ inf.** مصدر الفعل**?**

e.g. Should I help my little brother with his homework?

2. Wh- question

- السؤال بأداة استفهام:

Q. Word أداة استفهام **+ should + subject** الفاعل **+ inf.** مصدر الفعل**?**

e.g. How often should the kids exercise?

لاحظ

يمكن استخدام (should) مع (if/when) عند إعطاء نصيحة كالتالى:

If/When + subject + present simple مضارع بسيط **/ subject +** should / shouldn't **+ inf.**

e.g. - If/ When you see people being horrible online, you should tell your parents.

Subject + should / shouldn't **+ inf. + if/when + subject +** present simple مضارع بسيط

e.g. You should ask your father for help if/ when you have a problem.

تُمكِّنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 You ..... (should) eat too much junk food.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (shouldn't) لأنها نصيحة بعدم فعل شىء.

2 Ali ..... (will) revise well when he has an exam; it's advisable to do so.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (should) لأن المعنى يدل على النصيحة وبعد when مضارع بسيط.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You ..... drink plenty of water every day.
   a) won't b) will c) should d) shouldn't
2. We ..... eat too many sweets. They are bad for our teeth. سوهاج ٢٠٢٤
   a) should b) shouldn't c) must d) hasn't
3. What ..... do if I break something?
   a) I should b) should I c) did I d) I did
4. ..... you have a headache, you should have a rest. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٤
   a) Unless b) Before c) If d) By
5. You ..... swim in the sea if it is very cold. الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٤
   a) has to b) had to c) should d) shouldn't
6. If you feel ill, you ..... a doctor. سوهاج ٢٠٢٤
   a) will see b) should see c) see d) would see
7. ..... you forget your homework at home, you should tell your teachers. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) While b) Before c) If d) During
8. When you ..... tired, you should have a break. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) are b) be c) were d) will be
9. If Samar wants to stay healthy, ... eat lots of fruits and vegetables.
   a) she mustn't b) she doesn't c) she should d) should she
10. You should ..... sure that you eat all types of healthy food. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
    a) makes b) made c) making d) make

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If you have free time, you ..... (should) waste it. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
2. Dina should visit her aunt when she ..... (go) to Alexandria. الجيزة ٢٠٢٢
3. Should I ask for directions if I ..... (got) lost?
4. Children shouldn't ..... (talking) to strangers. أسوان ٢٠٢٤
5. What should we ..... (doing) if they arrive early?

D Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

1. Speaking

Discussing new technology

مناقشة التكنولوجيا الحديثة

online

What types of technology do you use every day?
ما أنواع التكنولوجيا التى تستخدمها كل يوم؟

I often use my mobile phone, laptop and headphones.
استخدم الهاتف المحمول واللاب توب وسماعات الأذن.

What do you use them for?
فيمَ تستخدمهم؟

I use them to log on to the internet and for music.
استخدمهم للدخول على الإنترنت وللموسيقى.

Which is the most important piece of technology for you?
ما هى أهم قطعة تكنولوجيا لديك؟

I think I'm addicted to my mobile phone.
أعتقد بأننى مدمن لهاتفى المحمول.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

Warda uses technology, such as a smartphone and a laptop, every day.

Haidy : Hi Warda, do you use technology a lot?
Warda : (1)..... .
Haidy : What types of technology do you use every day?
Warda : (2)..... .
Haidy : That's cool! (3).....?
Warda : I use my smartphone for messaging and social media.
Haidy : What about your laptop?
Warda : I use my laptop for work and studying. (4).....?
Haidy : (5)..... .
Warda : That sounds useful. I'll try to use my tablet to read, too.

2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

1. How to write about problems with technology

كيفية الكتابة عن المشاكل التى تسببها التكنولوجيا

- Technology has made life much better and easier.
- It's hard to live without technology.
- Many people start facing problems when they use technology for a long time.
- We can call it "technology addiction".

Example

Problems with technology

Technology has made life much better and easier. It is hard to live without modern technology, such as the internet, mobile phones, video games and other technological wonders. Sadly, many people start facing problems when they use technology for a long time. We can call it "technology addiction". Most young people are addicted to their phones. They spend too much time using social media. They also spend a long time playing video games online. Many people have been addicted to using the internet for a long time. This may give them headaches. In addition, they can waste their time doing useless things. So, we should be careful while we're using technology.

2. How to write about online shopping

كيفية الكتابة عن التسوق عبر الإنترنت

Example

From : maged@student.com **To** : seif@student.com
Subject : Online shopping
Dear Seif,

How are you and your family? I want to tell you about online shopping. Some people prefer shopping online, but others don't. Most people think that online shopping is great. It saves time. People don't need to spend lots of time travelling to shops. They can stay at home and buy the things they want in a few minutes. They have more choices online. If more people shop online, there will be fewer cars on the road and less pollution. Old people can do all their shopping online. On the other hand, other people don't like online shopping. They prefer going to real shops. There, they can see what they are buying and try it first. They don't like to waste time waiting for a delivery. They think that if everyone shops online, many shops will close. If they close, then lots of other businesses like cafés will close, too. Do you have any experience with online shopping?

Best wishes.
Maged

1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Technology is ***amazing***! It's all the cool devices like computers, phones, and gadgets that make our lives easier and more comfortable. But do you know what's even more exciting? The future of technology!

Imagine a world where you can talk to robots, fly in cars, or even explore outer space like real astronauts. That's the kind of future technology might bring!

But technology isn't just about fun and games. **It** helps us learn too! With computers and the internet, we can discover new things every day, like learning about animals and history. So, what does the future hold? Maybe one day we'll have robots helping us with work, cars that drive themselves, or even magical glasses that show us amazing things!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The future of technology will be more ..... .
   a) terrible b) exciting c) difficult d) horrible
2. With technology, we can discover new things every ..... .
   a) day b) week c) month d) year

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage?.....
4. How do you think technology can affect our lives?.....
5. What does the underlined pronoun "**It**" refer to?.....
6. How does technology help us learn new things?.....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A pain in your head means "..... ". القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) toothache b) headache c) knee ache d) stomachache
2. Scientists might find cures يجد علاج for ..... that make people feel better fast. دمياط ٢٠٢٤
   a) cars b) illnesses c) changes d) possibilities
3. Many people use social ..... to communicate with each other. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) internet b) headphones c) media d) invention
4. Mum ..... my phone when it's time for bed.
   a) takes away b) looks at c) gives up d) takes off
5. That new hotel looks ..... . I really don't like it. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
   a) nice b) wonderful c) horrible d) bored
6. Can you give me some .....? بنى سويف ٢٠٢٤
   a) advise b) device c) advice d) tip

7. When you go to bed, you ..... turn your phone off. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
a) won't b) will c) should d) have
8. Where should I go ..... I want to learn a new language?
a) while b) because c) so d) if

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. You shouldn't ..... (wasting) your time. بورسعيد ٢٠٢٤
2. He should study hard if he ..... (want) to pass his exam. الفيوم ٢٠٢٤
3. If you ..... (not/know) someone, you shouldn't make friends with them online. SB
4. Should I drink hot tea if I ..... (has) a headache? بنى سويف ٢٠٢٤
5. You should tell your teacher if you ..... (has) a problem.

4 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Problems of technology"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

1. The telephone rang, but he didn't ..... it.
a) answer b) reply c) share d) drop
2. The problem ..... pollution affects our environment.
a) with b) in c) of d) at

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Do you think ..... (should/I) look for another apartment?
2. I ..... (think) Tamer should accept this job. It's terrible.

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك فى كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

QUESTION	1	2	3	4
TACKLES	Comprehension	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
MARK				

STUDY Lessons 5 & 6

Watch a video

SB pages 9&10 | WB pages 74&75

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

damage (d) (v)	يدمر/يضر	hearing (n)	السمع
damaged (adj)	تالف	improve (d) (v)	يحسن
danger (n)	خطر	order (ed) (v)	يطلب/يأمر
debate (n)	مناظرة	robot (n)	إنسان آلى
surname (n)	لقب العائلة	text (ed) (v)	يرسل رسالة نصية

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

aged (adj)	بالغ من العمر	healthy (adj)	صحى/بصحة جيدة
expressions (n)	تعبيرات	missing (adj)	مفقود
heading (n)	عنوان	poster (n)	ملصق إعلانى
health (n)	صحة	title (n)	عنوان (كتاب/مقال)

Check Point

Choose and complete: damage – health – robot – order

1. The ..... moves around by itself and does hard work.
2. Eating vegetables is good for your ..... .
3. Let's ..... pizza for dinner tonight.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

do	exercise	يمارس التمارين الرياضية	give	a headache	يسبب صداعًا
get	a headache	يصاب بصداع		a title	يعطى عنوانًا
	enough sleep	يحصل على قدر كافٍ من النوم	go	online	يتصل بالإنترنت

Prepositions — حروف الجر

change for	يغير بشىء جديد	in my opinion	فى رأيى
from my point of view	من وجهة نظرى	look forward to + (v + ing)	يتطلع إلى
go on holiday	يذهب فى إجازة	on screens/ a website	على الشاشات/ موقع الإنترنت
happy about	سعيد بشأن	through headphones	خلال سماعات الرأس
hear from	يتلقى رسالة/أخبارًا من	write down	يدون

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
bring يجلب/يحضر	brought	brought	wear يرتدى/يلبس	wore	worn

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym) عكسها	Word الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym) عكسها
dangerous خطير	safe آمن	interesting شيق	boring ممل
formal رسمى	informal غير رسمى	loud عالٍ/صاخب	quiet هادئ
good for مفيد لـ	bad for ضار لـ	positive إيجابى	negative سلبى

Check Point

Choose and complete: down – bring – about – go – formal

1. Manal needs to ..... online to check her email.
2. My little brother is happy ..... his birthday presents.
3. The party was ....., so everyone wore suits and dresses.
4. Please, ... me a glass of water.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر وتصريفات الأفعال والكلمات وعكسها.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 look + adj. — يبدو

- That dress looks interesting.

2 would like (noun/to + inf.) — يود أن

- I would like **a piece of cake**, please.
- Salma would like **to go** for a walk.

3 Ending an email — خاتمة الإيميل

- Best Wishes أطيب الأمانى / Kind Regards أطيب التحيات / See you soon أراك قريبًا

وقبل التوقيع بالاسم

- Yours faithfully تفضلوا بقبول فائق الاحترام / Yours sincerely المخلص لكم

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My brother would like ..... a game, but I prefer watching TV.
   a) play b) to play c) playing d) to playing
2. Carol and Renad ..... happy today. They passed their exams.
   a) look b) like c) prefer d) check

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Words and Synonyms

الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
dangerous	خطير	serious	خطير
healthy	صحى	well	صحى

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
danger (n)	خطر	-ous		تحويل الاسم إلى صفة		dangerous (adj)	خطير

Prefix البادئة

Prefix	البادئة	Function	الوظيفة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
in-		تعطى عكس المعنى		formal (adj)	رسمى	informal (adj)	غير رسمى
un-				healthy (adj)	صحى	unhealthy (adj)	غير صحى

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 5

SB page 9

Look at the headings in the poster. What problems could technology bring to these things?

The dangers (1) of technology



Sleep: Many people text (2), check social media or watch videos online late into the night. Then they don't get enough sleep.



Eye problems (3): If you spend a lot of time on screens, you can have eye problems and headaches.



Ear problems (4): Listening to loud music or films through headphones can damage (5) your hearing (6).

Exercise (7): Many people spend hours playing video games or watching TV and don't spend enough time outside doing exercise.

(1) مخاطر (2) يرسل رسالة نصية

(3) مشاكل العين (4) مشاكل الأذن

(5) يدمر/يضر (6) السمع

(7) تمارين رياضية

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 6

- Have you ever shopped online? If yes, what did you buy?

Read the email. What is it about?

SB page 10

Dear Sir/Madam,

I ordered (1) a new mobile phone last week and the delivery (2) was today. When I opened the box, the screen was damaged (3). I would like to change the phone for a new one that is not damaged. Can you tell me how I can do this?

Yours faithfully (4),

Lama Sabri



(1) طلبت (2) توصيل/تسليم

(3) تالفة (4) تفضلوا بقبول فائق الاحترام

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمة التالية:

faithfully /feɪθfʊli/

Post-reading question:

- If you faced the same problem, what would you do?

Lesson 6

Read the email and write the missing sentences a–c in the right places.

WB page 75

Dear Sir/Madam,

I ordered a new game last week on your website. **The delivery was today.** When I opened the box, I found that I ordered a game for children aged 6–9 by mistake. **It did not say this on your website.** I was not happy about this because I want to play the game with my friends, and we are all 13 or 14.

I would like to change the game for a new one that is for the correct age. **Can you tell me how I can do this?**

I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours faithfully,

Haytham Shabana

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He ..... his mobile when he dropped it in water. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) saved b) protected c) damaged d) sent
2. Social media is very useful, but it has ....., too. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
   a) information b) ways c) hobbies d) dangers
3. Workers have to ..... their skills to get good jobs. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) improve b) communicate c) connect d) prove
4. Listening to loud music through headphones can damage your ..... . القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) taste b) hearing c) smell d) sight
5. I usually use my mobile to ..... my friends. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) text b) talk c) spend d) play
6. His facial ..... tell me that he is very excited. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) connections b) expressions c) languages d) contacts
7. We end an email with "....."
   a) Dear b) Best wishes c) Hello d) Greetings
8. I used to ..... exercise every morning when I was young. الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٣
   a) make b) give c) get d) do
9. In my ....., not all websites are bad. بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣
   a) reason b) opinion c) cause d) idea
10. They had a ..... about the best film to watch.
    a) poster b) robot c) debate d) danger
11. My brother, ... 9 years, is very active. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
    a) age b) ages c) aging d) aged
12. Could you please spell out your ..... for me?
    a) job b) work c) surname d) expression
13. Remember to write ..... your friend's phone number.
    a) to b) down c) for d) in
14. I always make sure to ..... enough sleep before a long journey.
    a) damage b) do c) give d) get
15. The music at the party was so ..... that we had a headache.
    a) calm b) noise c) loud d) quiet
16. The ..... of his speech was "The Future of Technology."
    a) title b) poster c) heading d) surname

C Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

Speaking

Talking about the positives and negatives of technology

التحدث عن إيجابيات وسلبيات التكنولوجيا

Situation	ما يقال فى هذا الموقف	Response	جملة الرد

online

..... is a good idea. يكون فكرة جيدة.

*"Using technology to help you exercise is a good idea."

From my point of view, ... من وجهة نظرى.

*"From my point of view, too much technology can give you headaches."

It isn't a good idea to + inf. ..... . إنها ليست فكرة جيدة أن.

*"It isn't a good idea to spend too much time watching TV or playing on computers."

In my opinion, ... فى رأيى.

*"In my opinion, most technology is bad for your health."

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

Nada is asking Sama about computers and the internet. أسيوط ٢٠٢٤

Nada : Hello, Sama. Do you have a computer?

Sama : (1)..... . I bought it last year.

Nada : What do you use it for?

Sama : (2)..... .

Nada : (3).....?

Sama : Yes, I like the internet. I use it to get a lot of information.

Nada : (4).....?

Sama : In my opinion, it's dangerous to use it too much.

Nada : What should I do if I'm worried about something online?

Sama : (5)..... .

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 7 Lessons (5 & 6)

12

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Sama is asking Ola some questions about computer games. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢

Sama : Can I ask you some questions?
Ola : (1)..... .
Sama : (2).....?
Ola : In my view, not all computer games are bad.
Sama : (3).....?
Ola : Because some of them can help you to learn things.
Sama : Do you think it is a good idea to play games at night?
Ola : (4)..... .
Sama : Should it be a problem if I only play quiet, calm games in the evening?
Ola : (5)..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I have a ..... of my favourite singer on my bedroom wall.
   a) title b) poster c) debate d) problem
2. We look forward to hearing ..... you soon.
   a) out b) about c) for d) from
3. He talked to his friend on the phone ..... headphones while walking in the park.
   a) down b) through c) forward d) from
4. Looking at a computer screen for too long can ..... you a headache.
   a) give b) go c) order d) damage
5. You ..... wait until the last minute to start studying for exams.
   a) shouldn't b) should c) will d) won't
6. If you ..... know the answer, you should ask your teacher.
   a) doesn't b) didn't c) won't d) don't

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I will not eat dessert if I ..... (be) full.
2. ..... (Are) we have a picnic if the weather is nice?
3. I look forward to ..... (meet) my friends next weekend.
4. What should I ..... (doing) about my problem? سوهاج ٢٠٢٣

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك فى كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

QUESTION	1	2	3
TACKLES	Speaking	Vocabulary	Language
MARK			

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 7

30

A Listening

1 **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

نص الاستماع
فى نهاية الكتاب.

القاهرة ٢٠٢٤

1. What did Samah buy?
   a) A tablet. b) A camera.
   c) A computer. d) A mobile phone.
2. What was the problem with the screen?
   a) Lost. b) Damaged.
   c) Saved. d) Expensive.
3. When did she order it?
   a) Today. b) Last week.
   c) Last month. d) Last year.
4. What did she do?
   a) She sent an email. b) She phoned the shop.
   c) She wrote a letter. d) Nothing.

B Language Functions

2 **Complete the following dialogue:**

Noor has a headache. She went to see a doctor.

الدقهلية ٢٠٢٤

Doctor : What's the matter?
Noor : (1)..... . My head hurts.
Doctor : Do you have enough sleep?
Noor : (2)..... .
Doctor : That's too bad. You should sleep for eight hours.
Noor : I also watch too many videos at night.
Doctor : (3)..... .
Noor : (4).....?
Doctor : You should sleep early and have enough sleep.
Noor : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions: البحيرة ٢٠٢٤

Spending too much time on screens can be harmful. When you look at a computer, phone, or TV for a long time, your eyes can get tired and hurt. This can cause eye problems. Your head might also hurt. Looking at screens can make it hard to sleep. **This** is because the light from screens can trick your brain into thinking that it is still daytime. Sitting for a long time while using screens can cause pain in your back and neck. It is ***necessary*** to take breaks. Every 20 minutes, look away from your screen for 20 seconds. Move around and stretch your body. By doing these things, you can keep yourself healthy and safe.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of the passage is ..... .
   a) dangers of screens b) modern life
   c) eye problems d) ways to relax
2. The word "***necessary***" is similar in meaning to ..... .
   a) important b) unimportant c) unnecessary d) excited

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What are two health problems that can be caused by looking at screens for a long time? .....
4. What does the underlined word "**This**" refer to? .....
5. Why do you think taking breaks and moving around are important when using screens? .....
6. What are some other ways you can stay healthy while using screens? .....

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I always ..... photos on Facebook.
   a) chair b) sure c) share d) shore
2. The cat ..... jumped off the table. We didn't expect that.
   a) impossibly b) suddenly c) possibly d) fantastically
3. I love social ..... . I love using Facebook, YouTube and Instagram.
   a) media b) internet c) headphone d) invention

4. Retal ..... helping others, so she joined a charity.
a) looks forward b) shows c) thinks d) believes in

5. The storm ..... the roof of the house.
a) improved b) checked c) repaired d) damaged

6. I don't want coffee; I'll have tea ..... .
a) suddenly b) instead c) horribly d) angrily

7. You ..... see a doctor. You are very sick.
a) should b) can't c) have d) need

8. If you ..... enough sleep, you will be tired.
a) won't get b) will get c) get d) don't get

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. He ..... (finish) his work if he starts early.
2. ..... (we will) go camping if we get a tent?
3. You ..... (should) smoke. It's bad for your health.
4. When it's hot, you should ..... (drank) a lot of water.
5. If you spend a lot of time on screens, you ..... (have) eye problems.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"The dangers of technology" الشرقية ٢٠٢٤

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك فى كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

QUESTION	1	2	3	4	5	6
TACKLES	Listening	Speaking	Reading	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
MARK						

Bubble Sheet Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Said and Waleed are talking about hobbies.

Said : Hi Waleed, how's it going?

Waleed : I'm fine. What about you?

Said : (1)..... . What do you do in your free time?

a) No, I don't **b)** Yes, I do **c)** Sorry, no **d)** I'm well, thanks

Waleed : I usually play video games in my free time. What about you?

Said : (2)..... .

a) I enjoy reading **b)** I don't have hobbies

c) I hate reading **d)** I like football

Waleed : That sounds nice. Do you have any favourite books?

Said : (3)..... . I really like adventure books.

a) Sorry **b)** Yes, of course. **c)** No, I don't **d)** Yes, I have

Waleed : (4)..... last month?

a) Where did you read **b)** How many books will you read

c) How many books did you read **d)** How long did you read

Said : I read about three books. (5).....?

a) Do you like reading **b)** How do you like reading

c) Why do you read **d)** Did you like it

Waleed : Yes, I read in my free time, too.

2 Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d:

1. You ..... (should to) eat too much fast food if you want to be healthy.

a) will **b)** won't **c)** shouldn't **d)** should

2. What will we do if it ..... (snowing)?

a) snow **b)** snows **c)** snowed **d)** was snowing

3. If you do exercise every day, you ..... (won't) be fit.

a) need **b)** have **c)** should **d)** will

4. Nawal ..... (not) forget her keys if she puts them in her bag.

a) won't **b)** didn't **c)** isn't **d)** shouldn't

5. Why ..... (won't) they not go to the party?

a) shouldn't **b)** are **c)** will **d)** can't

ANSWER HERE

Q 1	1 (a)(b)(c)(d)	2 (a)(b)(c)(d)	3 (a)(b)(c)(d)	4 (a)(b)(c)(d)	5 (a)(b)(c)(d)
Q 2	1 (a)(b)(c)(d)	2 (a)(b)(c)(d)	3 (a)(b)(c)(d)	4 (a)(b)(c)(d)	5 (a)(b)(c)(d)



Unit 8

YOU ARE WHAT YOU EAT

OBJECTIVES OF THE UNIT

Reading	Texts about what people eat; a healthy food quiz; a recipe; an article about unusual food; an article about a healthy island
Writing	An email about a favourite snack; a paragraph about a country's diet; a paragraph about sleep
Listening	A discussion about favourite snacks; a conversation at dinner; teenagers sharing their worries about food and health
Speaking	Describing food; offering, accepting and refusing food politely; giving advice about being healthy
Language	a lot, a little and a few
Life Skills	Self-management

SB تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب

WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات

STUDY Lessons 1 & 2

Watch a video

SB pages 12 - 15 | WB pages 77 & 78

A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

allergic (to) (adj)	لديه حساسية (من)	practice (n)	تدريب
athletics (n)	ألعاب القوى	salt (n)	ملح
chip shop (n)	متجر الرقائق	snack (n)	وجبة خفيفة
energy/ power (n)	طاقة	spices (n)	توابل/بهارات
fast food (n)	طعام سريع	squash (n)	رياضة الإسكواش
fat (n)	دهون	sugar (n)	سكر
netball (n)	كرة الشبكة	taste (d) (v/n)	يتذوق/مذاق
nuts (n)	مكسرات	teenager (n)	مراهق
offer (ed) (v)	يعرض/يقدم	type (n)	نوع

Adjectives صفات

lucky	محظوظ	left	متبقٍّ
common	شائع/منتشر	popular	محبوب/شعبى/شائع
salty	مالح	spicy	متبل/حار
juicy	كثير العصارة		

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

caffeine (n)	مادة الكافيين	quiz (n)	اختبار مصغر/مسابقة
chillies (n)	توابل/فلفل	research (n)	بحث (دراسة)
curry (n)	كارى (بهار هندى)	result (n)	نتيجة
dairy products (n)	منتجات ألبان	rice pudding (n)	أرز بلبن (بودنج)
invite (d) (to) (v)	يدعو (إلى)	watermelon (n)	بطيخ
Okinawa (n)	جزيرة أوكيناوا باليابان	wheat (n)	قمح
olives (n)	زيتون	fava beans (n)	حبوب الفول
oven (n)	فرن	hawawshi (n)	حواوشى
plate (n)	طبق		

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

(n) = noun	(adj) = adjective	(prep) = preposition
(v) = verb	(adv) = adverb	(conj) = conjunction

Check Point

Choose and complete: quiz – invite – salt – athletics

1. I like to add a little ..... to my popcorn.
2. Jomana joined the school ..... team. She likes running.
3. I ..... you to come to my birthday party.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

do	the washing up	يغسل الأطباق	get	food	يحضر طعامًا
make	an offer	يقدم عرضًا		ill	يمرض
have	a snack	يتناول وجبة خفيفة			

Prepositions — حروف الجر

example of	مثال على	on the street	فى الشارع
for breakfast	على وجبة الإفطار	on the way home	فى الطريق إلى البيت
on the athletics team	فى فريق ألعاب القوى	thanks for	شكرًا على

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.	Present		Past simple	P.P.
choose	يختار	chose	chosen	hurt	يؤذى/ يؤلم	hurt	hurt
give	يعطى	gave	given	put on	يرتدى	put on	put on

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
careful	حريص	careless	مهمل
countable	معدود	uncountable	غير معدود
full	ممتلئ	hungry	جوعان
popular	شعبى/محبوب	unpopular	غير شعبى/غير محبوب

Check Point

Choose and complete: for – do – full – hungry – hurt

1. Amr ..... his ankle while playing football.
2. My mum always makes eggs ..... breakfast.
3. I don't want any more food; I am ..... .
4. My sister and I always ..... the washing up at the weekends.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر وتصريفات الأفعال والكلمات وعكسها.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 **try to + inf.** يحاول أن

- I tried to **open** the door, but I couldn't.

try not to + inf. يحاول ألا

- I try not to **eat** too much.

2 **make + مفعول + (adj./inf.)** يجعل

- The teacher made the pupils **happy**.
- The teacher made us **correct** our mistakes.

3 **Snacks from different countries** وجبات خفيفة من بلاد مختلفة

Snack	What it is/ Where we get it	Features	Country
chips رقائق بطاطس محمرة/شيبسي	buy from a fish and chip shop	popular/ salty/ not healthy	Britain
falafel طعمية	made from fava beans	delicious/ popular	Egypt
rojak روجاك (سلطة خضار وفواكه)	a fruit snack/ buy on the street	sweet and juicy/ delicious	Malaysia
samosa سمبوسة	buy on the street	spicy vegetables	India
sfenj الإسفنج (كعكة مقلية محلاة)	a kind of cake	has lots of sugar and fat/ sweet/ not healthy	Morocco

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Try ..... worry too much about the exam, just do your best.
a) not **b)** don't
c) not to **d)** to not

2 Noha makes her baby boy ..... by playing with him.
a) sad **b)** happy
c) sadly **d)** happily

3 Rojak is a fruit snack from Malaysia. It's sweet and ..... .
a) spicy **b)** salty
c) horrible **d)** juicy

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Definitions — التعريفات

allergic	لديه حساسية	getting ill when you eat or touch something
delicious	لذيذ	very nice to eat
energy	طاقة	something that gives you the power to do things
fast food	طعام سريع	food that is quick and easy to buy or cook

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word — الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning) — مرادفها
careful — حريص	cautious — حريص

Suffix اللاحقة

Word — الكلمة	Suffix — اللاحقة	Function — الوظيفة	The new word — الكلمة الجديدة
juice (n) — عصير	-y	تحويل الاسم إلى صفة	juicy (adj) — كثير العصارة
salt (n) — ملح			salty (adj) — مالح

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

Similar Spelling - Different Meaning

Word — الكلمة	Similar word — الكلمة المشابهة
chips — رقائق بطاطس/شيبسى	ships — سفن
curry — كارى (بهار هندى)	carry — يحمل
dairy — ألبان	diary — مفكرة
left — متبقٍّ	lift — يرفع/مصعد
spices — توابل/بهارات	species — أنواع/أصناف
sweet — حلو	sweat — يعرق/عرق
taste — يتذوق/مذاق	test — امتحان/اختبار

B Reading & Listening Skills

Listening Text

Lesson 1

Pre-listening question:

- What's your favourite snack?

Listen and put the snacks from page 12 in the order that you hear them.

SB page 13



Speaker 1 Sfenj(1) is a kind of cake from Morocco. It has lots of sugar and fat in it and is very sweet, so it is not very healthy, but I love it! We sometimes eat sfenj for breakfast and sometimes as a snack(2) with some tea or a cup of coffee.



Speaker 2 In many places, people use fava beans(3) to make falafel. They are the best! Falafel is really delicious(4) and it is very popular(5) in Egypt.



Speaker 3 In Britain, we often buy chips from a fish and chip shop(6). People often put some salt on their chips. I don't put any salt on mine because I don't like salty(7) food. It is not very healthy.



Speaker 4 You can buy samosas(8) on the street everywhere in India. Samosas have spicy(9) vegetables inside them. People often eat samosas for a snack. I love to eat them with some hot tea.



Speaker 5 Rojak is a fruit snack you can buy in the street in Malaysia and people also make it at home. Rojak is very sweet(10) and juicy(11). People use different spices(12) in different parts of the country, but it's always delicious.

(1) كيكة الإسفنج (2) وجبة خفيفة (3) الفول

(4) لذيذ (5) محبوب/شعبى (6) متجر الرقائق

(7) مملح (8) سمبوسة (9) متبل

(10) حلو (11) كثير العصارة (12) توابل

Post-listening question:

- Which snack would you like to try? Why?

Lesson 1

WB page 77

Complete the email with some or any.

Hi Tom,

How are you? Thanks for your last email. You asked me to describe my favourite snack(1). I love hawawshi and I often have it when I get home from school. It is easy to make. First, you need **some** nice bread. Then you put **some** meat and vegetables inside the bread. You can put **some** salt(2) on it, too. I don't like to have **any** salt, though, because it is not very healthy. Now you cook it in the oven. It is delicious(3)! Do you have **any** favourite snacks? Describe them to me in your next email!



(1) وجبة خفيفة (2) ملح (3) لذيذ

Best wishes,
Osama

Lesson 2

Listen to Amal and Huda talking to their grandmother and answer the questions. SB page 15

Listening Text



Grandmother Would you like some more chicken, Amal?

Amal Yes, please, just a little.

Grandmother And would you like some more beans, too?

Amal Yes, thank you, grandmother … stop, that's enough! I mustn't eat too much.



Huda Do you like chicken, Amal?

Amal Yes, I love Grandmother's spicy chicken. It's the best!

Huda Thank you, Grandmother, that was a delicious dinner!

Grandmother Would you girls like some more rice pudding?

Huda No, thank you, I'm really full.

Grandmother What about you, Amal?

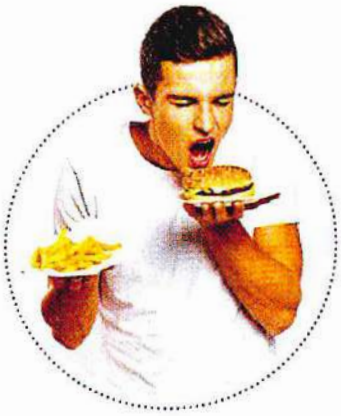
Amal Thank you, but I really couldn't. Why don't you have a rest now, Grandmother? Huda and I can take the plates to the kitchen and we'll do the washing up.

Pre-reading question: - What types of food are you allergic to?

Lesson 2

Read the texts about two teenagers (1) and answer the questions. *SB page 14*

What I eat



My name's Imad. I am allergic to (2) nuts, so I must be careful what I eat. If I eat something with nuts (3) in it, I will get ill! For most of the time, this is not a problem. However, I like sweet things, and there are a few types (4) of cake that have nuts in them, so I can't eat those.

I'm lucky (5) because my mother makes me many different, delicious things to eat at home. She says I should eat more vegetables and salad. I have a lot of fruit, and that's healthy!



I'm Mustafa. I'm on the school athletics team (6) and I go running every day, so I need food that gives me energy (7).

I eat a lot of rice and pasta every day. I also eat a few healthy snacks, like nuts.

After athletics practice (8), my friends and I sometimes get some fast food, like pizzas, on the way home, but I try not to eat too much!

(1) مراهقون	(2) لديه حساسية من	(3) مكسرات
(4) أنواع	(5) محظوظ	(6) فريق ألعاب القوى
(7) طاقة	(8) تدريب ألعاب القوى	

Comprehension Skills

- Extract information: استخراج المعلومات:

عليك قراءة السؤال جيدًا والتركيز على أداة الاستفهام لمعرفة المطلوب جيدًا ثم العودة للنص.

Example: أجب على الأسئلة التالية (خاص بالقطعة السابقة)

1. What's Imad's problem with sweet things?

- The problem is that there are types of cake that have nuts in them, so he can't eat them.

2. Why does Mustafa eat a lot of rice and pasta every day?

- He eats a lot of rice and pasta every day because he needs food that gives him energy.

Pre-reading question:

- What should we do to be healthy?

Circle the correct words. *WB page 78*

Judy plays squash(1) every week and needs to be healthy, so what does she eat? She is allergic to nuts, so she doesn't eat **any** cakes because they sometimes have nuts in them. She eats **a lot of** fish because it helps to make her strong. A few hours before a netball(2) game, she always eats some fish with **a lot of** pasta, because this gives her energy. When she is playing netball, she drinks **a little** water. Then, after the game, she eats **a few** sweets. She does not have many because she knows they are not very good for her.



(1) الإسكواش (2) كرة الشبكة

Post-reading questions:

1. What is Judy allergic to?
2. Does she eat many sweets? Why/ Why not?

Listen and check your answers to Exercise 5, then role-play the dialogue. *WB page 78*

Listening Text

Lesson 2



Grandma Would you like some cake, Leila?

Leila Yes, please, just a little. I mustn't eat too much.

Grandma Would you like a cup of tea with the cake?

Leila Thank you, I like tea.

Grandma Do you like sugar in your tea?

Leila Yes, please, but that's enough. I only like a little sugar.

Grandma Here you are, tea with cake!

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He doesn't eat any cakes because he is ..... to them. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) balanced **b)** long **c)** old **d)** allergic
2. Something that gives you the power to do something means "....." . الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) allergy **b)** electricity **c)** culture **d)** energy
3. It is useful for health to eat ..... products. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
   a) unhealthy **b)** diary **c)** dairy **d)** daisy
4. ..... means having a strong taste from spices. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
   a) Juicy **b)** Fatty **c)** Spicy **d)** Terrible
5. A/An ..... is a boy or girl aged 13-19. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) old man **b)** baby **c)** child **d)** teenager
6. Fruit and nuts are examples of healthy ..... . القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) snakes **b)** snacks **c)** snails **d)** sails
7. Watermelon is a ..... fruit. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٤
   a) salty **b)** sour **c)** spicy **d)** juicy
8. Sara is ..... the school athletics team. دمياط ٢٠٢٣
   a) for **b)** in **c)** on **d)** at
9. My brother ..... to help me with my project. It was kind of him.
   a) invited **b)** described **c)** tasted **d)** offered
10. Rovan said she was ..... to win the game.
    a) unlucky **b)** lucky **c)** full **d)** hungry
11. Rayan goes to football ..... every Thursday.
    a) advise **b)** advice **c)** practice **d)** practise
12. Hadeer was happy with the ..... of the maths test.
    a) cause **b)** result **c)** offer **d)** practice
13. My mum put the pizza in the ..... to cook.
    a) olive **b)** result **c)** oven **d)** quiz
14. It's important to be ..... while crossing the road.
    a) careful **b)** careless **c)** strong **d)** weak
15. She bought fish and chips from the ..... shop for lunch.
    a) sugar **b)** nut **c)** snack **d)** chip
16. There is only one egg ..... on the plate.
    a) seen **b)** taken **c)** lift **d)** left

C Language

1 Countable and uncountable nouns الأسماء المعدودة/ غير المعدودة

Countable nouns الأسماء المعدودة

- وهى الأسماء التى لها مفرد وجمع.

book – car – man – boy – table – chair ➤➤ books – cars – men – boys – tables – chairs

Uncountable nouns الأسماء غير المعدودة

- وهى الأسماء التى لا يمكن جمعها وتبقى مفردًا دائمًا (الكمية).

water – rice – salt – sugar – information

هناك كلمات تستخدم مع الأسماء المعدودة وأخرى تستخدم مع غير المعدودة لتحديد العدد/ الكمية.

A a/ an

تُستخدم (a/an) مع الاسم المعدود فى حالة المفرد.

- (an) مع الاسم المعدود المفرد الذى يبدأ بصوت متحرك (a - e - i - o - u).

e.g. - I want to eat an apple. - We saw an elephant in the zoo.

- (a) مع الاسم المعدود المفرد الذى يبدأ بصوت ساكن (باقى الحروف).

e.g. - My mum bought a dress for the party.
- I am going to watch a film tonight.

B some & any

some:

- (some) (بعض) تأتى مع الاسم الجمع والاسم غير المعدود (كمية) فى حالة الإثبات.

e.g. - I heard some birds singing in the park. (اسم جمع)
- There is some milk in the fridge. (كمية)

لاحظ

- تُستخدم (some) مع حالة العرض أو الطلب.

e.g. - Would you like some juice? (عرض) - Can you give me some water? (طلب)

any:

- (any) (أى) تأتى مع الاسم الجمع والاسم غير المعدود (كمية) فى حالة السؤال والنفى.

e.g. - She didn't send me any messages. - Is there any bread in the house?

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 Do you have ..... (some) plans for the weekend?

-الإجابة الصحيحة (any) لأنها صيغة سؤال وplans اسم جمع.

2 Sama and Omar planted ..... (some) tree in the garden.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (a) لأن tree اسم مفرد.

C a lot of/ many/ much

a lot of = lots of:

- (a lot of/lots of) (كثير من) وتأتى مع الاسم الجمع والاسم غير المعدود (كمية) غالبًا فى حالة الإثبات.

e.g. • There are a lot of **stars** in the sky. (اسم جمع)

• He drank a lot of **water** after running. (كمية)

many:

- (many) (كثير للجمع) وتأتى مع الاسم الجمع فقط غالبًا فى السؤال والنفى.

e.g. • Hany doesn't have many **friends** at school. • Have you got many **books**?

much:

- (much) (كثير للكمية) وتأتى مع الاسم غير المعدود (كمية) فقط غالبًا فى السؤال والنفى.

e.g. • I don't have much **homework** today.

• Was there much **traffic** on the way to school?

- لاحظ يمكن استخدام (many/ much) فى الإثبات بدلا من (a lot of) فى السياقات الرسمية.

D a few/ a little

a few:

- (a few) (قليل للجمع) وتأتى مع الاسم الجمع فقط غالبًا فى الإثبات.

e.g. • Habiba bought a few **pencils** for school.

• We will take a few **photos** in the park.

a little:

- (a little) (قليل للكمية) وتأتى مع الاسم غير المعدود (كمية) فقط غالبًا فى الإثبات.

e.g. • She added a little **sugar** to her tea.

• We have a little **time** before the film starts.

تُمكِّنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. He gave his friend ..... (a few) money.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (a little) لأن money اسم غير معدود.

2. Shahenda didn't receive ..... (much) gifts for her birthday. She received a few.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (many) لأن gifts اسم جمع.

3. Amir and Laila spent ..... (much) of time planning their wedding party.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (a lot/ lots) لوجود of والجملة مثبتة.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises (1)

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Your brother doesn't have ..... sandwiches. Give him one. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤

a) any **b)** some **c)** much **d)** little

2. Tarek is not very hungry, so he only wants ..... rice with his chicken. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤

a) a few **b)** a little **c)** a lot of **d)** any

3. Please, don't put ..... of salt on my food. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤

a) a lot **b)** many **c)** a few **d)** any

4. There are ..... expensive, new flats next to the river. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣

a) an **b)** a **c)** some **d)** any

5. Maha doesn't have many friends. She only has ..... friends. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢

a) many **b)** a few **c)** any **d)** a little

6. They didn't spend ..... time at the party. They were there for some time.

a) much **b)** many **c)** any **d)** little

7. I need ..... help with my homework.

a) a **b)** many **c)** some **d)** any

8. Hany is reading ..... interesting book.

a) an **b)** a **c)** some **d)** any

9. There weren't ..... tickets left for the concert.

a) many **b)** much **c)** some **d)** a lot

10. How ..... water should I drink every day?

a) many **b)** much **c)** few **d)** little

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. There ..... (aren't) any sugar in my tea. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣

2. I always have ..... (a) egg for breakfast. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

3. I don't want to put ..... (some) spices on my food. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤

4. There is ..... (a few) petrol in my car. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤

5. Do they have ..... (much) questions about this subject?

6. Would you like ..... (any) coffee? دمياط ٢٠٢٤

2 like/would like يحب/يود

A like: يحب

Usage & Form الاستخدام والتكوين

We use (like) to talk about what we prefer. نستخدم (like) للتحدث عما نفضله.

Affirmative: الإثبات

Subject الفاعل + like/likes + noun/inf. مصدر الفعل + ing/to + inf.

e.g. I like fruits. They like to visit/ visiting their grandparents.

Negative: النفى

Subject + don't/ doesn't like + noun/inf. + ing/to + inf.

e.g. I don't like tea. Ibrahim doesn't like playing football.

Yes/ No question: السؤال بهل

Do/Does + subject + like + noun/ inf. + ing/ to + inf.?

e.g. Do you like coffee/drinking coffee? Does your sister like to play squash?

B would like: يود/ يريد أن

Usage & Form الاستخدام والتكوين

We use (would like) to make offers and ask for things.
نستخدم (would like) لتقديم العروض وطلب الأشياء.

Affirmative: الإثبات

Subject الفاعل + would like + noun/to + inf. مصدر الفعل

e.g. I would (I'd) like some beans, please. He would like to have some juice.
لاحظ اختصار (would) إلى ('d)

Negative: النفى Subject + wouldn't like + noun/to + inf.

e.g. Suzan wouldn't like spicy food. We wouldn't like to have dinner.

Yes/ No question: السؤال بهل

Would + subject + like + noun/ to + inf. ...?

e.g. Would you like a sandwich? Would Hala like to have some tea?

Got it ? تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Maria ..... (would like) drawing pictures of animals.

-الإجابة الصحيحة (likes) لأن الفعل الذى يتبعه مضاف له ing.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises (2)

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My brothers ..... learning new languages.
   a) likes **b)** like **c)** would like **d)** like to
2. We'd ..... go swimming this weekend.
   a) like to **b)** likes to **c)** like **d)** likes
3. Where would you like .....? الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢
   a) go **b)** going **c)** to go **d)** goes
4. I ..... like to invite you to my birthday party. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) will **b)** would **c)** can **d)** could
5. Shaza doesn't like ..... the house.
   a) cleaning **b)** to cleaning **c)** clean **d)** cleaned
6. ..... they like playing video games?
   a) Would **b)** Do **c)** Does **d)** Are
7. Would you like to ..... the zoo? القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) visit **b)** visited **c)** visiting **d)** visits
8. Hossam ..... like spicy food.
   a) doesn't **b)** don't **c)** wouldn't **d)** won't
9. I ..... like a cup of tea.
   a) would **b)** doesn't **c)** won't **d)** am
10. Does he ..... read before bed?
    a) like **b)** likes **c)** like to **d)** likes to

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Do you like to ..... (listening) to music? الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
2. ..... (you/like) some more chicken? القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
3. Asmaa and Sherine ..... (likes) make their clothes by themselves.
4. Adel would like to ..... (knowing) how to fix his car. بورسعيد ٢٠٢٤
5. ..... (Will) you like to eat meat for lunch? بنى سويف ٢٠٢٤
6. We'd ..... (like) travel to France next holiday.

D Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

1. Speaking

1. Discussing food

مناقشة الطعام

Situation ما يقال فى هذا الموقف **Response** جملة الرد



What's your favourite juicy fruit that you like to eat when you're thirsty?

ما الفاكهة كثيرة العصارة التى تفضل تناولها عندما تكون عطشان؟

I like oranges and pineapples.

أحب البرتقال والأناناس.

What can you do if you eat something that is very hot and spicy and it hurts your mouth?

ماذا يمكنك أن تفعل عند تناول شىء حار جدًا أو متبل أدى إلى ألم فى فمك؟

I can eat vegetables.

يمكننى تناول الخضراوات.

The water in the sea is salty. Can you think of a food with this taste?

مياه البحر مالحة. هل يمكنك التفكير فى طعام بنفس المذاق؟

I think fish is salty, too.

أعتقد أن السمك مملح أيضًا.

If we don't want to use sugar to make food sweet, what other things can we use?

إذا كنا لا نريد استخدام السكر لتحلية الطعام، فما الأشياء الأخرى التى يمكننا أن نستخدمها؟

I think we can use honey.

أعتقد أنه يمكننا استخدام العسل.

2. Offering, Accepting and Refusing Food

عرض وقبول ورفض الطعام

Situation ما يقال فى هذا الموقف **Response** جملة الرد



Would you like a sandwich?	هل تود ساندوتش؟
Thank you, but I'm really full.	شكرًا، ولكنى حقًا ممتلئ.
Would you like some grapes?	هل تود بعض العنب؟
Yes, please.	نعم، من فضلك.
Do you like coffee?	هل تحب القهوة؟
No, I don't. I prefer tea.	لا. أنا أفضل الشاى.
Do you like a little salt on your chips?	هل تحب القليل من الملح على الشيبسى؟
No, thank you.	لا، شكرًا.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

Hoda and Lamees are talking about food. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤

Hoda : Do you like all kinds of food?

Lamees : (1)..... .

Hoda : (2).....?

Lamees : My favourite kinds of food are rice and pasta.

Hoda : (3).....?

Lamees : Because they give me energy.

Hoda : Are you allergic to any kind of food?

Lamees : (4)..... .

Hoda : What foods are you allergic to?

Lamees : (5)..... .

2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about your favourite meal

كيفية الكتابة عن وجبتك المفضلة

- I love (اسم الأكلة).
- I often have it for (breakfast/lunch/dinner) with (مع من تتناولها).
- It's (وصف المذاق). It's delicious.
- My mum always cooks it for us, but it is easy to make.
- You need (اذكر المكونات الأساسية).
- You can put (ما يمكنك إضافته عليها).
- I always eat it with salad because I like healthy food.
- It helps us to stay strong.

Writing tips

Make sure that you have complete sentences, correct spelling, and the necessary capitalisation and punctuation.

بعد الانتهاء من كتابة الفقرة ، تأكد من أن:
- كل الجمل مكتملة وذات معنى.
- الكلمات مكتوبة بتهجئة صحيحة.
- علامات الترقيم صحيحة.

Example

To : reem2024@gmail.com
From : radwa@gmail.com
Subject : My favourite snack

Dear Reem,

Greetings! How are you and your family? I hope you are in good health. I'm very happy to write this email to you. Thanks for your last email. You asked me to describe my favourite snack. I love samosas. I often have it for dinner with my family. It's spicy. It is delicious. It is easy to make. You need meat, onions, and peas. You can add cheese, too. I always eat it with salad because I like healthy food. It helps us to stay strong. Have you tried it before? I'm looking forward to seeing you. Best wishes.

Yours,
Radwa

Check Point

Write an email of about NINETY (90) words to your friend Susan to tell her about the last meal you cooked. Your name is Maria and your email address is maria@student.com. Your friend's email address is susan@student.com.

.....

.....

.....

.....

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 8 Lessons (1 & 2)

25

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع القاهرة ٢٠٢٤ في نهاية الكتاب.



1. Ali is allergic to ..... .
   a) food **b)** books **c)** spices **d)** sports
2. Ali feels ..... when he eats a lot of spices.
   a) happy **b)** ill **c)** sad **d)** angry
3. Ali likes ..... food.
   a) salty **b)** fatty **c)** sweet **d)** spicy
4. The ..... advised Ali not to put spices in his food.
   a) doctor **b)** teacher **c)** mechanic **d)** farmer

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Nour is offering some cake to Reda.

Nour : Hi Reda, would you like some cake?
Reda : (1)..... .
Nour : Great! Do you prefer chocolate or vanilla cake?
Reda : (2)..... .
Nour : Chocolate! Here you are.
Reda : (3)..... .
Nour : You're welcome, Reda. (4).....?
Reda : No, thank you. I don't like tea.
Nour : (5).....?
Reda : I think it is very delicious.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Falafel is one of the most ..... foods in Egypt. Many people like eating it. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
   a) popular **b)** easy **c)** unhealthy **d)** unpopular
2. She doesn't like to eat food that has too much ..... . It's unhealthy.
   a) snack **b)** fruit **c)** fat **d)** milk
3. We ..... things when we put them in our mouth. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) taste **b)** see **c)** smile **d)** smell
4. The sea water is ..... . دمياط ٢٠٢٤
   a) salty **b)** juicy **c)** sweet **d)** spicy
5. If you eat unhealthy food, you'll ..... ill.
   a) do **b)** make **c)** get **d)** have

6. She is doing ..... on plants for her science project.
a) a source **b)** search **c)** research **d)** a resource

7. It's healthy to put ..... salt on your food. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
a) few **b)** any **c)** much **d)** a little

8. Would you like ..... more chicken? بنى سويف ٢٠٢٤
a) few **b)** little **c)** some **d)** an

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Would you like ..... (any) cup of coffee? بنى سويف ٢٠٢٤
2. My father likes ..... (few) sugar in his tea, not much. قنا ٢٠٢٤
3. Eating ..... (a lot) fruit is good for you. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٤
4. We ..... (not/like) swimming in the pool.
5. I wouldn't like ..... (have) pasta for dinner.

5 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"The food you would like to eat" الجيزة ٢٠٢٤

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

1. The storm caused a/an ..... cut, and we had no electricity for hours.
a) lamp **b)** light **c)** power **d)** energy

2. Let's go for ..... together this weekend.
a) run **b)** a run **c)** ran **d)** a running

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. There are three ..... (few) things we should look at.
2. You must read this book; it has ..... (a) useful information.

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك فى كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

QUESTION	1	2	3	4	5
TACKLES	Listening	Speaking	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
MARK					

STUDY Lessons 3 & 4

Watch a video

SB pages 16 - 18 | WB pages 79 & 80

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

boiled (adj)	مسلوق	frying pan (n)	قدر القلى
bones (n)	عظام	horrible (adj)	فظيع/سيئ جدًا
bowl (n)	سلطانية	humans (n)	البشر
chopped (adj)	مقطع	instructions (n)	تعليمات
dry (adj)	جاف	protein (n)	بروتين
fresh (adj)	طازج	recipe (n)	وصفة طعام
fried (adj)	مقلى		

Cooking verbs أفعال الطهى

add (ed) (to)	يضيف (إلى)	fry (y/ied)	يقلى
beat with	يخفق بـ	heat (ed)	يُسَخِّن
boil (ed)	يغلى/يسلق	pour (ed) (into)	يصب/يسكب
chop (ped) (into)	يقطع (إلى)	serve (d)	يقدم طعامًا/يخدم

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

body (n)	جسد/جسم	fork (n)	شوكة
call (ed) (v)	يسمى	knife (n)	سكين
diagram (n)	رسم تخطيطى/توضيحى	ready (adj)	مستعد/جاهز
dining room (n)	حجرة الطعام	square (n)	مربع
discuss (ed) (v)	يناقش	together (adv)	معًا/سويًا

Foods & drinks أطعمة ومشروبات

butter	زبدة	foul mudammas	فول مدمس
century eggs	بيض القرن (المحفوظ) (أكلة صينية)	lemon	ليمون
champorado	عصيدة أرز الشوكولاتة الحلوة	oil	زيت
chicken	دجاج	omelette	أُمليت/عجة البيض
chocolate	شوكولاتة	onion	بصلة
dry salty fish	سمك مملح جاف	salad	سلطة
durian fruits	فاكهة دوريان	soup	حساء/شوربة
fesikh (dry salty fish)	فسيخ (سمك مملح جاف)	tuyo	تويو (نوع سمك)

Check Point

Choose and complete: ready – bones – horrible – fries

1. The doctor said the X-ray showed no broken ..... .
2. My mum always ..... potatoes for breakfast.
3. Dinner is almost ..... to eat, it looks nice.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Prepositions — حروف الجر

on the internet	على الإنترنت	take out of	يُخرج من
on the outside	من الخارج	under the ground	تحت الأرض

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.	Present		Past simple	P.P.
beat	يخفق	beat	beaten	keep	يحفظ	kept	kept
grow	ينمو/يزرع	grew	grown	smell	يشم	smelt	smelt

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها	Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
difficult	صعب	easy	سهل	normal	عادى	abnormal	غير عادى
expensive	غالٍ	cheap	رخيص	strong	قوى	weak	ضعيف
hard	صلب	soft	لين	usual	معتاد	unusual	غير معتاد

Check Point

Choose and complete: normal – unusual – under – smelt

1. Carrots grow ..... the ground.
2. The children ..... the cake and ran to the kitchen excitedly.
3. It's ..... to feel nervous before exams.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك لحروف الجر وتصريفات الأفعال والكلمات وعكسها.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 **smell/taste/look/seem/feel + adj.** يشم/يتذوق/يبدو/يشعر

- Century eggs smell bad.
- "Champorado" with "tuyo" looks unusual.
- Durian fruits are very healthy and taste delicious.

2

Sense الحاسة	see يرى	hear يسمع	touch يلمس	taste يتذوق	smell يشم
Part جزء الجسم	eyes العينان	ears الأذنان	fingers أصابع اليد	tongue اللسان	nose الأنف

- We hear with our **ears**.
- We touch with our **fingers**.

3 Countries & Cities بلاد ومدن

China	الصين	the Philippines	الفلبين
Indonesia	إندونيسيا		

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What's the matter? You look ..... .
   a) good **b)** usual **c)** worried **d)** delicious
2. We can hear with our ..... .
   a) ears **b)** noses **c)** hands **d)** legs

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning) مرادفها
difficult صعب	hard صعب
expensive غالٍ	costly غالٍ

Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
instruct (v) يأمر	-ion	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	instruction (n) أمر/تعليمات

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

Similar Spelling - Different Meaning

Word الكلمة	Similar word الكلمة المشابهة
butter زبدة	better أفضل
chop يقطع	shop محل
try يحاول/يجرب	dry جاف

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 3

Pre-reading question:

- Do you think your eating habits are healthy? Why/ Why not?

Complete the quiz: *SB page 16*

A healthy food quiz



1. If you want to be healthy, you should eat ..... .
   a) only fruit and vegetables **b)** a lot of meat and cheese
   c) some of all types of food
2. We need to drink ..... glasses of water every day.
   a) eight **b)** two **c)** four
3. Dairy products[1] like milk and cheese help us to ..... .
   a) have lots of hair **b)** have strong bones[2] **c)** run fast
4. Meat, cheese and nuts have protein[3] in them and we need protein to ..... .
   a) sleep well **b)** move fast **c)** have a strong body[4]
5. A lot of sugar ..... .
   a) makes it difficult to sleep **b)** is bad for your teeth
   c) makes you sleep longer
6. Examples of healthy snacks are ..... .
   a) fruit and nuts **b)** chocolate and sweets **c)** salty chips
7. People need to eat ..... pieces of fresh fruit and vegetables every day.
   a) one to two **b)** five to ten **c)** one
8. People often like fast food because ..... .
   a) it has lots of fat and sugar in it **b)** it gives you energy
   c) you can eat a lot of it and not feel full
9. Food is usually healthy and good for you when it is ..... .
   a) expensive **b)** fresh[5] **c)** from a big supermarket

(1) منتجات الألبان
(2) عظام قوية
(3) بروتين
(4) جسم قوى
(5) طازج

Answers:

One point for each correct answer:
(1) c (2) a (3) b (4) c (5) b (6) a (7) b (8) a (9) b

Score 7–9: Very good! You know all about healthy eating.
Score 4–6: Quite good. You need to learn a little more to be really healthy!
Score 1–3: Not good. There are a lot of things you need to learn about healthy eating.

Post-reading question: - How can we help kids to have healthy eating habits?

Pre-reading question:

- What food can you cook well?

Complete the recipes (1) for an omelette (2) and tomato salad (3) with these instructions. *SB page 17*



beat



heat



fry



chop



pour



serve

How to make an omelette

1. Beat (4) two eggs in a bowl with little milk.
2. Add (5) a little salt to the eggs and milk.
3. Heat (6) some butter in a frying pan (7).
4. Pour (8) the eggs into the frying pan and cook them in the butter.
5. When the omelette is ready, take it out of the frying pan and serve (9) with salad.

How to make a tomato salad

1. Take two big tomatoes and half an onion.
2. Chop (10) all the vegetables into small squares.
3. Put the chopped vegetables (11) into a bowl.
4. Add a little oil, salt and lemon juice.
5. Serve the salad with your omelette.

Post-reading question:

- Are these recipes useful for you? Why?

(1) وصفات الطعام/طريقة التحضير (2) أومليت/عجة البيض (3) سلطة طماطم
(4) يخفق (5) يضيف (6) يسخن
(7) قدر القلى (8) يصب (9) يقدم طعامًا/يخدم
(10) يقطع (11) الخضار المقطع

Lesson 3

Pre-reading question:

- When do you usually eat foul mudammas?

Circle the correct words in the recipe. *WB page 79*

How to make foul mudammas

1. **Wash** some beans and put them in a pan.
2. **Add** some water and salt to the beans.
3. **Heat** the beans in the water until it boils.
4. **Pour** some lemon juice over the hot beans.
5. **Serve** it with warm bread.



Post-reading question:

- How can we make foul mudammas?

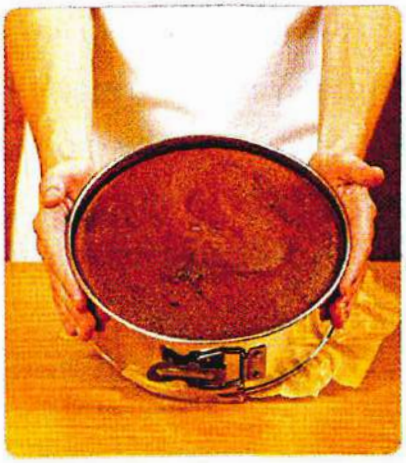
Listening Text

Lesson 4

Pre-listening question:

- What kinds of food do you like?

Listen to four people talking about food. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences. *WB page 80*



Ashraf I'm Ashraf. I really like trying unusual food because I like to taste new things.

Dina My name's Dina. When I was younger, I thought vegetables didn't taste nice at all. Now I like them. I eat a lot of them because I know they are healthy.

Heba I'm Heba. Yesterday I ate fesikh. This is a dry salty fish. It doesn't taste nice at all, and it smells horrible!

Basel My name's Basel. I love the smell of cakes when they are cooking, but I never eat cakes at all. I'm allergic to nuts.

Post-listening questions:

1. What's fesikh?
2. Why can't Basel eat cakes?

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 4

- Why do you think most people like to try unusual food?

Read about some unusual food. Which would or wouldn't you like to try? Why?

SB page 18

Unusual[1] but delicious[2]







Some food smells[3] bad or looks unusual – but still tastes good!

'Durian fruits'[4] grow in Indonesia and Malaysia.

Some fruits can be 30 centimetres long. They are hard and green on the outside, but soft and yellow on the inside. Some people don't want to eat them because they smell terrible[5], but they are very healthy and taste delicious. People use durian fruits to make juice, ice creams and soup.

In the Philippines, people eat something called 'champorado'[6] with 'tuyo'[7] for breakfast. 'Champorado' is sweet chocolate rice and 'tuyo' are small salty fish. For most people, it's unusual to eat sweet and salty things together, but it is popular in the Philippines!

In China, people eat eggs that are months or years old! They are called century eggs and they are black and green inside. To make them, people put fresh eggs under the ground for a long time. Century eggs smell a lot and have a salty taste, but lots of people think they are delicious.

(1) غير معتاد (2) لذيذ

(3) ذو (يصدر) رائحة (4) فاكهة دوريان

(5) فظيع/سيئ جدًا (6) عصيدة أرز الشوكولاتة الحلوة

(7) تويو (سمك)

Comprehension Skills

- Extract information: استخراج المعلومات:

عليك قراءة السؤال جيدًا والتركيز على أداة الاستفهام لمعرفة المطلوب جيدًا ثم العودة للنص.

اقرأ الأسئلة وحاول الإجابة بمفردك ثم تأكد من إجاباتك. الأسئلة خاصة بالقطعة السابقة.

Answer the following questions:

1. How do people prepare century eggs?
2. What is "champorado"?

Answers:

1. People put fresh eggs under the ground for a long time.
2. 'Champorado' is sweet chocolate rice.

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Meat, cheese and nuts have ..... in them. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٤
   a) salt **b)** protein **c)** sugar **d)** milk
2. You should try this new ..... . It's delicious. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) script **b)** recipe **c)** list **d)** menu
3. Use a knife to ..... the vegetables. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) chop **b)** stir **c)** pour **d)** heat
4. My mum ..... some tea into my cup. أسيوط ٢٠٢٤
   a) chopped **b)** poured **c)** boiled **d)** beat
5. They ..... good food in this restaurant. الفيوم ٢٠٢٤
   a) pour **b)** catch **c)** serve **d)** heat
6. Before you fry food, you should ..... some oil in a pan. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) serve **b)** heat **c)** fire **d)** make
7. Mum needs to ..... eggs and milk before making an omelette. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) wash **b)** fry **c)** beat **d)** chop
8. In China, people eat eggs that are months or years old! They are called ..... eggs.
   a) decade **b)** year **c)** month **d)** century
9. Food is usually healthy and good for you when it is ..... . الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) fresh **b)** old **c)** ancient **d)** ugly
10. We always fry eggs in a ..... . بنى سويف ٢٠٢٤
    a) pin **b)** bin **c)** pen **d)** pan
11. It's ..... to see snow in the summer.
    a) usual **b)** unusual **c)** dry **d)** fresh
12. Please, take the milk ..... the fridge.
    a) of **b)** on **c)** out of **d)** up
13. My mother's food ..... delicious. I like it very much.
    a) tastes **b)** feels **c)** hears **d)** touches
14. She read the ..... carefully before using the new machine.
    a) recipes **b)** glasses **c)** instructions **d)** diagrams
15. All ..... need food to get energy.
    a) recipes **b)** humans **c)** bones **d)** squares
16. The teacher drew a ..... on the board to explain the science experiment.
    a) diagram **b)** fork **c)** knife **d)** pan

C Language

Imperatives صيغة الأمر

- تبدأ جملة الأمر بـ (الفعل فى المصدر) inf. ولا يوجد فاعل للجملة.

e.g. • **Chop** the tomatoes! • **Beat** two eggs in a bowl with little milk.

- ويمكن وضع كلمة (please) (من فضلك) وأيضًا المخاطب فى أول الجملة أو آخرها.

e.g. • **Open** the door, please. • Ali, **boil** the eggs.

- ينفى الأمر بكلمة (Don't) ثم (الفعل فى المصدر) inf.

e.g. • **Don't** chop the vegetables too small! • **Don't** add too much salt!

PRACTICE Language Exercises

Practise more

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. ..... a knife to chop the vegetables. الأقصر ٢٠٢٣
   a) Used **b)** Use **c)** Using **d)** Uses
2. ..... watch too much TV. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
   a) Don't **b)** Doesn't **c)** Didn't **d)** Aren't
3. Take the omelette and ..... it with salad. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) serving **b)** serves **c)** serve **d)** doesn't serve
4. ..... all the vegetables into small squares. أزهر-القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) Chopping **b)** Chopped **c)** Chops **d)** Chop
5. ..... drink fizzy drinks! أسيوط ٢٠٢٤
   a) Isn't **b)** Don't **c)** Doesn't **d)** Didn't
6. Don't ..... the milk out of the fridge.
   a) leaves **b)** leave **c)** leaving **d)** left
7. Always ..... up your room before bedtime.
   a) clean **b)** don't clean **c)** not clean **d)** cleaning

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. ..... (Having) breakfast early. It will make you feel fresh. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
2. Don't ..... (touching) electric wires. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٤
3. ..... (Washing) some beans and put them in a pan. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٤
4. Write a letter to your grandparents and ..... (asking) about their health.
5. ..... (Forget) to say "please" and "thank you"; you should be polite.

D Skills

Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

1. How to write about your favourite recipe

كيفية الكتابة عن وصفة الطعام المفضلة

- I always help my mum in the kitchen.
- She always teaches me to make (أنواع الطعام).
- I like to make (اسم الأكلة).
- Firstly, (الخطوة الأولى لصنع الأكلة).
- Then, add (الإضافات). - Finally, (الخطوة الأخيرة).

Writing tips

A good paragraph is composed of a topic sentence (or key sentence), relevant supporting sentences, and a closing sentence.

تتكون الفقرة الجيدة من الجملة الافتتاحية والجمل المترابطة الداعمة والجملة الختامية.

Example

My favourite recipe

I always help my mum in the kitchen. She always teaches me how to make different kinds of food. She gives me easy and clear instructions and I always remember them. I like to make an omelette. Firstly, beat two eggs in a bowl with a little milk. Then, add a little salt to the eggs and milk. Heat some butter in a frying pan. After that, pour the eggs into the frying pan and cook them in the butter. Finally, when the omelette is ready, take it out of the frying pan and serve with salad.

2. How to write about a healthy diet

كيفية الكتابة عن نظام غذائى صحى

- I want to be fit and healthy.
- I go on a healthy diet.
- I eat (أطعمة صحية).
- I drink (مشروبات صحية).
- I never eat or drink (أطعمة ومشروبات غير صحية).
- Everyone should have a healthy diet to live a longer, healthier life.

Example

A healthy diet

I live in a village. I like it very much. The air here is very clean. In my village, the food is very healthy. To start with, people in my village eat a lot of fruit and vegetables, which are very healthy. They eat a lot of eggs, nuts and fish. These have a lot of protein. They are all healthy. Another important point is that they eat dairy products that make their bones strong. Furthermore (علاوة على ذلك), they get enough sleep. They sleep early and get up early. That's why all the people in my village are healthy. To conclude, everyone should have a healthy diet to live a longer, healthier life.

1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Healthy food is really important for everyone. It helps us grow well and gives us energy. If you want to be healthy, you should eat all types of food. We need to drink a lot of water every day. Dairy products like milk and cheese are healthy. They give us calcium. They help us to have strong bones. Meat, cheese and nuts have protein in them. We need protein to build strong bodies. Fruits and nuts are healthy snacks. People need to eat fresh vegetables and fruit every day. Doing sports is so important, too. Unhealthy food habits are the main ***reasons*** for health problems nowadays.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The word "***reasons***" means "……".
   a) meetings **b)** seasons **c)** results **d)** causes
2. Milk and cheese are …… products.
   a) bad **b)** dairy **c)** diary **d)** unhealthy

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What's the main idea of the passage? ……
4. What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to? ……
5. Why do you think we need protein? ……
6. Why should people avoid unhealthy food habits? ……

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My sister prepared a salad with …… eggs and fresh vegetables for breakfast.
   a) soft **b)** dry **c)** boiled **d)** heated
2. Most people like to eat pasta with a …… . القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) fork **b)** knife **c)** pan **d)** bowl
3. Ali, …… some sugar to my tea. دمياط ٢٠٢٣
   a) add **b)** heat **c)** fry **d)** chop
4. We need to eat protein to have a/an …… body.
   a) mazed **b)** unhealthy **c)** weak **d)** strong
5. Fesikh doesn't taste nice at all, and it smells …… .
   a) horrible **b)** cheap **c)** soft **d)** fresh

6. My sister likes to boil the eggs, but I prefer to ..... them.
   a) fry b) chop c) pour d) heat
7. Study hard and ..... well for your test tomorrow.
   a) revising b) revises c) revise d) revised
8. ..... watch too much TV. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
   a) Didn't b) Doesn't c) Don't d) Isn't

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Please, ... (adding) some olive oil to the salad. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
2. ..... (Doesn't) come late again. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
3. ..... (not drink) plenty of water every day.
4. Don't ..... (boiling) eggs more than one time. الفيوم ٢٠٢٤
5. ..... (not) cross the street without looking both ways.

4 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Unusual food"

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It isn't ..... to be worried before a test.
   a) normal b) abnormal c) formal d) informal
2. Success in life doesn't come from following a special .....; it needs hard work.
   a) square b) instruction c) recipe d) diagram

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. ..... (Careful) when you cut the sandwiches.
2. Don't ..... (never) jump off the desk.

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك فى كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

QUESTION	1	2	3	4
TACKLES	Comprehension	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
MARK				

STUDY

Lessons 5 & 6

Watch a video

SB pages 19&20 | WB pages 81&82

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

amount (n)	كمية	main (adj)	أساسى/رئيسى
balanced (adj)	متوازن	own (ed) (v)	يمتلك
cook (n)	طاهٍ/طباخ	point (n)	نقطة
depend (ed) on (v)	يعتمد على	reason (n)	سبب
diet (n)	وجبة/نظام غذائى	relax (ed) (v)	يسترخى
explain (ed) (v)	يشرح	surprise (d) (v)	يدهش/يذهل
introduce (d) (v)	يقدم	upset (v/ adj)	يزعج/منزعج

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

art school (n)	مدرسة الفنون	happen (ed) (v)	يحدث
athletics club (n)	نادٍ/حصة ألعاب القوى	Okinawans (n)	سكان جزيرة أوكيناوا
furthermore (adv)	علاوة على ذلك	restaurant (n)	مطعم

Check Point

Choose and complete: relax – almost – own

1. My grandparents ..... a big house in the countryside.
2. After doing my homework, I like to ..... and watch my favourite show.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

a day/ a night	فى كل يوم/ ليلة	make > sure	يتأكد
do > drawing/painting	يقوم بالرسم/بالتلوين	that's because	هذا لأن
eight hours' sleep	ثمانى ساعات من النوم	that's why	ولهذا السبب

Prepositions — حروف الجر

advice for	نصيحة لـ	speak to	يتحدث مع/إلى
in addition to	بالإضافة إلى	to conclude = on conclusion	وفى الختام
revise for exams	يراجع للامتحانات	worried about	قلق على

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
bring يحضر	brought	brought	give يعطى	gave	given
get up ينهض/يستيقظ	got up	got up	mean يعنى	meant	meant

Check Point

Choose and complete: do – about – for – bring

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر وتصريفات الأفعال.

1. I like to ..... drawing while listening to music.
2. Can you ..... your book to school tomorrow?
3. She is worried ..... the test tomorrow.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 Foods — أطعمة

peppers	فلفل	spinach	سبانخ	sweet potato	بطاطا

2 Countries & Cities — بلاد ومدن

Mali	مالى	Sierra Leone	سيراليون
Okinawa Islands	جزر أوكيناوا اليابانية	Tokyo	طوكيو
Senegal	السنغال	West Africa	غرب إفريقيا

3 too/ either

تستخدم too (أيضًا) فى الجمل المثبتة/وتستخدم either (أيضًا) فى الجمل المنفية لتشير إلى شىء ينطبق على أكثر من شىء أو شخص.

- Ali likes English. Mona likes English **too**.
- Ali doesn't like English. Mona doesn't like English **either**.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word — الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning) — مرادفها
upset متضايق/منزعج	worried/ unhappy قلق/غير سعيد

Suffix اللاحقة

Word — الكلمة	Suffix — اللاحقة	Function — الوظيفة	The new word — الكلمة الجديدة
athlete (n) لاعب رياضى	-ics	تحويل الاسم إلى الرياضة	athletics (n) ألعاب القوى

B Reading & Listening Skills

Listening Text

Pre-listening question: - Which sport do you like doing?

Lesson 5

Listen to three teenagers and complete the information with these words.

SB page 19

Ali My name's Ali. My mum and dad own[1] a restaurant and I often help in the kitchen. The cook is my friend and he is teaching me to make different cakes. The problem is, I'm always trying them, so I eat too many cakes. I also know I don't do enough exercise, but that's because I don't have time. When I'm not at school or doing my homework, I'm usually at the restaurant. I don't want to stop helping my parents, so I don't know what to do.



(1) يملك (2) نظام غذائى صحى

(3) وجبات سريعة (4) نادى ألعاب القوى

(5) طاقة (6) يضايق

Eman I'm Eman. I do a lot of sport and I have a very healthy diet[2]. I eat lots of fruit and vegetables and I almost never eat fast food[3]. I never eat snacks either, not even when I'm really hungry after athletics club[4]. I know eating snacks isn't good for you. But I'm tired all the time. I never feel I get enough sleep, even when I go to bed early! I want to have more energy[5].



Tamer I'm Tamer. I want to go to art school when I'm older, but I don't have enough time to do any drawing or painting at the moment. I'm working really hard at school. I'm worried about my exams. When I feel worried, I don't feel hungry. My mother doesn't think I eat enough, so then she gives me even more food. I don't want to upset[6] her, so I can't tell her it's too much!



Post-listening question:

- Summarise the problems that the three teenagers face.

Lesson 5

SB page 19

Read the advice and answer the questions.



It's good that you don't eat fast food (1), but if you feel very hungry between meals, it's a good idea to have a snack.

How about bringing a few healthy snacks to school on the days when you have athletics club (2)? If you want to have more energy (3), why don't you try eating more food that gives you energy like rice and pasta? Perhaps you could eat a bigger breakfast in the morning, too.

(1) وجبات سريعة (2) حصة ألعاب القوى (3) طاقة

Lesson 6

SB page 20

Pre-reading question:

- Do people in your country have a healthy diet? If yes, talk briefly about it.

Read about Okinawa and answer the questions.

The Okinawan diet

I come from Okinawa (1) in Japan and the diet on my island (2) is very healthy.

This is for three main reasons (3). Firstly, we eat a lot of fresh vegetables. We eat green, purple and yellow vegetables like spinach (4), sweet potato (5) and peppers (6). Furthermore, we don't have much fat in our diet: we only eat a little meat and a few dairy products (7). Another important thing is that we eat a very healthy breakfast. We have soup (8) with spinach or eggs with rice, and this gives us lots of energy to start the day.



Okinawa Island

As you can see, our diet is healthy. That's why Okinawans live a long time. Some of the oldest people in the world live on my island.





(1) جزيرة أوكيناوا (2) جزيرة

(3) أسباب (4) سبانخ

(5) بطاطا حلوة (6) فلفل

(7) منتجات الألبان (8) شوربة

Post-reading questions:

1. Which foods do Okinawans prefer to eat, and which do they avoid?
2. Which Okinawan meal is very healthy? Why?

Lesson 5

Read about sleep and answer the questions. *WB page 81*

How much sleep should we have? The answer depends on your age. Very small babies sleep for about 14 or more hours a day! Children aged six to seventeen should sleep for about ten hours a night. Then you need less sleep. Most people, aged 18–65, need about eight hours' sleep.



Lesson 6

Pre-reading question: - What kinds of food should we eat?

Complete the text with these expressions. *WB page 82*

A healthy diet



It may surprise(1) you to know that West African countries have one of the healthiest diets(2) in the world. Why is this?

(1) يفاجئ

(2) نظام غذائى

(3) بروتين

Firstly, people in countries such as Senegal, Mali and Sierra Leone eat a lot of fruit and vegetables, which are very healthy. **Furthermore**, the people eat a lot of rice, nuts and fish. These have a lot of protein(3).

Another important point is that the people of West Africa don't eat much food with a lot of salt and sugar in it.

To conclude, a healthy diet means eating enough healthy things like fish and vegetables, and not eating a lot of salt, sugar and fast food.

Post-reading questions:

1. What do people in Senegal, Mali and Sierra Leone usually eat?
2. Is the diet healthy or unhealthy? Why?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You should depend ..... yourself. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
   a) in **b)** on **c)** at **d)** for
2. A healthy person should have a/an ..... diet every day to stay healthy. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٤
   a) balanced **b)** normal **c)** unusual **d)** unhealthy
3. ..... can be green, red or yellow. المنيا ٢٠٢٣
   a) Beans **b)** Potatoes **c)** Peppers **d)** Paper
4. It's important to ..... sure that you closed the door before leaving. البحيرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) decide **b)** take **c)** send **d)** make
5. Can you ..... the problem clearly and I may help you? القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) steal **b)** refuse **c)** paint **d)** explain
6. He trains hard to join the ..... club. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) competition **b)** cooking **c)** athletics **d)** test
7. Mum and Dad took me to a cool ..... for my birthday dinner.
   a) restaurant **b)** school **c)** garage **d)** bank
8. The ..... I like playing outside is to have much fun.
   a) addition **b)** amount **c)** point **d)** reason
9. We should have healthy ..... . الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
   a) date **b)** day **c)** daily **d)** diet
10. ..... drawing every day helps to improve your skills.
    a) Making **b)** Doing **c)** Playing **d)** Getting
11. Remember to revise ..... your exams to get high marks.
    a) of **b)** on **c)** to **d)** for
12. Close your eyes and think of happy thoughts to help you ..... .
    a) relax **b)** explain **c)** own **d)** upset
13. I like ice cream; in ..... to that, I enjoy eating cake.
    a) reason **b)** addition **c)** amount **d)** conclusion
14. I go to a/an ..... school to learn how to draw and paint beautiful pictures.
    a) art **b)** sports **c)** athletics **d)** language
15. My mum ..... sweets for us to eat after dinner.
    a) gave **b)** brought **c)** taught **d)** sold

C Language

Quantifiers — مُحددات الكمية

1 enough:

عند التعبير عن العدد أو الكمية (كافية/غير كافية) نستخدم:

- **(enough)** بمعنى (كاف/بقدر كاف) / **(not enough)** (ليس كافيًا) ويأتى بعدها اسم جمع أو اسم غير معدود (كمية).

enough/not enough + اسم جمع /كمية غير معدودة

e.g.
- Adel doesn't do enough **exercise**. (كمية)
- There are enough **chairs** for everybody to sit. (اسم جمع)

2 too many:

عند التعبير عن عدد كثير جدًا عن اللازم نستخدم:

- **(too many)** بمعنى (كثير جدًا أكثر من اللازم) ويأتى بعدها اسم جمع فقط.

too many + اسم جمع

e.g.
- There are too many **people** on the bus. I'll take the next one.
- Your bag has too many **books** inside. You can't close it.

3 too much:

عند التعبير عن كمية كثيرة جدًا عن اللازم نستخدم:

- **(too much)** بمعنى (كثير جدًا أكثر من اللازم) ويأتى بعدها اسم غير معدود (كمية) فقط.

too much + كمية غير معدودة

e.g.
- There is too much **sugar** in the tea. I can't drink it.
- Don't put too much **salt**, please.

Got it ?

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. There were ..... (too much) people at the concert and we couldn't see anything.
   - الإجابة الصحيحة (too many) لأن كلمة people اسم جمع.
2. You spend ..... (too many) time playing computer games. You should study your lessons.
   - الإجابة الصحيحة (too much) لأن كلمة time اسم مفرد لا يُعد (كمية).
3. You don't have ..... (ingredients enough) to bake cookies.
   - الإجابة الصحيحة (enough ingredients) لأن enough يأتى بعدها الاسم.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

Practise more

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I ate ..... cake, so I have a stomachache. دمياط ٢٠٢٤
   a) too much **b)** enough **c)** too many **d)** any
2. Can I have some more sugar, please? There is ..... in this tea. أسوان ٢٠٢٤
   a) too much **b)** too many **c)** a few **d)** not enough
3. Youmna has too ..... clothes in her cupboard.
   a) many **b)** much **c)** any **d)** enough
4. You don't need to buy anything. I think we have ..... food for the journey. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) many **b)** any **c)** enough **d)** little
5. There's ..... smoke in here, I can't breathe. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) too many **b)** too much **c)** enough **d)** any
6. There are too ..... choices on the menu; I can't decide what to order.
   a) many **b)** enough **c)** few **d)** much
7. There ..... enough milk in the fridge for breakfast. We should buy some.
   a) has **b)** hasn't **c)** isn't **d)** is
8. You can't drink seawater because there is ..... salt in it. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) too much **b)** too many **c)** enough **d)** a few
9. Are there enough ..... for all the guests?
   a) chair's **b)** a chair **c)** chair **d)** chairs
10. There was too ..... traffic on the way to work.
    a) lots of **b)** few **c)** much **d)** many

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Eman feels tired all the time and doesn't get ..... (sleep enough). الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
2. I don't like people who ask ..... (too much) questions. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
3. There's too ..... (many) rain, so we can't go out.
4. Walaa didn't save ..... (money enough) for the holiday.
5. Adel spent too many ..... (hour) working yesterday.
6. There were ..... (too much) students in the class. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٤

D Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.



Speaking

Giving advice إعطاء النصح





- It's good that + فعل + فاعل ..... من الجيد أن

● **It's good that you don't eat** fast food.



- It's a good idea to + inf. ..... إنه لفكرة جيدة أن

● **It's a good idea to have** a snack between meals.



- How about + inf. + ing? .....؟ ماذا عن

● **How about bringing** a few healthy snacks to school?



- Why don't you + inf.? .....؟ لم لا

● **Why don't you try** eating more food that gives you energy?



- You could + inf. ..... . يمكنك أن

● Perhaps **you could eat** a bigger breakfast in the morning.

Speaking Exercise



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

Sandy is asking for advice. She's always tired in the morning.

Sandy : Hi Maya, I have a problem.

Maya : (1).....?

Sandy : I'm always tired in the morning.

Maya : (2).....?

Sandy : I usually go to bed very late at night.

Maya : How about going to bed earlier?

Sandy : (3)..... . But I find it hard to sleep early.

Maya : (4)..... .

Sandy : Okay, I'll read a book before bed. Thank you for your advice.

Maya : (5)..... .

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 8 Lessons (5 & 6)

12

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Rana and Mira are talking about going to the club.

Mira : Hello, Rana. How are you?

Rana : (1)..... .

Mira : Bored! What about watching TV?

Rana : (2)..... .

Mira : (3).....?

Rana : It's a good idea to go to the club. Which sport could we play?

Mira : (4)..... .

Rana : That's a good idea. Can you teach me to play tennis?

Mira : (5)..... .

Rana : OK. Let's go.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He works as a/an ..... at a restaurant. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) engineer **b)** artist **c)** cooker **d)** cook
2. The loud noise ..... the baby, and she started to cry.
   a) teach **b)** bring **c)** upset **d)** revise
3. It may ..... you to know that you won the competition. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٤
   a) discuss **b)** upset **c)** surprise **d)** worry
4. Accidents always ..... when drivers are not careful.
   a) explain **b)** happen **c)** make **d)** speak
5. There ..... enough students to help with the project. We need more.
   a) were **b)** weren't **c)** was **d)** wasn't
6. Do you think we have too ..... homework this week?
   a) much **b)** many **c)** enough **d)** any

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. ..... (Are) there enough light in the room to read?
2. Does she have too ..... (much) jobs at home to do?
3. Dina is worried about eating ..... (to) much junk food.
4. Eyad spends too ..... (many) time on his phone.

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك فى كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

QUESTION	1	2	3
TACKLES	Speaking	Vocabulary	Language
MARK			

Al-Adwaa Test On Unit 8

30

A Listening

نص الاستماع
فى نهاية الكتاب.

القاهرة ٢٠٢٤

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Sfenj is a kind of ..... from Morocco.
   - **a)** flour
   - **b)** book
   - **c)** cake
   - **d)** pizza
2. Sfenj has lots of sugar and ..... in it.
   - **a)** fat
   - **b)** salt
   - **c)** sand
   - **d)** pepper
3. Sfenj is very sweet, so it is ..... .
   - **a)** very healthy
   - **b)** not very healthy
   - **c)** very good
   - **d)** very easy
4. We sometimes eat sfenj as a snack with some ..... .
   - **a)** tea or coffee
   - **b)** tea and sugar
   - **c)** vanilla and sugar
   - **d)** tea or milk

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

الشرقية ٢٠٢٤

Remas likes pasta and Shahd would like to learn to make it.

Remas : What's your favourite food, Shahd?

Shahd : I love pizza! (1)..... ?

Remas : I love pasta with tomato sauce.

Shahd : Delicious! How do you feel if you eat too much pasta?

Remas : (2)..... .

Shahd : Full! Do you know how to make pasta?

Remas : (3)..... .

Shahd : (4)..... ?

Remas : Surely my mother taught me to make pasta!

Shahd : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions: الشرقية ٢٠٢٤

To be healthy, one should follow some rules and have some good habits. Firstly, we should eat healthy food. We should choose our food carefully. We should eat food that gives us energy and helps us to have strong bodies. We should drink enough water. We should do sports to have strong bodies. We should also have enough sleep. I think we should go to bed early and get up early. If we feel tired, we should relax to renew our energy and continue our life. We also should spend some time with our family and friends talking and having fun. This makes us feel happy and gives us positive power. This power helps us to face our problems and overcome them.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to ..... .
   a) sports **b)** habits **c)** problems **d)** friends
2. If we feel tired, we should have a ..... .
   a) meal **b)** sandwich **c)** water **d)** rest

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage? .....
4. Why do you think we should spend some time with family and friends?
   .....
5. What makes sports important for us? .....
6. What are some habits that help us have strong bodies? .....

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Seif asked the teacher which ..... of book he should read.
   a) type **b)** fat **c)** example **d)** salt
2. For this ....., you need the juice of two lemons. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
   a) script **b)** recipe **c)** menu **d)** list
3. I use a ..... to eat pasta, especially spaghetti.
   a) fork **b)** knife **c)** square **d)** pan
4. ..... food tastes hot. WB
   a) Juicy **b)** Nice **c)** Sweet **d)** Spicy

5. Everyone should have food that ..... them energy. WB

a) has b) makes c) gets d) gives

6. What are the ..... ingredients in falafel?

a) main b) same c) similar d) soft

7. Don't ..... the birds, I've already done that. WB

a) feed b) feeding c) feeds d) fed

8. There are ..... trees in front of my house.

a) a b) a little c) a few d) much

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I think there is ..... (a few) cheese in this dish. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤

2. There aren't ..... (some) students in the classroom. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٤

3. ..... (Not leave) your clothes on the floor.

4. He drank ..... (too many) coffee this morning.

5. Amira ..... (like) play tennis.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"How to stay healthy" الجيزة ٢٠٢٤

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك فى كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

QUESTION	1	2	3	4	5	6
TACKLES	Listening	Speaking	Reading	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
MARK						

Bubble Sheet Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Nader is advising Lily to take a break and relax.

Nader : Hi, Lily! How's your day going?

Lily : Hi, Nader! (1)..... .

a) I am really good **b)** I am hungry

c) I feel better **d)** I'm a little bit tired

Nader : Tired? (2).....?

a) Why don't we go out **b)** How about going to the park

c) What about visiting our uncle **d)** Why don't you take a break and relax

Lily : That's a good idea. I'll take a break and relax.

Nader : What do you feel like doing later?

Lily : (3).....?

a) How about going to the park **b)** What about sleeping eight hours

c) Why don't we read a book **d)** Let's go to the cinema

Nader : That sounds great! I can show you bike tricks in the park.

Lily : Awesome! Can you teach me how to do all the tricks?

Nader : (4)..... . We could practise them together.

a) No, I can't **b)** Sorry, I am busy **c)** Yes, I do **d)** Yes, of course

Lily : (5).....! I can't wait to learn.

a) That's great **b)** That's not good **c)** It's horrible **d)** I am not excited

2 Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d:

1. There is too ..... (many) noise in the library.

a) any **b)** much **c)** a lot of **d)** some

2. ..... (Talked) with your mouth full.

a) Don't talk **b)** Not talk **c)** Talk **d)** Talking

3. ..... (Does) Ali like to meet us at the park?

a) Will **b)** Did **c)** Would **d)** Do

4. I need ..... (a lot) minutes to finish this. I'm close to the end.

a) a few **b)** a little **c)** many **d)** much

5. My cousins didn't bring ..... (some) snacks for the trip.

a) lots **b)** little **c)** much **d)** any

ANSWER HERE

Q 1	1 (a) (b) (c) (d)	2 (a) (b) (c) (d)	3 (a) (b) (c) (d)	4 (a) (b) (c) (d)	5 (a) (b) (c) (d)
Q 2	1 (a) (b) (c) (d)	2 (a) (b) (c) (d)	3 (a) (b) (c) (d)	4 (a) (b) (c) (d)	5 (a) (b) (c) (d)

Module 4 Question Bank On Units 7&8

1 Complete the following dialogue:

A) Osama and Ahmed are talking about technology. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤

Osama : Hi, Ahmed. What are you reading?
Ahmed : Hi, Osama. (1)..... .
Osama : Technology! Do you like technology?
Ahmed : (2)..... .
Osama : (3).....?
Ahmed : The most important invention is the internet.
Osama : (4).....?
Ahmed : Because no one can live without it.
Osama : Can you help me to use it?
Ahmed : (5)..... .

B) Aya and Dina are talking about popular snacks. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٤

Aya : What's your favourite snack, Dina?
Dina : (1)..... .
Aya : I like koshari too, but I like falafel more.
Dina : (2).....?
Aya : Falafel is made from beans and vegetables.
Dina : (3).....?
Aya : I usually eat it for breakfast.
Dina : Well, what other popular snacks do you like?
Aya : (4)..... . Do you like it?
Dina : (5)..... . Hawawshi is delicious.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We should use ..... to make electricity from the sun. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٤
a) plates **b)** solar panels **c)** magazines **d)** chemicals

2. In your opinion, what is the most important ....., the mobile phone or the plane? بورسعيد ٢٠٢٤
a) speed **b)** shopping **c)** invention **d)** invitation

3. Eman is ..... to chocolate. When she eats it, it makes her feel ill. القليوبية ٢٠٢٤
a) popular **b)** addicted **c)** lucky **d)** allergic

4. My friend is sending me a ..... message on my phone. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
a) text **b)** street **c)** picnic **d)** silent

5. It was not easy for him to join the school ..... team. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
a) allergic **b)** athlete **c)** athletics **d)** tests

6. We call foods that are made from milk "……". أسيوط ٢٠٢٢

a) fast food b) snacks c) diet d) dairy products

7. Can you …… some hot water into my cup? المنيا ٢٠٢٣

a) wash b) pour c) clean d) beat

8. A healthy person should have a/an …… diet every day. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣

a) balanced b) normal c) unusual d) unhealthy

9. Most children are …… to video games. القليوبية ٢٠٢٤

a) addicted b) worried c) broken d) damaged

10. My brother depends …… me to do this homework. أسيوط ٢٠٢٤

a) for b) with c) at d) on

11. When you …… tired, you should have a break. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣

a) are b) be c) were d) will be

12. …… tell my teacher if I don't understand? الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢

a) I shouldn't b) I should c) Should I d) Did I

13. You …… swim in the sea if the waves are very high. الغربية ٢٠٢٢

a) have to b) had to c) should d) shouldn't

14. How …… books have you got? بنى سويف ٢٠٢٤

a) many b) much c) a little d) little

15. There's …… pasta left in the cupboard. Shall we eat it tonight? بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣

a) lot b) many c) a little d) a few

16. Dinner will …… in a minute. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

a) serve b) serving c) be served d) able to serve

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If you eat too much, you will …… (putting) on weight. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
2. If you …… (not/study) hard for the exam, you won't pass. قنا ٢٠٢٣
3. You should …… (brushed) your teeth every day. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
4. This machine will be able to …… (flying) very high. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٤
5. You shouldn't …… (talking) when you are at the library. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
6. If Ali comes first, he …… (be) very happy. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٤
7. I haven't seen …… (some) tigers in the zoo. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
8. He wasn't very hungry, so he didn't eat …… (little) rice. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
9. There is …… (a few) juice in the glass. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
10. …… (Will) you like to eat meat for lunch? بنى سويف ٢٠٢٤

MODULE 5

مقرر الشهور
مارس وأبريل



Unit 9 Watch, listen and make

Unit 10 We are what we wear

Module 5 Question Bank

Selected from Previous Exams



Unit 9

WATCH, LISTEN AND MAKE

OBJECTIVES OF THE UNIT

Reading	An internet chat message; a review of an art gallery; *Little Women*; a review of a film
Writing	A short review; a paragraph on a musician
Listening	A report about an orchestra; an invitation on the telephone
Speaking	Saying what people can do; talking about preferences and giving recommendations; inviting a person somewhere
Language	Talking about ability: can, know how to and be able to
Life Skills	Collaboration; respect for diversity

STUDY Lessons 1 & 2

Watch a video

SB pages 22 - 25 | WB pages 84 & 85

A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

act (ed) (v)	يمثل	painting (n)	لوحة ملونة
artist (n)	فنان	play (ed) (v/n)	يعزف/مسرحية
calligraphy (n)	فن الخط	recommend (ed) (v)	يوصى/يرشح
century (n)	قرن (١٠٠ عام)	review (n)	نقد/مراجعة
clay (n)	طين/صلصال	scenery (n)	منظر طبيعى
colourful (adj)	زاهى الألوان	script (n)	نص كتابى/سيناريو
concert hall (n)	قاعة حفلات موسيقية	statue (n)	تمثال
costumes (n)	ملابس خاصة بمناسبة/أزياء	stone (n)	حجر
drama club (n)	نادى الدراما	textile (n)	نسيج
Islamic (adj)	إسلامى	theatre (n)	مسرح
musical instrument (n)	آلة موسيقية		

Types of art أنواع الفن

cartoon (n)	رسم متحرك	portrait (n)	صورة فنية للوجه
drawing (n)	رسم	pottery (n)	فخار/خزف
photograph (n)	صورة فوتوغرافية	sculpture (n)	النحت

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

ability (n)	قدرة	French (n)	اللغة الفرنسية
activities (n)	أنشطة	look (ed) like	يشبه
area (n)	منطقة	programme (n)	برنامج
describe (d) (v)	يصف	show (n)	عرض
excited (adj)	متحمس/منفعل	sound (v)	يبدو

Check Point

Choose and complete: clay – painting – sculpture – excited

1. I bought a beautiful ..... to hang in my living room.
2. He made a ..... of a horse using stone. It's cool.
3. Fatma was ..... to show her science project.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

(n) = noun | (adj) = adjective | (prep) = preposition
(v) = verb | (adv) = adverb | (conj) = conjunction

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

answer	the phone	يرد على الهاتف	play	an instrument	يعزف على آلة موسيقية
do	make-up	يقوم بوضع مكياج		music	يعزف الموسيقى
have	an end-of-year show	لديه عرض نهاية العام	take	photos	يلتقط صورًا
paint	scenery	يرسم منظرًا طبيعيًا	sew	costumes (أزياء خاصة بمناسبة)	يخيط ملابس
pay	money	يدفع مالًا	write	a script	يكتب نصًا/سيناريو

Prepositions — حروف الجر

from my point of view	من وجهة نظرى	interested in	مهتم بـ
get ready for	يستعد لـ	look through	ينظر من خلال
help with	يساعد فى	the best at	الأفضل فى

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
show يعرض/يبين	showed	shown	speak يتحدث	spoke	spoken
pay يدفع (مالًا)	paid	paid	teach يُعلم/يُدرس	taught	taught
sew يخيط	sewed	sewn	know يعرف	knew	known

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym) عكسها	Word الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym) عكسها
amazing مذهل/مدهش	boring ممل	busy مزدحم/مشغول	empty/free فارغ
ancient قديم جدًا/أثرى	modern حديث	cool رائع	terrible فظيع

Check Point

Choose and complete: sewed – on – with – ancient – answer

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر وتصريفات الأفعال والكلمات وعكسها.

1. Please, ... the phone quickly.
2. Can you help me ..... my homework?
3. We learned a lot about ..... Egypt in history class.
4. My mum ..... the costumes for the play. They were wonderful.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 **talk to + someone + about + (inf. + ing/n.)** يتحدث إلى ... عن ...

- I talk to **the people** at drama club about **acting**.

2 **interested in + (inf. + ing/n.)** مهتم بـ

- I was interested in **seeing** art by Egyptians from the 20th and 21st centuries.
- I am interested in **Egyptian** art.

3 **recommend + (inf. + ing/n.)** يوصى بـ/يرشح

- I recommend **visiting** the Egyptian Museum of Modern Art if you are in Cairo.

4 **(be) + the best at + (inf. + ing/n.)** يكون الأفضل فى

- Lara is the best at **doing** make-up.
- Mariam is the best at **English**.

5 **Study the following places:** ادرس هذه الأماكن:

El Sawy Culture Wheel	ساقية الصاوى	the Egyptian Museum of Modern Art	المتحف المصرى للفن الحديث
the Cairo Opera House	دار الأوبرا المصرية	the Textile Museum	متحف النسيج

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I recommend ..... this book. It's fantastic.
   a) read b) to read
   c) to reading d) reading
2. We talked ..... our parents about moving to a new city.
   a) to b) at
   c) for d) of
3. My brother is the best at ..... basketball on the team.
   a) play b) playing
   c) to play d) to playing
4. Ghada is interested in ..... different languages.
   a) learn b) learns
   c) learning d) learned

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Definitions — التعريفات

artist فنان	a person who paints or draws for a job
cartoon رسم متحرك	a funny drawing usually showing people or animals
costumes ملابس/أزياء خاصة	clothes that you wear to look like someone or something else
free مجانًا	without paying money
portrait صورة فنية للوجه	a painting or photograph of a person's face
pottery فخار/خزف	things that are made from clay, such as cups and plates
script سيناريو	the words of a play
sculpture نحت	art made from stone or wood that looks like people, animals or other things

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning) مرادفها
busy مزدحم	crowded مزدحم
cool رائع	wonderful رائع

Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
art (n) رسم/فن	-ist	تحويل الاسم إلى اسم فاعل	artist (n) فنان
music (n) موسيقى	-al	تحويل الاسم إلى صفة	musical (adj) موسيقى

Similar Spelling - Different Meaning

Word الكلمة	Similar word الكلمة المشابهة
cartoon رسم متحرك	carton صندوق كرتون
costumes ملابس/أزياء	customs عادات
pottery فخار/خزف	poetry شِعر

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

B Reading & Listening Skills

Read the chat messages about the activities on page 22. Was your idea in Discuss correct?

Lesson 1

SB page 23

Habiba: Mrs Medhat says we can have an end-of-year show! It will be about the play(1) we read in the English class. I'm very excited, but I need help! Can anyone act(2) or write scripts(3)? We also need people who are able to do make-up, sew costumes(4), paint scenery(5) and play instruments(6).



Lamar: Cool! I can talk to the people at drama club(7) about acting.

Azza: Mariam and I know how to sew costumes! We love clothes and Lara is THE BEST at doing make-up!



Lara: YES!! I can do make-up.

Manal: I can paint scenery if you want, but I can't do make-up. Are you able to help with music, Talia?



Talia: Yes, I can play the music! It sounds fun. Habiba, you are the best at writing, can you write the script?

Habiba: OK, I can try to write something … You are all amazing!!! Thanks so much!



(1) مسرحية

(2) يمثل

(3) سيناريوهات

(4) يخيط ملابس

(5) يرسم منظرًا طبيعيًا

(6) يعزف على آلات موسيقية

(7) نادى الدراما

Comprehension Skills

"Giving the main idea" «مهارة إعطاء الفكرة الأساسية»

- **The main idea** means **what the text is about.** الفكرة الرئيسية تعنى ما يدور حوله النص.

To find the main idea easily, you should follow these steps:

لتجد الفكرة الرئيسية بسهولة عليك اتباع الخطوات التالية:

1. Look at the title. انتبه للعنوان.
2. Read the first sentence. اقرأ الجملة الأولى.
3. Read the last sentence. اقرأ الجملة الأخيرة.
4. Look for repeated words or phrases. ابحث عن الكلمات والعبارات المكررة.

Example:

What's the main idea of the previous passage?

The main idea of the passage is about a group of students who are organising a school show based on a play they read.

Pre-reading question: - Which museum would you like to visit? Why?

Lesson 2

Read the review and check the bolded words in your dictionary. Which types of art from Exercise 1 does it describe? *SB page 24*

Review of the Museum of Modern Egyptian Art

by Wagdy Badr



Last month, I visited the Egyptian Museum of Modern Art in Cairo. Egypt is famous for its ancient art, but I was interested in seeing art by Egyptians from the 20th and 21st centuries(1).

From my point of view, the artists(2) were really good because they showed what life was like in Egypt in the past and now. There were portraits(3) of both important and normal Egyptian people. I thought the cartoons(4) were also really cool! I also saw lots of sculptures(5), both big and small.

My favourite thing in the museum was a painting(6) called *Al Madina* by Mahmoud Said. It made me feel happy because it was very colourful(7).

The best thing about the museum is that it is free to visit! I recommend(8) visiting it if you are in Cairo, but it's a good idea to go early when it is not very busy.

(1) قرون
(2) فنانون
(3) لوحات فنية للوجه
(4) رسوم متحركة
(5) منحوتات
(6) لوحة ملونة
(7) زاهى الألوان
(8) يوصى/يرشح

Complete the review of a museum with these words. *WB page 85*

Review of the Textile Museum(1) in Cairo, by Injy Zaki



Last month, I visited the Textile Museum in Cairo. The museum has lots of clothes from different times in history. I thought the clothes from Ancient Egypt were fantastic. From my point of view, the statues(2) showing people wearing the clothes really teach you about life in the past. My favourite thing was the Islamic area(3) where you can see different kinds of calligraphy(4).

I recommend looking at the clothes from other countries, too, such as Iran. They are very interesting. If you want to take photos, it is a good idea to take a good camera, because the museum is quite dark.

(1) متحف النسيج
(2) تماثيل
(3) منطقة إسلامية
(4) فن الخط

Post-reading question:

- What's the main idea of the previous passages?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An ..... is a person who paints or draws for a job. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٤
   a) artist b) doctor c) teacher d) musician
2. My friend asked me if I could ..... make-up. الأقصر ٢٠٢٤
   a) take b) send c) do d) give
3. My friend Sama is good at writing ..... for plays. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) scripts b) scenery c) costumes d) instruments
4. There are ..... of important and normal Egyptian people in the museum. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) plays b) cartoons c) portraits d) films
5. The children spend their Saturdays watching ..... on TV. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) cartoons b) cartons c) costumes d) views
6. Basant is good at ..... clothes. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
   a) saw b) see c) sewing d) seen
7. It's a good idea to go early when the museum is not very ..... .
   a) clean b) tidy c) empty d) busy
8. Which musical ..... is your favourite? القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) machine b) script c) instrument d) costume
9. The ..... is fantastic in the play; you feel like you are in the mountains! القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) scenery b) costume c) pottery d) instrument
10. ..... is art made from stone or wood that looks like people or animals.
    a) Pottery b) Portraits c) Sculpture d) Cartoon
11. Things that are made from clay, such as cups and plates are called ..... . الدقهلية ٢٠٢٤
    a) scenery b) portrait c) sculpture d) pottery
12. I like going to the ..... to see exciting shows.
    a) theatre b) library c) airport d) port
13. Eyad is interested ..... playing basketball.
    a) for b) on c) in d) at
14. Hanaa found a ..... online course to learn Spanish. She doesn't have to pay.
    a) free b) busy c) ready d) fun
15. The flowers in the garden are very ..... . They're very cool.
    a) colourful b) dark c) busy d) free
16. I saw an amazing ..... in the museum.
    a) cartoon b) firefighter c) statue d) script

C Language

Ability القدرة

e.g. • I can **speak** English. • I know how to **speak** English.
• I am able to **speak** English.

من خلال الأمثلة السابقة نستنتج أن هناك عدة طرق للتعبير عن قدرتك على فعل شىء ما:

1 can/can't: (يستطيع أن/لا يستطيع أن)

Form التكوين

Affirmative الإثبات **Subject** الفاعل + **can** + **inf.** مصدر الفعل

e.g. • I can **play** tennis well. • Aya can **do** make-up.

Subject الفاعل
I, We, They, You, He, She, It
اسم مفرد/ اسم جمع

Negative النفى **Subject** + **cannot (can't)** + **inf.**

e.g. • My brother and I cannot (can't) **play** musical instruments.
• Anas cannot (can't) **pull** this bag. It's so heavy.

لاحظ اختصار (cannot) إلى can't

Yes/No question السؤال بهل **Can** + **subject** + **inf.**?

e.g. • Can they **write** scripts? • Can Maged **run** fast?

Got it ? تُمكِّنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 My little sister can't ..... (feeding) herself.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (feed) لأن can't يتبعها فعل فى المصدر.

2 Where are my keys? I ..... (can) find them.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (can't) لأن الجملة تعبر عن عدم القدرة على فعل شىء.

2 (be) able to: (يكون قادرًا على أن)

Form التكوين

Affirmative الإثبات **Subject** الفاعل + **am/is/are** + **able to** + **inf.** مصدر الفعل

e.g. • I am able to paint scenery. • Tamer is able to play chess.
• We are able to act in the play.

Negative النفى **Subject** + **am/is/are** + **not** + **able to** + **inf.**

e.g. • I am not able to speak French. • She is not able to sew costumes.
• Sara and Mai aren't able to ride bikes.

Yes/No question السؤال بهل **Am/ Is/ Are** + **subject** + **able to** + **inf.**?

e.g. • Is your grandfather able to send an email?
• Are they able to play instruments?

Got it ? تُمكِّنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 Cats ..... (able to) jump very high.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (are able to) لأن able to يأتى قبلها am/ is/ are والفاعل هنا جمع.

2 Is he able ..... (climb) the mountain?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (to climb) لأن able يتبعها to + inf.

3 know how to: (يعرف كيف أن)

Form التكوين

Affirmative الإثبات

Subject الفاعل + **know/knows how to** + **inf.** مصدر الفعل

e.g. I know how to **play** the piano.
Nancy knows how to **drive** a car.

Negative النفى

Subject + **don't/doesn't** + **know how to** + **inf.**

e.g. You don't know how to **write** an email.
He doesn't know how to **paint** scenery.

Yes/No question السؤال بهل

Do/ Does + **subject** + **know how to** + **inf.**?

e.g. Do kids know how to **live** healthy?
Does your mum know how to **make** rice pudding?

Got it ? تُمكِّنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 ..... (Can) you know how to repair your car?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Do) لأن know how to يأتى قبلها فى السؤال do أو does والفاعل هنا you.

2 My grandfather ..... (not/know) how to use a laptop.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (doesn't know) لأن الجملة منفية والفاعل هنا مفرد.



PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I can't ..... my keys anywhere.
   a) find b) found c) finds d) finding
2. Yara ..... play music.
   a) able to b) are able to c) is able to d) able
3. ..... Ahmed play tennis or football?
   a) Has b) Do c) Can d) Is
4. We ..... come to the party tonight. We are very busy.
   a) can b) aren't able to c) able to d) don't know
5. Amira and Hadeer ..... how to sew a dress.
   a) doesn't know b) can't c) aren't able d) don't know
6. ..... Ayman able to swim across the lake?
   a) Is b) Does c) Can d) Has
7. ..... ride a horse?
   a) Are you b) Can you c) You can d) You do
8. My mum ..... how to cook Italian food.
   a) able b) can c) knows d) know
9. Waleed ..... speak three languages well. He is good at languages.
   a) is able to b) isn't able to c) knows how d) doesn't know how
10. ..... able to complete the report on Friday?
    a) Are you b) Can you c) Do you d) You are

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The dog ..... (not/know) how to climb the tree.
2. Can Hossam ..... (carrying) that heavy box?
3. Are they able ..... (join) us for dinner?
4. The mechanic knows how ..... (to fixing) my father's car.
5. This telephone is terrible. I ..... (can) hear you at all.
6. ..... (your grandpa/know) how to use this tablet?

Time to Practise



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I'm ..... draw and paint pictures. القليوبية ٢٠٢٤
   a) can b) able to c) do d) have
2. Do you know ..... this car? دمياط ٢٠٢٤
   a) to drive b) how to drive c) to driving d) how drive
3. **A:** ..... you able to speak more than two languages? **B:** Yes, I am. دمياط ٢٠٢٤
   a) Were b) Are c) Am d) Do
4. How ..... you solve this puzzle? القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) are able to b) are c) were d) can
5. Do you know how to ..... a musical instrument? القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) plays b) play c) played d) playing
6. She is seven years old, but she ..... to read yet. الأقصر ٢٠٢٣
   a) can b) can't c) could d) isn't able
7. I ..... swim very quickly. I'm the best swimmer. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
   a) able to b) don't c) can't d) can
8. Badr is ..... paint well. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
   a) can b) able to c) know how to d) knows how
9. My father knows how ..... his car himself. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
   a) repair b) repairing c) to repairing d) to repair
10. ..... you know how to do any types of art? الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
    a) Are b) Can c) Do d) Have

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Ali ..... (be) able to speak four languages. أسوان ٢٠٢٤
2. I know how ..... (spell) long words. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٤
3. Can Shimaa ..... (playing) the guitar? بنى سويف ٢٠٢٤
4. He ..... (not/know) how to play an instrument. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
5. I ..... (able) to do the washing up by myself. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
6. ..... (Do) you able to help with music? بنى سويف ٢٠٢٤

D Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

1. Speaking

1. Expressions of description تعبيرات الوصف

famous مشهور/ancient أثرى/really good حقًا جيد/important هام/interesting شيق/
exciting مثير/boring ممل/normal عادى/really cool حقًا رائع/colourful زاهى الألوان/
busy مزدحم

2. Expressions of giving an opinion تعبيرات إعطاء الرأى

From my point of view من وجهة نظرى/I thought أعتقد/
It made me feel + صفة ... جعلنى أشعر بـ/In my opinion, فى رأيى

3. Expressions of preference تعبيرات التفضيل

My favourite thing الشىء المفضل لى/I liked ... the most. أحببت ... الأكثر/
The best thing about أفضل شىء عن

4. Expressions of giving a recommendation تعبيرات إعطاء التوصية

I recommend ... أوصى بـ/It's a good idea to + inf. إنها فكرة جيدة أن

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

Tamer is telling Ahmed about his visit to a museum. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤

Ahmed : Hello Tamer, how are you?
Tamer : (1)..... .
Ahmed : (2).....?
Tamer : Last month, I visited the Egyptian Museum of Modern Art in Cairo.
Ahmed : (3).....?
Tamer : I saw lots of statues.
Ahmed : Is it free to visit?
Tamer : (4)..... .
Ahmed : Did you enjoy your time there?
Tamer : (5)..... .

2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write a review of a museum

كيف تكتب نقدًا عن متحف

- Egypt has many famous and interesting museums.
- There are new and ancient museums in Egypt, but I prefer the ancient ones.
- I visited (اسم المتحف) in (المحافظة).
- I liked it very much. You can see many arts there.
- The museum has (ما يتميز به المتحف).
- My favourite thing was (أفضل ما رأيت فى المتحف).
- If you want to take photos, it is a good idea to take a good camera, because the museum is quite dark.

Writing tips

Use the active voice
In English, readers prefer the SVO sentence sequence: **(Subject, Verb, Object)**
This is the active voice. Passive sentences bore people.

استخدم المبنى للمعلوم:
يفضل قراء اللغة الإنجليزية استخدام المبنى للمعلوم حيث إن كثرة استخدام المبنى للمجهول تسبب الملل.

Example

A review of a museum

Egypt has many famous and interesting museums. There are new and ancient museums in Egypt, but I prefer the ancient ones. I visited the Textile Museum in Cairo. I liked it very much. You can see many arts there. The museum has lots of clothes from different times in history. I thought the clothes from Ancient Egypt were fantastic. You can know a lot of information about life in the past from the statues there. My favourite thing was the Islamic area where you can see different kinds of calligraphy. If you want to take photos, it is a good idea to take a good camera because the museum is quite dark.

Check Point

Write a paragraph on:

"The Egyptian Museum of Modern Art"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: الشرقية ٢٠٢٤

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. The speaker visited a ..... last month.
   a) theatre b) museum c) pyramid d) temple
2. The place that the speaker visited was in ..... .
   a) Cairo b) Aswan c) Luxor d) Giza
3. Egypt is famous for its ancient ..... .
   a) music b) history c) art d) monuments
4. The speaker was interested in seeing art by ..... .
   a) Americans b) Africans c) Greeks d) Egyptians

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ali and Nour are visiting the Egyptian Museum. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٤

Ali : Where are you going on your weekend?
Nour : (1)..... .
Ali : Did you visit it before?
Nour : (2)..... .
Ali : (3).....?
Nour : We can visit it on Friday.
Ali : (4).....?
Nour : We can see a lot of interesting ancient objects.
Ali : Where can we meet?
Nour : (5)..... .

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Aya is learning ..... . She wants to improve her handwriting. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
   a) technology b) biology c) geography d) calligraphy
2. Old bowls were made of ..... from the river. أسيوط ٢٠٢٤
   a) wood b) glass c) clay d) water
3. A ..... is a period of 100 years. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
   a) decade b) fortnight c) week d) century
4. I like to ..... photos of my family and friends.
   a) take b) make c) do d) appear
5. Do you know the name of the most famous concert ..... in Egypt?
   a) hall b) hole c) hell d) hill

6. Hana and I know how to sew ..... . أسيوط ٢٠٢٤

a) structures b) costumes c) scripts d) interview

7. ..... you able to play any musical instruments? القاهرة ٢٠٢٤

a) Do b) Are c) Have d) Can

8. We ..... travel to another country without a passport. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢

a) can b) are able to c) can't d) know how

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Athletes are able to ..... (climbing) mountains easily. دمياط ٢٠٢٤
2. Mona doesn't know ..... (what) to write an email. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٤
3. ..... (you can) help me with this project?
4. Ouch, it hurts! I ..... (able) move my arm at all.
5. ..... (Does) you know how to make an omelette?

5 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Your visit to the Egyptian Museum of Modern Art"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

1. Maya's father had ordered an artist to paint a ..... on the ceiling.

a) review b) cartoon c) scene d) drawing

2. In our art class, we are learning about ..... .

a) scenery b) show c) statue d) sculpture

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. ..... (I/able) to change my mobile phone?
2. Ali and I ..... (not) able to come to the party.

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك فى كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

QUESTION	1	2	3	4	5
TACKLES	Listening	Speaking	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
MARK					

STUDY Lessons 3 & 4

Watch a video

SB pages 26 - 28 | WB pages 86 & 87

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

Arabic music (n)	الموسيقى العربية	painter (n)	رسام/نقاش
blind (adj)	أعمى	proud (of) (adj)	فخور (بـ)
chamber (n)	غرفة/ حجرة	radio report (n)	تقرير إذاعى
character (n)	شخصية	radio reporter (n)	مراسل إذاعى
deaf (adj)	أصم	relationship (n)	علاقة
disabled (adj)	معاق	reply (y ied) (v)	يرد
hug (ged) (v)	يعانق	rival (n)	خصم/نِد/منافس
join (ed) (v)	ينضم إلى	skill (n)	مهارة
musician (n)	موسيقى/عازف	sign language (n)	لغة الإشارة
newspaper (n)	جريدة/صحيفة	wonder (ed) (v)	يتساءل/يتعجب
orchestra (n)	أوركسترا (فرقة موسيقية)		

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

Braille (n)	طريقة برايل للمكفوفين	produce (d) (v)	ينتج
closely (adv)	عن قرب	recently (adv)	حديثًا
cry (y ied) (v)	يبكى/ يصرخ	recommendation (n)	توصية/ترشيح
honest (adj)	أمين	slope = ramp (n)	منحدر
imagine (d) (v)	يتخيل	traffic light (n)	إشارة المرور
patience (n)	الصبر	wheelchair (n)	كرسى متحرك

Check Point

Choose and complete: musician – join – cry – produce

1. Reda wants to ..... the football team at school.
2. Laila likes music. She wants to be a ..... .
3. The company plans to ..... electric cars.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

do › reading	يقوم بالقراءة	make › notes	يدون ملاحظات
give › a hug	يعانق/يحتضن	play › concerts	يعزف فى حفلات موسيقية
have › difficulties	لديه صعوبات	swap › roles	يتبادل الأدوار

Prepositions — حروف الجر

at the end	فى النهاية	shout at	يصيح فى وجه
come into	يدخل	special school for	مدرسة خاصة لـ
in a wheelchair	على كرسى متحرك	with hands	باستخدام اليد
on public transport	فى المواصلات العامة		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
hide يختبئ/يخفى	hid	hidden	throw يرمى	threw	thrown

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym) عكسها	Word الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym) عكسها
classical قديم/كلاسيكى	modern حديث	international عالمى/دولى	national/ local محلى
frightened خائف	brave شجاع	public عام (للجمهور)	private خاص (ملكية)
strange غريب	usual عادى	surprising مدهش/مفاجئ	normal عادى

Check Point

Choose and complete: at – hide – for – swap – do

1. The teacher asked us to ..... roles to learn new skills.
2. The cat likes to ..... under the bed.
3. Suzan felt sad when her brother shouted ..... her.
4. My cousin goes to a special school ..... the blind.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر وتصريفات الأفعال والكلمات وعكسها.

Language Notes


ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 Adjectives ending in (-ing) and (-ed): الصفات المنتهية بـ (ing) أو (ed)

نستخدم الصفات المنتهية بـ (ing) عند وصف مسبب الصفة للآخرين.

نستخدم الصفات المنتهية بـ (ed) عند وصف الشعور بالصفة.

- The boys are wearing masks in front of the girls. The boys are frightening and the girls are frightened.

2 Musical instruments الآلات الموسيقية

cello	التشيلو	trombone	الترومبون
clarinet	كلارينيت	trumpet	بوق
flute	الفلوت	violin	الكمان
piano	البيانو		

الآلات الموسيقية يأتى قبلها (the) إذا جاءت بغرض العزف/الاستماع/التعلم

- She is able to play the piano very well.
- My father bought me a piano.

3 special خاص/مميز (لفئة من الناس ولكن ليست ملكًا لهم)

- He goes to a special school for the blind.

private خاص (ذو ملكية خاصة بشخص)

- That's my private Facebook account.

4 unable غير قادر على فعل شىء معين

- My friend is unable to use the computer.

the disabled متحدى الإعاقة (اسم جمع)

- These seats are specially for the disabled.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I always feel ..... after a long school day.
   a) tiring b) tired c) tire d) tires
2. Fatma plays the ..... in the school band.
   a) slope b) flat c) flute d) role
3. My father wants to have a ..... car because he doesn't like public transport.
   a) private b) special c) common d) local

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Definitions — التعريفات

blind أعمى	not able to see
deaf أصم	not able to hear
disabled معاق	not able to use parts of the body in the way other people can
hide يختبئ/يخفى	go to a place where you cannot be seen or found, or put something in a place where it cannot be seen or found
hug يعانق	put your arms around someone and hold them closely, usually because you love them
wonder يتعجب	think about something and want to know why it is true

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning) مرادفها
classical قديم/كلاسيكى	traditional تقليدى
public عام	common شائع

Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
music (n) موسيقى	-ian	تحويل الاسم إلى اسم فاعل	musician (n) موسيقى/عازف
paint (v) يرسم	-er	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم فاعل	painter (n) رسام

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

Similar Spelling - Different Meaning

Word الكلمة	Similar word الكلمة المشابهة
roles أدوار	rules قواعد
wonder يتساءل/يتعجب	wander يتجول

B Reading & Listening Skills

Listening Text

Lesson 3

Pre-listening question: - How can the blind read?

Listen to a radio report about the Al Nour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra. What is special about the orchestra?

SB page 26



Radio Reporter: Today, I'm visiting a very special (1) school in Cairo. This is a music school for girls. All the students study their normal (2) subjects in the morning and then practise their instruments (3) in the afternoon. Many of the students at this school join an orchestra called the *Al Nour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra*. This orchestra (4) plays concerts (5) in Australia, Germany, China and all around the world. What is most special about the school and the orchestra is that all the students here are blind (6)!

The orchestra plays international (7) classical (8) and Arabic music. All the students learn to read the music using Braille, a type of reading you can do with your hands. Then they have to remember the music because they can't read and play at the same time. Let's go to meet some of the musicians (9).

(1) خاص/مميز
(2) عادى/طبيعى
(3) آلات موسيقية
(4) أوركسترا (فرقة موسيقية)
(5) حفلات موسيقية
(6) كفيف
(7) دولى/عالمى
(8) كلاسيكى
(9) موسيقيون

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

orchestra /ɔːrkɪstrə/ musician /mjuːzɪʃən/

Post-listening question:

- Would you like to meet some of the musicians from the *Al Nour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra*? Why/ Why not?

Listen and choose the correct words.

WB page 86

Listening Text

The *Al Nour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra* is at a school for **blind** girls in Cairo. Eman Badr is one of the **musicians**. She is able to play the **violin** very well. She started **playing** when she was six. Eman became blind when she was two years old. She likes playing in the **orchestra** because she loves music and being with her friends. Recently, she visited Oman and France with the orchestra. I think the orchestra is **amazing**. It must be very difficult to **read** music with your hands and then remember it. I would like to go to one of their **concerts**.

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 4

- What's your favourite story?

Read the story and check your answers to Exercise 1. *SB page 28*

Little Women

By Louisa May Alcott



Meg, Beth and Amy were sewing when Jo came into the room with a newspaper(1). She sat down and started to read it.

"Anything interesting?" asked Meg.

"Oh, only a story," Jo replied.

"What's it called?" asked Beth. She wondered(2) why Jo was hiding(3) behind the newspaper.

"It's called *The Rival Painters*," said Jo.

"Why don't you read it to us?" asked Amy.

Jo started to read it very quickly. The girls listened carefully. The story was very sad.

"I liked it," said Meg at the end. She was crying(4) a little. "Isn't it strange that the characters(5) are called two of our favourite names?"

Beth saw Jo's face. "Who wrote the story?" she asked.

Jo jumped up, threw the paper down and said, "Your sister!"

"You?" shouted Meg. "It's very good!" said Amy.

"I knew it! I knew it! Oh, I am so proud!" said Beth, hugging(6) her sister.

(1) جريدة

(2) يتساءل

(3) تختبئ

(4) يبكى

(5) شخصيات

(6) يعانق

Comprehension Skills

"Giving the main idea" «مهارة إعطاء الفكرة الأساسية»

يأتى السؤال على الفكرة الرئيسية بأكثر من طريقة:

- What's the main idea of the passage?
- What is the text about?
- What does the passage talk about?

Example: What's the previous passage about?

Answer: It's about Jo's surprise to her sisters by telling them that she wrote the story in the newspaper they are reading.

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. ..... is a special kind of writing for blind people. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) Braille b) Calligraphy c) Signs d) Shapes
2. She can't see. She is ..... . الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) deaf b) abled c) blind d) fat
3. We should help the ..... . They need our help. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
   a) abled b) disabled c) strong d) rich
4. We should use ..... transport to reduce pollution.
   a) private b) special c) general d) public
5. What is your favourite musical instrument? It's the ..... . المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
   a) laptop b) computer c) clarinet d) oven
6. Nawal is proud ..... her sister and gives her a hug. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٢
   a) to b) of c) at d) for
7. The little girl ..... when the dog frightened her. الغربية ٢٠٢٣
   a) laughed b) hugged c) cried d) felt
8. Eyad wants to become a famous ..... . He likes arts.
   a) reader b) player c) painter d) reporter
9. With ..... and hard work, you can reach your goals.
   a) sign b) patience c) hug d) music
10. The radio ..... tells us about what's happening in the world.
    a) newspaper b) musician c) reporter d) painter
11. The princess slept in a beautiful ..... in the castle.
    a) kitchen b) chamber c) tomb d) hut
12. Mayada asked him a question, and he ..... with a smile.
    a) replied b) produced c) cried d) joined
13. Salwa always ..... notes when reading books to help her remember important information.
    a) swaps b) gives c) plays d) makes
14. A ..... is someone who plays against you in a game. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٤
    a) painter b) rival c) musician d) reporter
15. My grandma moves around ..... a wheelchair because she can't walk.
    a) for b) of c) in d) at

C Skills

Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

1. How to write about a person you're proud of

كيفية الكتابة عن شخص تفخر به

Example

A person I am proud of

Of all my family, my mother is the person I am most proud of. She is in her forties. She looks much younger than her age, with short hair and a beautiful face. At work, she is respected and admired by all of her friends. Furthermore, she is a very good cook. I am really proud of her. She often spends her free time cooking delicious dishes for us, which makes everyone in my family happy. What's more, my mother is an excellent adviser. She often gives me suggestions and a lot of advice to help me with my problems. She is not only my mother, but she is also a good example to follow. For all these reasons, I always love and take pride in (يفتخر بـ) my mother.

2. How to write a film review

كيفية الكتابة نقد فيلم

To : ghada@student.com
From : dina@student.com
Subject : A review of a film

Dear Ghada,

I hope you're doing well. I'd like to tell you about my favourite film. In my free time, I enjoy watching films. I love all kinds of films, including American, Indian and Moroccan ones. I have watched many films, but the best one I have watched is *"Wonder Woman"*. It came out on June 2nd, 2017. The director is Patty Jenkins. Before becoming *Wonder Woman*, she was Diana, princess of the Amazons. I think *Wonder Woman* was amazing. The action was exciting and my favourite thing was when she finally discovers her full power. I recommend this film if you like excitement and action. Write soon.

Yours,
Dina

1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

In a small town, there is a music school for children. Laila is a young girl who goes to this school. She loves to play the piano. Laila started learning the piano when she was just five years old. Now, she is eight and plays very well. She can't see, as she lost her sight when she was a baby. But **this** does not stop her from playing music. She feels the keys and remembers the sounds. It must be very difficult to read music with your hands and then remember it. Laila enjoys being part of the school's music group. It makes her happy to share music with others. Last month, the group **performed** at a big concert. Many people came to listen. They all clapped loudly for Laila.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of this passage is about ..... .
   a) a famous pianist b) a music school
   c) children d) people who enjoy music
2. The underlined word "**performed**" is similar in meaning to ..... .
   a) hugged b) showed c) wrote d) played

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What does Laila love to do at the music school? .....
4. What does the underlined word "**this**" refer to? .....
5. Why do you think Laila enjoys being part of the music group? .....
6. How old was Laila when she started learning the piano? .....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. People who can't walk can use ..... to move. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
   a) chairs b) bikes c) radios d) wheelchairs
2. Shahenda learned ..... to communicate with her deaf friend.
   a) musical instrument b) braille
   c) sign language d) radio reporter
3. I ..... why he left his job. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
   a) cause b) damage c) wander d) wonder
4. Salma plays the violin in a/an ..... . سوهاج ٢٠٢٤
   a) factory b) orchestra c) shop d) laboratory
5. She has a good ..... with her friends. They all like her.
   a) relationship b) difficulty c) musician d) recommendation

6. The orchestra plays international ..... and Arabic music.
a) private b) classical c) frightened d) honest
7. Amany ..... do her English homework alone. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
a) can b) are able to c) know how to d) able to
8. ..... you know how to sew a dress?
a) Will b) Can c) Are d) Do

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:
1. Can we ..... (goes) to the park today?
2. ..... (Do) Hadeer know how to write a formal letter?
3. Are you able ..... (hear) me clearly?
4. He can't ..... (remembering) names easily.
5. Sameh is not ..... (able/go) to the meeting.

4 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Al Nour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Challenging Questions

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.
1. It feels good to ..... a hug from someone you love.
a) give b) get c) do d) make
2. They are proud ..... finish their project on time.
a) with b) of c) to d) for

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:
1. He wants to ..... (is) able to drive a car.
2. Kady does ..... (knows) how to cook well.

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك فى كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

QUESTION	1	2	3	4
TACKLES	Comprehension	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
MARK				

STUDY Lessons 5 & 6

Watch a video

SB pages 29 & 30 | WB pages 88 & 89

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

action (n)	حدث/أداء	main (adj)	أساسى/رئيسى
actor (n)	ممثل	offer (ed) (v)	يعرض
actress (n)	ممثلة	request (ed)(v/n)	يطلب/طلب
adventure (n)	مغامرة	reviewer (n)	ناقد
dinosaur (n)	ديناصور	review (n)	نقد
escape (d) (v)	يهرب	scary (adj)	مخيف
event (n)	حدث	scientist (n)	عالم
information (n)	معلومات	theme park (n)	متنزه/مدينة ترفيهية

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

amazing (adj)	رائع/مدهش	recycle (d) (v)	يعيد تدوير
British (adj)	بريطانى	schoolboy (n)	تلميذ
discussion (n)	مناقشة	star (n)	نجمة/نجم سينمائى
nearly (adv)	تقريبًا	summary (n)	ملخص
park (ed) (n/v)	حديقة/يركن سيارة	table tennis (n)	تنس طاولة
pilot (n)	طيار	tower (n)	برج
real (adj)	حقيقى	view (n)	وجهة نظر/منظر
reason (n)	سبب	writer (n)	كاتب

Check Point

Choose and complete: tower – escape – action – event

1. Many thieves tried to ....., but the police stopped them.
2. I liked that film. I thought the ..... was exciting.
3. We climbed to the top of the ..... .

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

do	calligraphy	يؤدى فن حسن الخط	films	يصنع أفلامًا
present	an opinion	يقدم رأيًا	make > pottery	يصنع الفخار
stop	fires	يوقف الحرائق	sculptures	يصنع المنحوتات

Prepositions — حروف الجر

ask for	يطلب	invite to + شىء/مكان	يدعو إلى
instead of	بدلاً من	on the radio	فى الراديو

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
die	يموت	live	يعيش
land	يهبط	take off	تقلع (الطائرة)

Check Point

Choose and complete: of – to – stop – take

1. The plane will ..... off in ten minutes.
2. Firefighters work hard to ..... fires.
3. Arwa decided to invite her friends ..... the concert.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر والكلمات وعكسها.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Definitions — التعريفات

action	حدث/أداء	the things that happen in a film
escape	يهرب	to leave a place that you should stay in
review	نقد	to present a summary, opinion and recommendation of a film, book or play
theme park	متنزه/مدينة ترفيهية	a large park with machines to ride on, restaurants, etc.

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
boring	ممل	dull	ممل
die	يموت	pass away	يموت

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
act (v)	يمثل/يؤدى	-ion		تحويل الفعل إلى اسم		action (n)	حدث/أداء
review (v)	ينقد	-er		تحويل الفعل إلى اسم فاعل		reviewer (n)	ناقد

Similar Spelling - Different Meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
park	حديقة/ يركن سيارة	bark	ينبح الكلب

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

B Reading & Listening Skills

Listening Text

Lesson 5

Pre-listening question:

- How do you enjoy your free time?

Listen to a telephone conversation between two friends and complete the notes.

SB page 29



Rawia Hi, Warda!

Warda Hi, Rawia, how's it going?

Rawia Fine thanks, how are you?

Warda Yeah, I'm good. I was wondering if you would like to come to watch a film at my house tonight.

Rawia Yeah, cool, I'd love to. Which film?

Warda I've got the film of a famous book: would you like to watch *Little Women*?

Rawia Oh, yes please – I love the book! Shall I bring some drinks or snacks?

Warda I have lots of snacks but not much to drink. Could you bring some fruit juice?

Rawia Of course, no problem. What time should I come?

Warda About 7 pm?

Rawia Great! See you then.

Post-listening question:

- What's Warda inviting Rawia for?

Pre-reading question:

- What type of books do you like to read?

Lesson 6

Put this review of a book into the correct order. *WB page 89*

A review of Lord of the Flies



Lord of the Flies is an adventure story(1). It is by the British writer(2) William Golding.

It is about some schoolboys who have to live on an island(3) after their plane lands in the sea and the pilot(4) dies(5). How will the boys live on the island, and will they escape(6)?

I thought the action(7) was exciting and many amazing things happen to the boys. My favourite part was early in the story, when the children enjoy their time on the island. But in my opinion, some of the children are horrible and I did not like them.

I recommend the book because it makes you think about what it is like to live only with other children, but it is not a very happy story.

(1) قصة مغامرة
(2) كاتب
(3) جزيرة
(4) طيار
(5) يموت
(6) يهرب
(7) حدث/أداء

Read the film review. Does the writer like the film or not? *SB page 30*

A review of Jurassic World



Jurassic World is an adventure film(1). The stars(2) of the film are Chris Pratt and Bryce Dallas Howard. It is about a theme park(3) where scientists(4) have helped dinosaurs to live again! Then some of the dinosaurs escape. What will happen?

I thought the action was exciting and my favourite thing was the scary(5) dinosaurs; they look very real. But, in my opinion the story isn't very interesting or new. I recommend this film if you like exciting and scary films, but not if you want a good story.

(1) فيلم مغامرة
(2) نجوم الفيلم
(3) متنزه/مدينة ترفيهية
(4) علماء
(5) مخيف

Post-reading question:

- What type of film is *Jurassic World*?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Rock climbing is very ..... . I am afraid to do it. القليوبية ٢٠٢٤
   a) scary b) easy c) interesting d) exciting
2. There is a great ..... from the top of the tower. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٤
   a) park b) view c) action d) review
3. We went on a school trip to the ..... park. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) painting b) theme c) pay d) art
4. Warda wants to be an ....., but her parents don't agree.
   a) actress b) actor c) action d) act
5. The things that happen in a film are called ..... . القليوبية ٢٠٢٤
   a) pottery b) athletics c) actions d) energy
6. We took lots of photos to remember the ..... .
   a) review b) summary c) request d) event
7. The plane ..... safely and all people were happy. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) landed b) died c) fell d) threw
8. The teacher asked us to give a/an ..... to the story as it's too long. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
   a) presentation b) summary c) introduction d) action
9. I like watching ..... films. They are very exciting. بورسعيد ٢٠٢٤
   a) adventure b) amazed c) boring d) interested
10. Youssif Shahin ..... a lot of great films.
    a) made b) did c) thought d) appeared
11. My sons always ask ..... extra cheese on their pizza.
    a) for b) at c) on d) to
12. My teacher asked me to tell the class the ..... points of the lesson.
    a) unimportant b) main c) scary d) damaged
13. I like my friend as she always ..... to help me when I need.
    a) offers b) requests c) advises d) recommends
14. They listened to the news ..... the radio.
    a) in b) on c) for d) at
15. My friend is very sad because his grandfather ..... yesterday.
    a) died b) lived c) stayed d) slept
16. I read a film ..... to know what the film is about.
    a) review b) revision c) view d) opinion

C Skills

Speaking

1 Invitation: الدعوة:

A: Hi, Nader. I was wondering if you would like to come to my cousin's house.
B: Yes, I would love to.

A: Would you like to play table tennis?
B: Yes, please. / **B:** No, thanks.

2 Offer: العرض:

A: Shall I bring some table tennis balls?
B: No, he's got those. / **B:** Yes, please.

3 Request: الطلب:

A: Could you bring some food? **B:** Of course, I'll bring some sandwiches.

4 Asking for information: طلب معلومات:

A: What time should I come? **B:** At 10 pm.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

Tamer is inviting Wael to his birthday party. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤

Tamer : Hi, Wael. It's my birthday party next week.
Wael : Hi, Tamer. (1)..... .
Tamer : (2).....?
Wael : Yes, I'd love to. What time does it start?
Tamer : (3)..... .
Wael : (4).....?
Tamer : All our friends will come.
Wael : What present would you like for your birthday?
Tamer : (5)..... .
Wael : Great! I'll bring you a good storybook.

Take a test

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 9 Lessons (5 & 6)

12

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Fares is inviting Reda to his cousin's house. دمياط ٢٠٢٤

Fares : Hi, Reda, would you like to come to my cousin's house tomorrow?
Reda : (1)..... . It is a big house, isn't it?
Fares : Yes, he's got a tennis table in the garden. (2).....?
Reda : Yes, please! Shall I bring some table tennis balls?
Fares : No, he's got those. (3).....?
Reda : Of course, I will bring some sandwiches. What time should I come?
Fares : (4)..... .
Reda : Great. I can meet you then.
Fares : I hope that we enjoy our time.
Reda : (5)..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The Cairo ..... is very amazing with the view from its top. القليوبية ٢٠٢٤
   a) Bridge b) Tower c) Tour d) Tunnel
2. I want to learn how to ..... pottery.
   a) make b) do c) offer d) request
3. The ..... wrote a good article about the new restaurant.
   a) reviewer b) scientist c) schoolboy d) baby
4. My cousin became a/an ..... after his last film.
   a) star b) review c) request d) event
5. I can write English well, but my sister ..... .
   a) can b) can't c) is d) isn't
6. I'm able to draw and ..... .
   a) paint b) painting c) to painting d) painted

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Magda ..... (able) play tennis. دمياط ٢٠٢٢
2. Adel ..... (not) know how to ski.
3. ..... (Do) we able to see the film tonight?
4. ..... (Am) I borrow your phone?

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك فى كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

QUESTION	1	2	3
TACKLES	Speaking	Vocabulary	Language
MARK			

Al-Adwaa Test On Unit 9

30

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع
فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. What did Nada visit?
   a) The Cairo Tower. b) The zoo.
   c) The library. d) The Textile Museum.
2. When did she visit it?
   a) Last Friday. b) Last year.
   c) Last month. d) Last week.
3. Where is it?
   a) In Cairo. b) In Aswan.
   c) In Giza. d) In Luxor.
4. Which thing did she think was fantastic?
   a) The entrance. b) The statutes.
   c) The history. d) The clothes.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Murad and Yassir are talking about music. أسوان ٢٠٢٤

Murad : Can you play music, Yassir?
Yassir : (1)..... .
Murad : (2).....?
Yassir : I can play the drums.
Murad : (3).....?
Yassir : No, I can't sing well.
Murad : What other musical instrument do you like most?
Yassir : (4)..... .
Murad : Me, too. I like the violin. Have you had a school concert before?
Yassir : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Lord of the Flies is a book by William Golding. It tells about a group of boys who are stuck on an empty island. They are alone without any adults. At first, they try to make rules to live by. Ralph becomes their leader and wants to keep a fire burning for saving. But Jack, another boy, wants to hunt and have fun. As time passes, the boys become cruel and unkind, and ***their group falls apart***. They start fighting each other. The story talks about human nature and the fight between order and disorder. In the end, a ship saves the boys, but they are changed forever by their time on the island.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ralph wants to ..... to help the boys get saved.
   a) hunt for food b) build shelters
   c) keep a fire d) explore the island
2. The phrase "***their group falls apart***" means they ..... .
   a) build a big house b) find new friends
   c) stop working together d) start dancing

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the story *Lord of the Flies*?
   .....
4. How do the boys' behaviours change over time on the island?
   .....
5. How do you think the boys felt after being saved by the ship?
   .....
6. If you were one of the boys on the island, what would you do differently to keep everyone safe?
   .....

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I want to talk to the people at the ..... club about acting.
   a) instruments b) scenery c) drama d) costumes
2. I am interested in seeing art by Egyptians from the 20th and 21st ..... .
   a) sculptures b) centuries c) statues d) countries
3. I ..... visiting the Egyptian Museum of Modern Art if you are in Cairo.
   a) pay b) advise c) think d) recommend

4. This orchestra plays ..... in Australia.

a) concerts b) musicians c) arts d) tricks

5. From my point of ....., the weather today is perfect for a picnic.

a) review b) view c) interview d) viewer

6. I practise ..... calligraphy with a pen and paper.

a) doing b) making c) giving d) presenting

7. Farid knows how to fix the car. He ..... do it.

a) can b) cannot c) able to d) is able

8. I ..... to start working tomorrow. I am still tired.

a) can't b) not able c) am not able d) don't know

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. ..... (Are) you know how to download an app on your phone? دمياط ٢٠٢٣

2. I can ..... (playing) the guitar. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣

3. Are you able ..... (act) in films? القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

4. My father ..... (able) to climb the mountain. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٤

5. Noha knows how ..... (do) a project.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"A visit to the Textile Museum" المنوفية ٢٠٢٢

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك فى كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

QUESTION	1	2	3	4	5	6
TACKLES	Listening	Speaking	Reading	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
MARK						

Bubble Sheet Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Mahmoud is inviting Mustafa to his house for dinner.

Mahmoud : Hi Mustafa, how are you?

Mustafa : Hi Mahmoud. (1)..... .

a) He's good b) He's bad c) I'm bad d) I'm good

Mahmoud : I was wondering if you would like to come to my house for dinner tonight.

Mustafa : (2).....! What time should I come?

a) No, I'd love to b) Sure, I'd love to c) Sorry, I'd love to d) Sorry, I'm busy

Mahmoud : You should come at 6 pm.

Mustafa : That sounds good. Shall I bring anything with me?

Mahmoud : (3)..... . Do you have any food allergies?

a) No, thanks b) No, sorry c) Yes, sorry d) Yes, thanks

Mustafa : No, I don't have any allergies. (4).....?

a) How are we having for dinner b) Where are we having for dinner

c) When are we having for dinner d) What are we having for dinner

Mahmoud : We're having chicken and rice. (5).....?

a) Did you love them b) Would you love them

c) Do you love them d) Will you love them

Mustafa : Yes, I love them. See you at 6 pm!

2 Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d:

1. We can ..... (to visit) the museum on Saturday.

a) visit b) visiting c) to visiting d) visited

2. Is Jomana ..... (able) drive a car?

a) be able b) be able to c) no able d) able to

3. ..... (Are) you know how to use this software?

a) Would b) Do c) Have d) Will

4. I ..... (not) able to understand this problem.

a) will not b) have not c) do not d) am not

5. Youssef doesn't know ..... (make) pasta.

a) making b) how make c) how to make d) to make

ANSWER HERE

Q 1	1 (a) (b) (c) (d)	2 (a) (b) (c) (d)	3 (a) (b) (c) (d)	4 (a) (b) (c) (d)	5 (a) (b) (c) (d)
Q 2	1 (a) (b) (c) (d)	2 (a) (b) (c) (d)	3 (a) (b) (c) (d)	4 (a) (b) (c) (d)	5 (a) (b) (c) (d)

Review C On Units 7, 8 & 9

Reading & Listening Skills

Read the medical advice and complete the sentences with should.

Lesson 1

SB page 32

Medical advice for people at the 2021 Handball World Championship



- Stand 1.5 metres from other people.
- Enter and leave the stadium through the correct doors.
- Take a test for COVID-19 every 72 hours.
- Only players do not need to wear a mask.
- Only online interviews after games.

There will be **a lot of** players at the 2021 Men's Handball World Championships. The Championship's medical committee want to make sure that all the people at the competition **are able to** play together safely. For that reason, they want only **a few** people to use the doors to the stadium at the same time. People who are not playing need to wear a mask. You can find **a lot of** these just outside the stadium and they are free to use. All players should **know how to** get a COVID-19 test every 72 hours.

Complete the review with these words.

SB page 32

Review of Julius Caesar



Last night, I went to see Julius Caesar. It's a **play** by the English writer William Shakespeare, but it's about a Roman ruler. Caesar's **costume** made him look very important! The **scenery** was amazing and it really looked like Ancient Rome.

In my opinion, the story is very sad and I cried at the end. From my point of view, the actor who played Caesar was the best, but all the **acting** was very good. I will never forget this play, but there wasn't much **action**; it was mostly talking. And it was three hours long! If you watch a Shakespeare play, you should know that the language of the **script** is different to modern English so it can be difficult to understand, but I liked it.

Pre-listening question:

Listening Text

Lesson 1

- What did you buy for your mother's last birthday?

Listen to two sisters cooking an omelette. How long should they cook it for?

WB page 91



Amal It's Mum's birthday. Let's make her some breakfast.

Dalida That's a good idea, Amal. We could make her a fruit salad.

Amal I think she prefers salty food to sweet food, Dalida. What about a cheese omelette?

Dalida Omelette is a good idea. Would you like to get the butter from the fridge, Amal?

Amal OK.

Dalida Shall I beat the eggs? I like doing that. How many eggs should I use?

Amal Thanks, Dalida. If there are four of us, you should use eight eggs.

Dalida Do you know how to chop the cheese, Amal?

Amal Of course.

Dalida It's a good idea to chop the cheese really small. I'll heat some butter in the pan and pour in the eggs.

Amal How long should it cook for?

Dalida We'll leave it for a few minutes.

Amal It looks really nice. I'd like a lot, please!

Dalida We can all have a little. Mum will be very pleased!

Post-listening question:

- Do you like Amal and Dalida's idea for their mother birthday?

Pre-listening question:

Listening Text

Lesson 2

- What kinds of food do you like?

Listen to Heba and Sara talking about food. What do they spend too much time doing?

SB page 33



Heba What's your favourite food, Sara? I like fruit, such as a nice juicy mango! I like fruit more than anything else … and the fruit I like best of all … It's difficult to decide.

Sara I like fruit, too Heba, but my favourite food is a nice, fresh falafel. There is a food stall near my house where they are very good, and my mum sometimes cooks them, too.

Heba What things do you know how to cook, Sara? I can make omelettes and salads, but I don't know how to make many things.

Sara I know how to make cakes. My grandmother taught me. I love making cakes, but I eat too many of them. I should eat more fruit.

Heba Yes, I eat too many cakes, too! I don't do enough exercise. I have a sports lesson at school once a week, and I go for a walk a few times a month with my cousins, but that's all. What about you?

Sara I play tennis twice a week and I run with my father at the weekend, so I do enough exercise, but I often spend too much time playing computer games in the evenings, so I go to bed late.

Heba Yes, I spend too much time online in the evenings, too. Let's try to do more exercise next week, Sara!

Sara Good idea, Heba!

Post-listening question:

- How often does Sara play tennis?

WB page 92

Read and complete the reviews with these words:



(1) The people look like they are from Ancient Egypt because the **costumes** are very good, but the person who painted the **scenery** did not know how to paint!

It was very long, and I didn't like the music. I wouldn't **recommend** this.

(2) The articles are always really interesting to read and they have fantastic **photographs**, too. I really like the **cartoons** because they make me laugh!

If you want to learn about the world today, you should **buy** this!

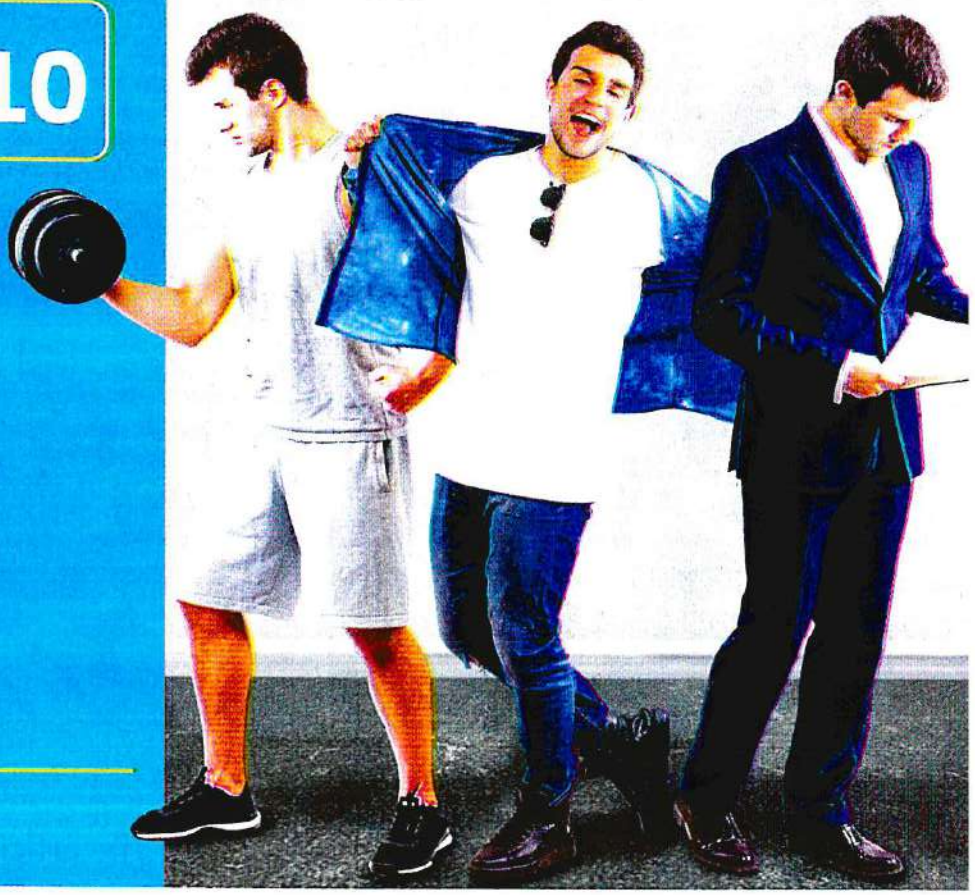
(3) From my **point of view**, this is the best place to find out about life in the last century. There are interesting **sculptures** of people and some amazing old technology.

I loved the big, old **phones**!

(4) The story was very slow and there was very little **action**. I didn't really enjoy it because it **made** me feel sad. The **best** thing about it was learning what it is like to be blind. That must be very difficult.

Unit 10

WE ARE WHAT WE WEAR



OBJECTIVES OF THE UNIT

Reading	An article about Egyptian clothes now and in the past; a blog about what teenagers wear; a text about linen and cotton; an advert
Writing	An advert to sell something
Listening	People talking about their clothes; a conversation in a clothes shop
Speaking	Discussing and describing clothes; shopping for clothes
Language	Adjective order; one, ones
Life Skills	Respect for diversity

SB تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات

STUDY Lessons 1 & 2

Watch a video

SB pages 34 - 37 | WB pages 93 & 94

A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

climate (n)	مناخ	relaxed (adj)	مسترخٍ/مستريح
dress (ed) (v)	يلبس/يرتدى	sheet (n)	ملاية
jewellery (n)	مجوهرات	wooden (adj)	خشبى

Items of clothing and personal things قطع الملابس والأشياء الشخصية

head رأس / **face** وجه	**legs** ساق	**feet** أقدام	**body** جسد	**neck** رقبة
earrings حلق/قرط	trousers بنطلون	boots حذاء برقبة	belt حزام	necklace قلادة/عقد
headscarf حجاب	shorts شورت	sandals صندل/خُف	handbag حقيبة يد	tie رابطة عنق
scarf وشاح/طرحة	jeans بنطلون جينز	trainers حذاء رياضى	jumper بلوفر	
sunglasses نظارة شمسية		shoes حذاء	galabeya جلباب	

Adjectives for clothes صفات خاصة بالملابس

beautiful	جميل	pretty	جميل
casual	ملابس غير رسمية/كاجوال	smart	أنيق
colourful	زاهى الألوان	strange	غريب
comfortable	مريح	striped	مقلم/مخطط
loose	واسع/ فضفاض	traditional	تقليدى

Materials مواد خام

cotton	القطن	metal	المعدن
glass	الزجاج	plastic	البلاستيك
gold	الذهب	wood	الخشب
leather	الجلد	wool	الصوف
linen	الكتان		

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

(n) = noun | (adj) = adjective | (prep) = preposition
(v) = verb | (adv) = adverb | (conj) = conjunction

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

although (conj)	بالرغم من	look (ed) like	يبدو/يشبه
blog (n)	مدونة إلكترونية	probably (adv)	ربما/من المحتمل
electric (adj)	كهربى	similar (adj)	مشابه/مماثل
flat (n)	شقة	style (n)	أسلوب

Check Point

Choose and complete: trainers – relaxed – style – sheet

1. Sandy and Maya listened to music and felt ..... .
2. Ahmed likes to wear good ..... when he goes running.
3. My aunt has a unique fashion ..... .

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

keep > warm/cool	يبقى دافئًا/باردًا
the same ... as	نفس الشىء ... مثل

Prepositions — حروف الجر

best for	الأفضل لـ	know about	يعرف عن
dress in	يرتدى	protect ... from	يحمى ... من
go for	يذهب لـ/ من أجل		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.	Present		Past simple	P.P.
cost	يكلف	cost	cost	know	يعرف	knew	known
grow	يزرع/ينمو	grew	grown	wear	يرتدى/يلبس	wore	worn

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها	Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
comfortable	مريح	uncomfortable	غير مريح	wear	يرتدى	take off	يخلع
simple	بسيط	complex/difficult	معقد/صعب	popular	شائع/محبوب	unpopular	غير محبوب

Check Point

Choose and complete: simple – from – keep – for – cost

1. These gloves are best ..... gardening.
2. Fans can help ..... the room cool.
3. How much did these shoes .....?
4. The game has ..... rules. They're easy to follow.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر وتصريفات الأفعال والكلمات وعكسها.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 climate/ weather

climate (المناخ) ويمثل حالة الجو لفترة طويلة وقد تكون فى منطقة معينة.

- What type of material is best for a hot climate?

weather (الطقس) يمثل حالة الجو لفترة قصيرة من الزمن.

- You should wear heavy clothes. The weather **these days** is very cold.

2 skin/ leather

skin جلد/بشرة (الكائن الحى)

- My son has a cut on his skin.

leather الجلد (بعد تصنيعه من جلد الحيوانات)

- This bag is made of good leather.

3 is/are + made of يصنع من (والمادة الخام ما زالت موجودة لم تتغير حالتها)

- This chair is made of wood.

is/are + made from

يصنع من (والمادة الخام تغيرت وغير موجودة فى حالتها الأولى) أو يصنع من شىء آخر.

- Glass is made from sand.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The sun can damage your ..... if you don't use sunscreen.
a) leather b) skin c) feather d) heart

2 Shaza enjoys living in a place with a warm ..... .
a) sky b) air c) weather d) climate

3 This cake is made ..... flour, sugar and eggs.
a) by b) with c) from d) of

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Words and Synonyms

الكلمات ومرادفها

Word الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning) مرادفها
comfortable مريح	relaxing مريح
pretty جميل	beautiful جميل

Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
comfort (v) يريح	-able	تحويل الفعل إلى صفة	comfortable (adj) مريح
tradition (n) تقليد	-al	تحويل الاسم إلى صفة	traditional (adj) تقليدى

Similar Spelling - Different Meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
belt	حزام	built	بنى
boots	حذاء برقبة	boats	قوارب
metal	المعدن	medal	ميدالية
wool	الصوف	wall	حائط/سور

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 1

Listening Text

Pre-listening question:

- What clothes do you prefer to wear in hot weather?

Listen to four people talking about their clothes. Match the people with the photos on page 34. *SB page 35*

1. Narrator: **Huda**

I'm Huda. These are the types of clothes I usually wear. I like to be comfortable and feel relaxed(1) in my clothes. These sunglasses were a present from my mum and I love them. I think I wear them outside most days!



2. Narrator: **Tarek**

I'm Tarek and I wear these clothes when I'm helping my father. It's really hot outside today and these traditional(2) clothes keep me cool and protect me from the sun when I'm working.



3. Narrator: **Sara**

I'm Sara and I'm wearing my favourite colour today! I think I dress in a traditional style, but I like to be colourful(3). My headscarf(4) is from the market. It's a cool colour, isn't it?



4. Narrator: **Adam**

My name's Adam and I'm going for a special meal with my grandparents, which is why I'm wearing these clothes. I usually wear jeans. I quite like looking smart(5), but I think I look a bit like my father when he is going to work!



(1) مسترخٍ (2) تقليدى

(3) زاهى الألوان (4) حجاب

(5) أنيق

Post-listening questions:

1. Who bought Huda's sunglasses?
2. Why is Adam wearing these clothes?

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 2

- What do you think the clothes and jewellery in Ancient Egypt were made of?

Read about clothes in Ancient Egypt. What did the people love to wear?

SB Page 36

Clothes in Ancient Egypt



In Ancient Egypt, men and women wore similar clothes. They both wore loose(1), white, linen(2) clothes with a belt(3). Most of the time, Ancient Egyptians did not wear shoes but people sometimes wore expensive leather(4) sandals. Children did not usually wear many clothes until they were about six years old. Then they started to wear the same clothes as their parents.

Although Ancient Egyptians' clothes were simple, they loved to wear heavy, metal(5) jewellery(6). Like some people today, they liked to wear beautiful gold necklaces and other jewellery.

(1) واسع/فضفاض (2) كتان
(3) حزام (4) جلد
(5) معدن (6) مجوهرات

Comprehension Skills

Understanding reference: فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير:

Children did not usually wear many clothes until they were about six years old.

What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to?

How to answer this question: كيفية الإجابة عن هذا السؤال:

أولاً: عليك أن تعرف ماذا تشير الضمائر إلى:

Pronouns are words that refer to the closest specific noun right before them.

الضمائر عادة تشير لأقرب اسم يسبقها.

ثانيًا: عليك قراءة الجملة التى تسبق الضمير جيدًا وتحديد الاسم التى تشير إليه، وباتباع الخطوات نستنتج أن:

The underlined pronoun "they" refers to children.

Life Skills

1. Do you think what people wear is important? Why?
2. How do you decide what to wear? Do you listen to the opinions of your friends and family about clothes?
3. What things can you know about someone from his or her clothes? What can't you know?



PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She is wearing a beautiful red ..... on her head. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
   a) scarf b) ring c) galabeya d) watch
2. ..... are jewellery women wear around their necks. القليوبية ٢٠٢٤
   a) Scarves b) Necklaces c) Belts d) Earrings
3. Bags, belts and shoes are made of ..... . أزهر- السويس ٢٠٢٤
   a) glass b) gold c) leather d) cotton
4. I cover my bed with a nice ..... made of cotton. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) scarf b) skirt c) T-shirt d) sheet
5. They'd like to wear ..... clothes to keep cool in summer. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٤
   a) heavy b) wool c) leather d) loose
6. A zebra has ..... skin. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) casual b) striped c) spotted d) loose
7. I usually wear sports clothes because they are ..... . البحيرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) hard b) ugly c) uncomfortable d) comfortable
8. My sister likes to wear her ..... to look pretty. They are made of gold. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٤
   a) scarf b) earrings c) dress d) glasses
9. His trousers are a bit large, so he wears a ..... . الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
   a) shoes b) tie c) sandals d) belt
10. Necklaces are usually made of ..... .
    a) leather b) gold c) plastic d) wool
11. The people in that town wear plastic ..... in summer.
    a) sandals b) jackets c) trousers d) scarves
12. I like wearing ..... clothes such as T-shirt and trainers. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٤
    a) casual b) formal c) different d) traditional
13. ..... are light, comfortable shoes that people usually wear for sport. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٤
    a) Trainers b) Handbags c) Scarves d) Belts
14. The ..... in the desert is very hot and dry.
    a) air b) climate c) sky d) land
15. **A:** Which ..... is this dress made of? **B:** Cotton.
    a) material b) item c) clothing d) metal
16. Tourists wear sun cream to protect themselves ..... the hot sun.
    a) for b) from c) to d) for

C Language

Adjective order ترتيب الصفات

- **Use more than one adjective in this order. Do not use more than three or four adjectives.**
- استخدم أكثر من صفة فى هذا الترتيب. لا تستخدم أكثر من ثلاث أو أربع صفات.

Quantity كمية / **number** عدد	one/ several
Description وصف/ **Opinion** رأى	pretty/ colourful/ beautiful
Size حجم	big/ loose/ small
Shape الشكل	long/ short/ tall/ thin
Age العمر	old/ new/ young/ ancient
Colour اللون	green/ white/ black/ blue
Pattern النمط	striped/ plain سادة
Origin المنشأ	Japanese/ Egyptian/ French
Material المادة	cotton/ linen/ leather/ wool
Noun الشىء	dress/ clothes/ galabeya/ necklace

e.g. - My mum likes loose, (size) white, (colour) linen (material) clothes. (noun)

- My uncle wore a nice, (opinion) blue, (colour) wool (material) tie (noun) in the party.

- This is a wonderful, (opinion) new, (age) Italian (origin) film. (noun)

Got it? تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 He bought a ..... (British/ wonderful/ woolen) suit.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (wonderful, British, woolen) لأن فى ترتيب الصفات نبدأ بالوصف، يليه المنشأ ثم المادة الخام.

2 My favourite ..... (cotton/ old/ black) shirt was made in China.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (old, black, cotton) لأن فى ترتيب الصفات نبدأ بالعمر، يليه اللون ثم المادة الخام.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Practise more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In the past, people wore ..... clothes. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
   a) loose, white, linen b) linen, loose, white
   c) white, loose, linen d) linen, white, loose
2. She is wearing a ..... scarf. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) green, long b) pretty, green, new c) cotton, red d) nice, long, blue
3. Do you like these ..... glasses? القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) old, black, metal b) black, old, metal
   c) metal, old, black d) old, metal, black
4. We went to the island in a ..... boat.
   a) wooden, long, old b) long, old, wooden
   c) old, wooden, long d) long, old, cotton
5. We saw a ..... scarf.
   a) Chinese, long, colourful b) Chinese, colourful, long
   c) long, colourful, Chinese d) colourful, long, Chinese
6. Look at that ..... necklace. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) long, pretty, gold b) long, gold, pretty
   c) pretty, long, gold d) pretty, gold, long
7. Amira has ..... eyes. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
   a) beautiful, brown b) brown, beautiful c) blue, small d) young, beautiful
8. Abdelrahman found a/an ..... wooden box.
   a) pretty, ancient, brown b) brown, pretty, ancient
   c) ancient, brown, pretty d) pretty, brown, ancient
9. We bought a ..... shirt.
   a) beautiful, striped, green b) green, striped, beautiful
   c) striped, green, beautiful d) beautiful, green, striped
10. He has ..... jumper.
   a) a big, wool b) big, wool c) wool, big d) a wool, big

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I need these ..... (brown/leather/old) shoes, please. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
2. My father bought a ..... (red/new/nice) car. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
3. It is a ..... (green/pretty/new) dress. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
4. She has ..... (cotton/socks/black/smart). الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
5. We saw a ..... (big/strange/wooden) sculpture.
6. Yehia wore a ..... (long/silk/Japanese) shirt.

D Skills

Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about different colours and styles of clothes

كيفية الكتابة عن ألوان وأنماط الملابس

- There are different kinds of clothes with different colours and styles.
- Some people like light colours and others like dark colours.
- My (فرد/أفراد من العائلة) like/likes wearing (نوع الملابس المفضل).
- My (فرد/ أفراد من العائلة) don't/doesn't like wearing (نوع الملابس).
- I like to wear (نوع الملابس المفضل).
- They should be (وصف الملابس).

Writing tips

Avoid repeating the essential words and phrases because it means you don't have fully thought about the topic. You can use a dictionary.

تجنب تكرار الكلمات والتعبيرات لأن هذا يعنى أنك لست ملمًا بالموضوع الذى تكتب عنه. يمكنك استخدام القاموس سيساعدك كثيرًا.

Example

The clothes my family wear

There are different kinds of clothes with different colours and styles. Everyone has their own style. Some people like light colours and others like dark ones. My grandparents like wearing traditional clothes with dark colours. They wear loose clothes. My father likes to wear a shirt with a beautiful tie. He is very smart. My mother doesn't like short clothes at all. She always wears a headscarf. My brother, sister and I like to wear casual clothes. They should be modern. I like to wear T-shirts with jeans. They should be colourful and smart.

Check Point

Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"My favourite style of clothes"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 10 Lessons (1 & 2)

25

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

الجيزة ٢٠٢٤

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1. In Ancient Egypt, men and ..... wore similar clothes.
   a) boys b) grandfathers
   c) women d) girls
2. They wore loose, ..., linen clothes with a belt.
   a) white b) yellow c) black d) blue
3. Most of the time, they didn't wear ..... .
   a) socks b) shirts c) shoes d) sandals
4. Some Ancient Egyptians sometimes wore expensive ..... sandals.
   a) leather b) silver c) metal d) iron

2 Complete the following dialogue:

القاهرة ٢٠٢٤

Rania is asking Ola about her blouse.

Rania : Your blouse is very nice. Is it new?
Ola : (1)..... .
Rania : (2).....?
Ola : I bought it last Friday.
Rania : (3).....?
Ola : No, it isn't expensive.
Rania : How much is it?
Ola : (4)..... .
Rania : Who bought it for you?
Ola : (5)..... .

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It's a beautiful, new blue ..... dress.
   a) metal b) plastic c) glass d) linen

دمياط ٢٠٢٤

2. People like travelling by plane because it is ..... .
   a) excited b) traditional c) boring d) comfortable

الشرقية ٢٠٢٤

3. Earrings and necklaces are forms of ..... .
   a) wood b) wool c) jewellery d) leather

بنى سويف ٢٠٢٤

4. Mum's ..... scarf is good for cold weather.
   a) metal b) wool c) wood d) plastic
5. Your watch isn't expensive. It's made of ..... .
   a) wool b) plastic c) linen d) gold

بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣

6. In winter, we usually wear heavy ..... . الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣

a) shoes b) trainers c) sandals d) jumpers

7. It's a ..... jumper. القليوبية ٢٠٢٤

a) blue, nice, wool b) wool, blue, nice

c) nice, blue, wool d) blue, wool, nice

8. I bought a ..... T-shirt. أسيوط ٢٠٢٤

a) new, red, cotton b) red, new, cotton

c) new, cotton, red d) cotton, new, red

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Sama has a ..... (cotton/blue/small) skirt. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٤
2. Ali wore a ..... (silk/pretty/striped) tie.
3. They live in a ..... (old/wooden/small) house.
4. We bought a ..... (black/beautiful/new) car.
5. Dad likes ..... (white/loose/linen) clothes.

5 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"The style of clothes young people like to follow"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This chair is very ..... to sit on. You'll like it.

a) relaxed b) comfortable c) complex d) strange

2. He put a ..... around his neck to keep warm.

a) jumper b) tie c) scarf d) headscarf

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The house is ..... (white/large).
2. They live in a ..... (white/large) house.

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك فى كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

QUESTION	1	2	3	4	5
TACKLES	Listening	Speaking	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
MARK					

STUDY Lessons 3 & 4

Watch a video

SB pages 38 - 40 | WB pages 95 & 96

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

bamboo (n)	الخيزران	own (ed) (v)	يملك
chemicals (n)	مواد كيميائية	pick (ed) (v)	يقطف/يلتقط
crops (n)	محاصيل	quality (n)	جودة
government (n)	الحكومة	soil (n)	تربة زراعية
industry (n)	صناعة	sports clothes (n)	ملابس رياضية
luxury (n/adj)	فخم/ترف	teenager (n)	مراهق
member (n)	فرد	uniform (n)	زى موحد
occasion (n)	مناسبة	wedding (n)	حفل زفاف

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

change (d) (v)	يغير	greener (adj)	أكثر خضرة
factory (n)	مصنع	however (adv)	ومع ذلك
gloves (n)	قفازات	nature (n)	الطبيعة

Check Point

Choose and complete: own – government – change – nature

1. The ..... helps the young get new jobs.
2. My grandparents hope to ..... a house in the city.
3. Spending time in ..... helps reduce stress التوتر.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

as a result	كنتيجة لذلك	keep	> soft	يبقى طريًا
cause > pollution	يسبب تلوثًا	make	> money	يكسب مالًا
do > a job/ sport	يؤدى وظيفة/رياضة			

Prepositions — حروف الجر

a pair of	زوج من	by the Nile	بجوار النيل
all over the world	فى جميع أنحاء العالم	care about	يهتم بـ
amazing at	مذهل فى	important to/for	هام لـ
by hand	يدويًا/باستخدام اليد	on a special occasion	فى مناسبة خاصة

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.
break off	يقطف/يزيل	broke off	broken off
keep	يحافظ	kept	kept

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها	Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
borrow	يستعير/يستلف	lend	يسلف	near	قريب	far	بعيد
perfect (for)	ممتاز/مثالى	imperfect	غير (ممتاز/مثالى)	soft	طرى/لين/ناعم	rough/ hard	خشن/صلب

Check Point

Choose and complete: on – keep – borrow – by

1. In the past, people drew maps ..... hand.
2. The opposite of "lend" is "..... ".
3. Mum keeps bread in a bag to ..... it soft.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر وتصريفات الأفعال والكلمات وعكسها.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 much + comparative — أكثر (للمقارنة بين اثنين)

- My brother is much **taller** than me.

2 used to + inf. — اعتاد أن (فعل شىء فى الماضى)

- I used to **play** in the street, but now I don't.

3 What about + (n./inf. + ing)? — ماذا عن...؟

- What about **going** to the mall?

4 "be" + used to + inf. / "be" + used for + (n./inf. + ing) — يستخدم لـ

- Egyptian cotton is often used to make luxury clothes.
- Water from the Nile is still used for the crops.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I ..... play football when I was young.

a) am used b) am used to c) used to d) used

2 A pen is used ..... .

a) write b) writing c) to writing d) for writing

3 What about ..... a film tonight?

a) watching b) to watching c) watch d) to watch

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Definitions — التعريفات

chemicals	مواد كيميائية	something produced by a scientific process
crops	محاصيل	a large amount of plants that are grown to be sold
environment	البيئة	the people and things around you in your life
industry	صناعة	a business making things to sell
luxury	فخم/ترف	expensive and good quality
perfect	مثالى/ممتاز	as good as it is possible to be
pick	يقطف	(flowers or fruit) broken off a plant
soft	طرى/ناعم	not hard to touch

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
near	قريب	close	قريب
perfect	ممتاز	excellent	ممتاز

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
govern (v)	يحكم	-ment		تحويل الفعل إلى اسم		government (n)	الحكومة

Prefix البادئة

Prefix	البادئة	Function	الوظيفة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
im-		تعطى عكس المعنى		perfect (adj)	ممتاز	imperfect (adj)	غير ممتاز

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 3

Pre-reading question:

- Do you care more about how you look or being comfortable?

Read the blog. Where did the three people get the clothes they talk about?

SB page 38

What do you wear?

This week, we asked three Egyptian teenagers (1) what they wear and why! Use the dictionary to find the meaning of difficult words.







Noha I bought this shirt from a shop in Cairo, but I'm trying to buy fewer clothes. Clothes factories cause a lot of pollution, so they are bad for the environment (2). So sometimes I borrow my sister's clothes. She borrows (3) mine, too, because we are the same size.

Ayman These trainers were my dad's. He never wore **them**, so I asked if I could have them. I like doing sport and these trainers are much better than the ones I used to wear. I usually wear sports clothes (4) because they are comfortable.

Dalida This is my school uniform (5). I have to wear it every school day. That beautiful dress is the one my grandmother made me for my cousin's wedding (6). She's amazing at sewing. She always makes us clothes for special occasions (7).

(1) مراهقون (2) البيئة

(3) يستعير (4) ملابس رياضية

(5) زى مدرسى موحد (6) حفل زفاف

(7) مناسبات خاصة

Comprehension Skills

Understanding reference: فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير:

- Read the second paragraph carefully, then try to find what the pronoun "them" refers to in the sentence **"These trainers were my dad's. He never wore them, so I asked if I could have them"**.

اقرأ الفقرة جيدا وحاول فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير.

Answer: The underlined pronoun "them" refers to the trainers.

Read the article. Did the Ancient Egyptians make the same types of material (1) as now?

Lesson 4

SB page 40

Egyptian linen and cotton



(1) Egypt is famous for growing crops (2) to make material. The Ancient Egyptians grew plants by the Nile to make linen. Almost everyone wore clothes made of linen and they also used the plants to make baskets.

(2) Today, Egyptian cotton is famous all over the world. Because cotton from Egypt is very good, it is often used to make luxury (3) clothes and things for homes. Many people work in the cotton industry (4), from farmers to people making or selling clothes and material.

(3) The climate and soil (5) in Egypt are perfect for growing cotton. Water from the Nile is still used for the crops. All of the cotton is picked (6) by hand to keep it soft.

(4) When you grow cotton, it uses a lot of water and chemicals (7). Now, the government is trying to help farmers to protect (8) the environment and use less water.

(1) مادة خام
(2) محاصيل
(3) فخم/ترف
(4) صناعة
(5) تربة زراعية
(6) يقتطف
(7) مواد كيميائية
(8) يحمى

Complete the article with these words.

WB Page 96

Is bamboo (1) the new cotton?



Some people are starting to use a plant called bamboo instead of cotton to make clothes. The plant is an important **crop** in China where the bamboo **industry** makes a lot of money. However, although bamboo grows very quickly, it is not a perfect (2) plant. After the bamboo is **picked**, people often use **chemicals** before they can use it to make clothes. These are bad for nature (3). Also, the material made from bamboo is not very **soft**. As a result, it is not used for expensive, **luxury** clothes which are usually made from cotton.

(1) الخيزران
(2) مثالى/ممتاز
(3) الطبيعة

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Farmers use ..... to protect their crops from insects. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) soil b) chemicals c) climate d) industry
2. Wheat, rice and cotton are important ..... . الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) instruments b) subjects c) crops d) colours
3. If something is ....., it is expensive and good quality. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) poor b) old c) luxury d) ancient
4. Most of the pollution in our area comes from the ..... near the river. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) house b) university c) school d) factory
5. Yesterday was my brother's ..... . He got married to our cousin. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
   a) wedding b) birthday c) festival d) birth
6. I like my new jacket. I will wear it only on special ..... . أسيوط ٢٠٢٤
   a) accidents b) stories c) occasions d) clothes
7. The climate and soil in Egypt are ..... for growing cotton. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) bad b) perfect c) sad d) unkind
8. I asked my brother to ..... me his jacket. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) borrow b) spend c) take d) lend
9. Hadeer enjoys walking ..... the Nile in the evening.
   a) on b) by c) in d) at
10. My mother is the person who cares ..... our family a lot.
    a) on b) about c) at d) by
11. Aunt Huda wants to ..... her hairstyle for the new occasion.
    a) keep b) cause c) change d) own
12. He put on ..... before working in the garden.
    a) gloves b) crops c) occasions d) baskets
13. I ..... lots of jobs every day.
    a) do b) make c) own d) change
14. My little brother ..... a flower from the garden.
    a) charged b) changed c) owned d) picked
15. Cotton is not a hard material. It's ..... . القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
    a) dangerous b) safe c) soft d) cheap
16. Of all the ..... in my family, my mother is the person I am most proud of. أسوان ٢٠٢٤
    a) managers b) members c) numbers d) teenagers

C Language

1 Demonstratives أسماء الإشارة

This That These Those

This

(هـذا - هـذه) اسـم إشـارة للمفـرد القريـب.

- I like this **phone** a lot.
- This is the best **concert** I went to.

That

(ذلك - تلك) اسـم إشـارة للمفـرد البعيـد.

- That **bird** has beautiful feathers.
- Bring that **book** on the second shelf, please.

These

(هـؤلاء) اسـم إشـارة للجمع القريـب.

- Do you like these **shoes**?
- These two **people** are my neighbours, Said and Sayed.

Those

(أولئـك) اسـم إشـارة للجمـع البعيـد.

- Those **keys** over there are mine.
- Those were the best **days** of my life.

2 one/ones

Use one (singular) or ones (plural) to replace nouns in a sentence.

نستخدم (one) (مع المفرد) أو (ones) (مع الجمع) لاستبدال الأسماء فى الجملة.

نضـع (one/ones) كالتالـى:

(١) بعـد الصفـة:

- Look at those two girls. Hend is the tall one and Huda is the short one.
- My trousers are old. I need new ones.

(٢) بعد (the):

- Look at those two girls. Helen is the one on the left.
- Show me the photographs – the ones you took in Paris.

(٣) بعد (Which):

- You can borrow a book. Which one do you want?
- There are different books. Which ones are yours?

(٤) بعد (this - that - these - those):

- This cookie looks nice, but that one looks delicious.

Got it ?

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 ..... (Those) bottle over there is empty.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (That) لأن bottle اسم مفرد ولوجود over there الدالة على أنها إشارة للبعيد.

2 I want those books, not these ..... (one).

- الإجابة الصحيحة (ones) لأنها تعود على اسم جمع books.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I like ..... smart, red cotton T-shirt. أزهر - السويس ٢٠٢٤
   a) those b) these c) this d) it
2. ..... people are my relatives. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) These b) That c) This d) Him
3. Look at ..... cloud in the sky. It's very strange. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٤
   a) those b) these c) this d) that
4. I don't like these expensive glasses. Please, give me cheaper ..... . بنى سويف ٢٠٢٤
   a) one b) one's c) ones d) ones'
5. I don't like this red shirt, I'll buy a new ..... . دمياط ٢٠٢٣
   a) one b) ones c) shirts d) a shirt
6. Can you give me ..... book? I cannot get it. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
   a) this b) that c) these d) those
7. **A:** Which cookies would you like? **B:** The chocolate ....., please.
   a) one b) ones c) one's d) ones'
8. You must overcome all ..... difficulties. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
   a) this b) that c) thus d) these
9. Let's watch a different film. This ..... is so boring.
   a) one b) ones c) one's d) ones'
10. How much does ..... camera cost?
    a) that b) those c) these d) they

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. These books are funny, but those ..... (one) are boring. القليوبية ٢٠٢٤
2. What's ..... (those) small thing by my chair? دمياط ٢٠٢٤
3. I bought ..... (this) shoes last week in the market. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
4. This bag is the ..... (ones) my mother bought me. بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣
5. ..... (This) pencils are perfect for drawing. Take them.
6. I liked ..... (that) paintings in the art gallery.

D Skills

1. Speaking

Talking about clothes التحدث عن الملابس

Situation ما يقال فى هذا الموقف **Response** جملة الرد

online

How many pairs of shoes do you have? Which ones are your favourite?
كم عدد الأحذية لديك؟ أيهما تفضل؟

I have about four pairs of shoes, but my trainers are my favourite.
أمتلك حوالى ٤ أحذية، ولكن حذائى الرياضى هو المفضل لدىَّ.

Which clothes shops do you like? Which one is your favourite?
أى محلات الملابس تحب؟ أيهما الأفضل لديك؟

I love casual clothing shops, but my favourite is sports clothing shops.
أحب متاجر الملابس الكاجوال. ولكن متاجر الملابس الرياضية هى المفضلة لدىَّ.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

Samar and Rehab are talking about clothes.

Samar : How many pairs of shoes do you have?

Rehab : I think I have about five pairs of shoes. (1)……?

Samar : I have six pairs. Which ones are your favourite?

Rehab : (2)…….

Samar : Why do you prefer the black ones?

Rehab : (3)…….

Samar : Which clothes shops do you like?

Rehab : (4)…….

Samar : (5)……?

Rehab : I always go shopping at the weekends.

2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

1. How to write about Egyptian linen and cotton

كيفية الكتابة عن القطن والكتان المصرى

- Egypt is famous for growing crops to make materials.
- The Ancient Egyptians grew plants by the Nile to make linen. They used them to make clothes.
- Today, Egyptian cotton is famous all over the world because it is very good.
- The climate and soil in Egypt are perfect for growing cotton.
- It is often used to make luxury clothes and things for homes.

Example

Egyptian linen and cotton

Egypt is famous for growing crops to make materials. The Ancient Egyptians grew plants by the Nile to make linen. They used it to make clothes. Today, Egyptian cotton is famous all over the world because it is very good. The climate and soil in Egypt are perfect for growing cotton. It is often used to make luxury clothes and things for homes. There are a lot of people working in the cotton industry. They still use water from the Nile for the crops. Cotton uses a lot of water and chemicals to grow. However, the government is trying to help farmers to protect the environment and use less water.

2. How to write about an advert

كيفية الكتابة عن إعلان

Example

An advert for trainers

My name's Omar. I'm 15 years old. I'm selling beautiful, new, white trainers. They are very luxurious and comfortable, with high quality. They are made in the USA. They are made of rubber. Their size is 41. They were a present for my birthday. I like them very much, but I already have ones that are the same! I always wear them while I am doing sports. They are perfect for work, school or sports. Their price is perfect. They are 500 pounds. The buyer can take back his money if he doesn't like them. If you are interested, email me, and we can discuss the price.

1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

القليوبية ٢٠٢٤

Egypt is famous for growing crops to make useful materials. Egyptian cotton is famous all over the world because cotton from Egypt is very good. It is often used to make **luxury** clothes and things for homes. Many people work in the cotton industry, from farmers to people making or selling clothes and materials. The climate and soil in Egypt are perfect for growing cotton. All of the cotton is picked by hand to keep it soft. When you grow cotton, it needs a lot of water. Now the government is trying to help farmers to protect the environment and use less water.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When you grow cotton, it needs a lot of ..... .
   a) sugar b) water c) salt d) bricks
2. The underlined word "**luxury**" is opposite to ..... .
   a) easy b) cheap c) expensive d) ugly

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Give a suitable title to this passage.
   .....
4. Why is Egyptian cotton famous all over the world?
   .....
5. Do you think growing cotton is important for us? Why?
   .....
6. How does the climate and soil in Egypt help cotton grow so well?
   .....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Many people work in the cotton ..... .
   الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) chemical b) environment c) industry d) rubbish
2. Plants grow in the ..... .
   القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) dust b) hole c) soil d) air
3. Chemicals spread into the air near the factories which ..... a lot of pollution.
   a) protect b) keep c) cause d) save
4. Sarah studied hard for her exam, and as a ....., she got high marks.
   a) reason b) cause c) case d) result
5. My aunt wants to ..... money by selling clothes she sews.
   a) do b) cause c) spend d) make

6. Maged is 18 years old. He is a/an ..... . القليوبية ٢٠٢٢

a) infant b) teenager c) child d) baby

7. These trainers are much better than the ..... I used to wear. سوهاج ٢٠٢٤

a) those b) this c) ones d) one

8. Can I buy ..... earrings over there in the window? سوهاج ٢٠٢٤

a) this b) that c) these d) those

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Shall I buy this shirt or that ..... (ones)? أسيوط ٢٠٢٤
2. ..... (This) scarves are my grandmother's. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
3. Whose phone is ..... (those)?
4. These are the new machines. What happened to the old ..... (one's)?
5. Let's play a different game. ..... (These) one is so boring.

4 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words to your friend Omar about a special occasion you are going to soon. Your name is Shady and your email address is shady@gmail.com and your friend's email address is omar@gmail.com. أسوان ٢٠٢٤

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

1. Tamer wants to ..... a sport to do.

a) do b) have c) make d) cause

2. Noha gave a perfect answer. Add"....."to get the opposite of"perfect".

a) il- b) dis- c) im- d) in-

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We have three children. The oldest ..... (one's) is 15 years old.
2. I remember ..... (a) day I first saw you.

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك فى كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

QUESTION	1	2	3	4
TACKLES	Comprehension	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
MARK				

STUDY Lessons 5 & 6

Watch a video

SB pages 41&42 | WB pages 97 & 98

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

advert (n)	إعلان	fit (ted) (v)	يناسب/يلائم
changing room (n)	غرفة تغيير الملابس	handbag (n)	حقيبة يد
chest of drawers (n)	خزانة ذات أدراج	interested (adj)	مهتم
customer (n)	زبون	shopkeeper (n)	صاحب المتجر
discuss (ed) (v)	يناقش	tool (n)	أداة

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

a bit	قليل	let (v)	يسمح
already (adv)	بالفعل	object (n)	شيء
check (ed) (v)	يتحقق من/يتأكد	sale (n)	بيع/تخفيض
email (ed) (v)	يرسل إيميل	statue (n)	تمثال
great-grandfather (n)	الجد الأكبر	useful (adj)	مفيد

Check Point

Choose and complete: handbag – sale – customer – discuss

1. Let's ..... our plans for the weekend.
2. The store has a big ..... today.
3. Lily always carries her phone and keys in her ..... .

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

get > married	يتزوج	move > house	ينتقل إلى مسكن جديد

Prepositions — حروف الجر

at the top	في القمة	look for	يبحث عن
buy .... for	يشترى لـ/من أجل	present for	هدية لـ
for sale	للبيع	try on	يقيس (ملابس)

Check Point

Choose and complete: for – move – get

1. Nadia wants to buy flowers ..... her mum.
2. They want to ..... house to be closer to their family.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word — الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning) — مرادفها
fantastic — رائع	wonderful — رائع
useful — مفيد	helpful — مفيد

Suffix اللاحقة

Word — الكلمة	Suffix — اللاحقة	Function — الوظيفة	The new word — الكلمة الجديدة
perfect (adj) ممتاز	-ly	تحويل الصفة إلى حال	perfectly (adv) بشكل ممتاز
use (v) يستخدم	-ful	تحويل الفعل إلى صفة	useful (adj) مفيد

Similar Spelling - Different Meaning

Word — الكلمة	Similar word — الكلمة المشابهة
price — ثمن/سعر	prize — جائزة
sale — بيع/تخفيض	sell — يبيع

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

B Reading & Listening Skills

Listen to a conversation in a shop and answer the questions.

Lesson 5

Listening Text

SB page 41



Shopkeeper Hello, can I help you?

Eman Hi, yes, I'm looking for a dress for a special occasion (1). It's my brother's birthday party next week.

Shopkeeper Oh, nice. What type of dress would you like?

Eman I'd like something like this one ..... but do you have a different colour? I don't like yellow.

Shopkeeper We have this one in blue.

Eman That's beautiful! Could I try it on?

Shopkeeper Of course. The changing room (2) is here. ..... What do you think? Does it fit (3)?

Eman It's a bit big. Do you have a smaller size (4)?

Shopkeeper Let me look. Yes, here's a smaller one. Try this on.

Eman Thank you. It fits perfectly (5), I'll take it!

Shopkeeper Great!

(1) مناسبة خاصة (2) غرفة تغيير الملابس

(3) يناسب (4) مقاس

(5) تمامًا

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 6

- What's your experience with buying things online?

Read the advert and answer the questions.

SB Page 42

BAG FOR SALE

I'm selling a beautiful, new, black leather handbag. It was a present for my birthday but I already have one that is the same! It is very large and perfect for work or school. The price is L.E. 500. Email me for more information.



Post-reading question:

- What does the underlined pronoun "It" refer to?

Read the advert. Which of the objects in Exercise 1 is it trying to sell?

WB Page 98

I'm selling a cool, old wooden chest of drawers. It was made in 1910 for my great-grandfather! It's large and perfect for keeping things in, but we have moved house and our new home is too small for it. If you are interested, email me and we can discuss the price.



خزانة ذات أدراج

Read and correct the underlined words in this advert.

Would you like to **buy** a really useful tool?

I'm selling a nice strong **one** that you can use in the garden. It is made of metal with **wood** at the top. It's perfect for people who want to grow vegetables – and the price is not expensive, it's very cheap!

Email me if you are interested.



غالى الثمن

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲Remembering ▲Understanding ▲Applying ▲Analysing ▲Evaluating ▲Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You can try on this jacket in the ..... room. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) dining b) changing c) living d) sitting
2. That shirt doesn't ..... . You need a bigger one. أسوان ٢٠٢٤
   a) save b) stay c) fit d) work
3. How often do you ..... social media? الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) save b) have c) check d) wear
4. The museum is full of ..... and many other historic objects. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) theatres b) castles c) stadiums d) statues
5. Reading is a very ..... habit. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) useless b) negative c) useful d) bad
6. A ..... is a piece of furniture for keeping clothes in. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
   a) bed b) chest of drawers c) mirror d) table
7. I found a/an ..... for a job in the newspaper.
   a) advert b) email c) article d) job
8. My aunt is going to ..... married tomorrow. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) give b) take c) do d) get
9. A ..... is someone who buys goods or services.
   a) seller b) salesman c) shopkeeper d) customer
10. A ..... is someone who owns or is in charge of a small shop.
    a) shopkeeper b) housekeeper c) goalkeeper d) hotelkeeper
11. Put any valuable ..... in a safe place.
    a) subjects b) objects c) adjectives d) adverbs
12. That skirt looks a ..... long to me, but I can wear it.
    a) bit b) bet c) pit d) pet
13. Nehal is putting her old car up ..... sale.
    a) of b) for c) to d) by
14. They bought new gardening ..... for the backyard.
    a) tools b) handbags c) drawers d) presents
15. My friends ..... me about the change in plans.
    a) fitted b) charged c) checked d) emailed
16. There's a flag ..... the top of the building.
    a) in b) on c) at d) for

C Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من
حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

Speaking

Shopping for clothes التسوق من أجل شراء الملابس

Situation	ما يقال فى هذا الموقف	Response	جملة الرد

online

Hello, can I help you? — مرحبًا، هل يمكننى مساعدتك؟

I'm looking for a jacket for a special occasion. — أبحث عن جاكيت لمناسبة خاصة.

What type of jacket would you like? — أى نوع من الجاكيت تريد؟

I'd like something loose but smart. — أريد جاكيت فضفاضًا ولكن أنيقًا.

We have this black jacket, or that red one in the window.
لدينا هذا الجاكيت الأسود أو ذلك الأحمر الذى فى الفاترينة.

Could I try on the black one? — هل يمكن أن أقيس الجاكيت الأسود؟

Of course. The changing room is there. — بالطبع غرفة تغيير الملابس هناك.

Thank you. Yes, this one fits perfectly. I'll take it!
شكرًا لك. هذا الجاكيت يناسبنى تمامًا. سوف أشتريه.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

Mona is at a clothes shop to buy a new dress. سوهاج ٢٠٢٤

Shop assistant : How can I help you?
Mona : (1)..... .
Shop assistant : (2).....?
Mona : I would like it red, please.
Shop assistant : (3).....?
Mona : It looks nice. Can I try it on?
Shop assistant : (4)..... . The changing room is there.
Mona : I think it fits me well. (5).....?
Shop assistant : It costs 500 pounds.
Mona : I will take it. Here is the money. Thank you.

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 10 Lessons (5 & 6)

12

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Adam is at a shoe shop to buy a pair of shoes. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤

Shopkeeper : Hello! Can I help you?
Adam : (1)..... .
Shopkeeper : (2).....?
Adam : Size 39.
Shopkeeper : (3).....?
Adam : Black.
Shopkeeper : Here you are. Do you like them?
Adam : (4)..... . How much are they?
Shopkeeper : (5)..... .
Adam : OK. Thanks. Here is the money.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When I buy a dress, I ask the shopkeeper to ..... it on first. دمياط ٢٠٢٢
   a) get b) go c) look d) try
2. My hobby is playing chess. Are you ..... in learning it?
   a) interest b) interested c) interesting d) interests
3. He began to look ..... a new job after he left his old one.
   a) forward b) up c) at d) for
4. The film had ..... started when we arrived.
   a) interestingly b) usefully c) perfectly d) already
5. We bought a ..... table.
   a) round, big, wooden b) big, wooden, round
   c) wooden, big, round d) big, round, wooden
6. ..... building over there is the Cairo Tower.
   a) This b) That c) Those d) These

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. It's a long, ... (striped/ snake/ plastic). القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
2. I don't like this watch. I want the other ..... (ones). الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
3. Can you see ..... (that) birds in the sky? القليوبية ٢٠٢٤
4. It is a ..... (blue, cotton, beautiful) skirt. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك فى كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

QUESTION	1	2	3
TACKLES	Speaking	Vocabulary	Language
MARK			

Al-Adwaa Test On Unit 10

30

A Listening

نص الاستماع
فى نهاية الكتاب.

الجيزة ٢٠٢٤

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When is Omar going to a special occasion?
   a) Next year.
   b) Next month.
   c) Tomorrow.
   d) Yesterday.
2. Where will the party be?
   a) At the park.
   b) At home.
   c) At a hotel.
   d) On the house roof.
3. What did Omar buy for the party?
   a) New clothes.
   b) A mobile phone.
   c) A camera.
   d) A car.
4. What will Omar give his cousin?
   a) Clothes.
   b) A nice present.
   c) A prize.
   d) Money.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Kady wants to buy a new, blue dress.

Shopkeeper : Hello, can I help you?
Kady : (1)..... .
Shopkeeper : (2).....?
Kady : I'd like a summer dress, something light and colourful.
Shopkeeper : We have some lovely summer dresses.
Kady : Could I try on this blue one?
Shopkeeper : (3)..... . The changing room is over there.
Kady : (4).....?
Shopkeeper : Yes, it fits you perfectly.
Kady : I'll take it. (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Egyptian cotton is a special type of cotton. This cotton is famous for being very soft, strong, and long-lasting. Egyptian cotton is often used to make high-quality bed sheets, towels, and clothes. People love it because it feels very soft and comfortable. Egyptian cotton is so good because it is picked by hand. This keeps it long and fine, making it soft. Many people around the world choose Egyptian cotton for **their** homes because it lasts a long time and stays soft after many washes. Although it is more expensive than regular cotton, many believe it is worth the extra cost. If you want comfortable, high-quality fabric that will last a long time, Egyptian cotton is an excellent choice.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Egyptian cotton is picked by ..... .
   a) face b) leg c) foot d) hand
2. Egyptian cotton is used to make ..... .
   a) towels b) clothes c) bed sheets d) all of these

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage?

   .....

4. What does the underlined word "**their**" refer to?

   .....

5. Why do you think Egyptian cotton is more expensive than regular cotton?

   .....

6. What types of products are commonly made from Egyptian cotton?

   .....

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Yassin made a handmade present ..... his grandmother.
   a) in b) at c) with d) for
2. We should use ..... cars as they don't pollute the environment. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) electric b) oil c) petrol d) old
3. Women like to wear necklaces around their ..... .
   a) ears b) arms c) necks d) feet

4. ..... are a large amount of plants that are grown to be sold.

a) Chemicals b) Crops c) Gloves d) Members

5. My sister ..... my clothes because we are the same size.

a) borrows b) owes c) makes d) owns

6. When we buy clothes from a shop, we should ..... them on.

a) get b) buy c) look d) try

7. She has a ..... scarf.

a) striped, beautiful, silk b) beautiful, striped, silk

c) striped, silk, beautiful d) silk, beautiful, striped

8. **A:** Would you like to have a new pencil? **B:** No, I don't need ..... .

a) this b) these c) ones d) one

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Don't take the white socks. The black ..... (one) are much cooler.
2. What do you think of ..... (that) sculptures in the museum?
3. ..... (This) cup on the shelf there is yours.
4. Mayada is wearing a ..... (long, beautiful, red) dress.
5. ..... (These) film is amazing; you have to watch it.

بنى سويف ٢٠٢٤

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Different styles of clothes people like to wear"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك فى كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

QUESTION	1	2	3	4	5	6
TACKLES	Listening	Speaking	Reading	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
MARK						

Bubble Sheet Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Sara is talking to Mona who bought some clothes last weekend.

Sara : Hi! Mona. Where did you go last weekend?

Mona : (1)..... .

a) I travelled to Alex
b) I went shopping
c) I met my friends
d) I went to the cinema

Sara : Shopping! (2).....?

a) Who did you buy
b) When did you buy
c) Where did you buy
d) What did you buy

Mona : I bought a T-shirt and a pair of sunglasses.

Sara : (3).....?

a) Who did you go with
b) Why did you go
c) How did you go
d) Where did you go

Mona : I went with my brother and sister.

Sara : What did your sister buy?

Mona : (4)..... .

a) She made a scarf
b) She made shoes
c) She bought shoes
d) She bought a scarf

Sara : What colour are your sister's shoes?

Mona : (5)..... .

a) It's cool
b) They're cool
c) It's black
d) They're black

2 Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d:

1. Osama is wearing a ..... (wool/nice/black) suit.
   a) wool, black, nice
   b) black, wool, nice
   c) nice, black, wool
   d) wool, nice, black
2. ..... (They) house on the hill is beautiful.
   a) This
   b) These
   c) That
   d) Those
3. Small apples are sweeter than big ..... (one).
   a) ones's
   b) ones'
   c) ones
   d) one's
4. Are ..... (these) your keys on that table?
   a) this
   b) those
   c) that
   d) ones
5. Why did you choose ..... (those) restaurant for lunch?
   a) one
   b) ones
   c) these
   d) that

ANSWER HERE

Q 1	1 (a)(b)(c)(d)	2 (a)(b)(c)(d)	3 (a)(b)(c)(d)	4 (a)(b)(c)(d)	5 (a)(b)(c)(d)
Q 2	1 (a)(b)(c)(d)	2 (a)(b)(c)(d)	3 (a)(b)(c)(d)	4 (a)(b)(c)(d)	5 (a)(b)(c)(d)

Module 5 Question Bank On Units 9&10

1 Complete the following dialogue:

A) Said is inviting Amr to his house to listen to some music. الغربية ٢٠٢٣

Said : Hi, Amr. I was wondering if you were busy tonight.
Amr : Hi, Said. No, I am not busy. Why?
Said : (1)..... ?
Amr : Yes, that sounds cool. Shall I bring anything?
Said : (2)..... . Could you bring your guitar?
Amr : (3)..... ! What about bringing some sandwiches with me?
Said : No, thanks. I've got enough sandwiches.
Amr : (4)..... ?
Said : At about 8 pm.
Amr : Okay! I'll be there on time. (5)..... !

B) Mona is talking to Nada about shopping. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤

Mona : Hi, Nada. Where did you go last weekend?
Nada : Hi, Mona. (1)..... .
Mona : Shopping! (2)..... ?
Nada : I bought a bag and black shoes.
Mona : (3)..... ?
Nada : I went with my mother.
Mona : Why don't you buy them online?
Nada : (4)..... .
Mona : I agree with you, can you come with me to buy a bag like this?
Nada : (5)..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Writing ..... of films needs skill and experience. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
   a) scripts b) sculptures c) names d) lists
2. ..... means art made from stone or wood that looks like people or animals. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
   a) Cartoon b) Sculpture c) Portrait d) Pottery
3. I always see good mothers ..... their babies. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) hugging b) hitting c) eating d) flying
4. We went to the ..... where we played many games and enjoyed our time. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) theatre b) cinema c) bark d) theme park
5. It's a beautiful jacket. You look very ..... . بنى سويف ٢٠٢٤
   a) bad b) smart c) terrible d) excited

6. I'm looking for a dress for a special ..... . My sister is getting married next week. دمياط ٢٠٢٤

a) tradition b) holiday c) accident d) occasion

7. This jacket is not formal. It's ..... . القليوبية ٢٠٢٤

a) suitable b) large c) fashionable d) casual

8. To ..... is to put on a piece of clothes to check if it fits or not. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢

a) try on b) turn on c) depend on d) stand on

9. She is able ..... her bedroom. Don't help her. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣

a) to tidy b) tidying c) to tidying d) tidy

10. Mona knows ..... draw. Let's ask her to draw us a picture. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢

a) how b) to c) how to d) able to

11. She says that she ..... speak five languages. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣

a) be able to b) knows how c) is able d) can

12. ..... you able to paint the scenery? الغربية ٢٠٢٣

a) Do b) Are c) Have d) Can

13. Shams loves wearing her ..... galabeya. بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣

a) cotton, long, red b) long, cotton, red

c) long, red, cotton d) red, long, cotton

14. ..... gold earrings in my ears are my grandmother's. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢

a) This b) These c) That d) There

15. These shoes are the ..... my mum bought me. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٤

a) these b) this c) one d) ones

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. **A:** ..... (Will) you use a computer? **B:** Yes, I can. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤

2. He is able ..... (ride) a bike. القليوبية ٢٠٢٤

3. Do you know how ..... (do) make-up? بنى سويف ٢٠٢٤

4. ..... (Would) you able to swim? الشرقية ٢٠٢٤

5. She doesn't know ..... (who) to cook. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤

6. This poor man is wearing a/an ..... (old/wool/simple) shirt. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢

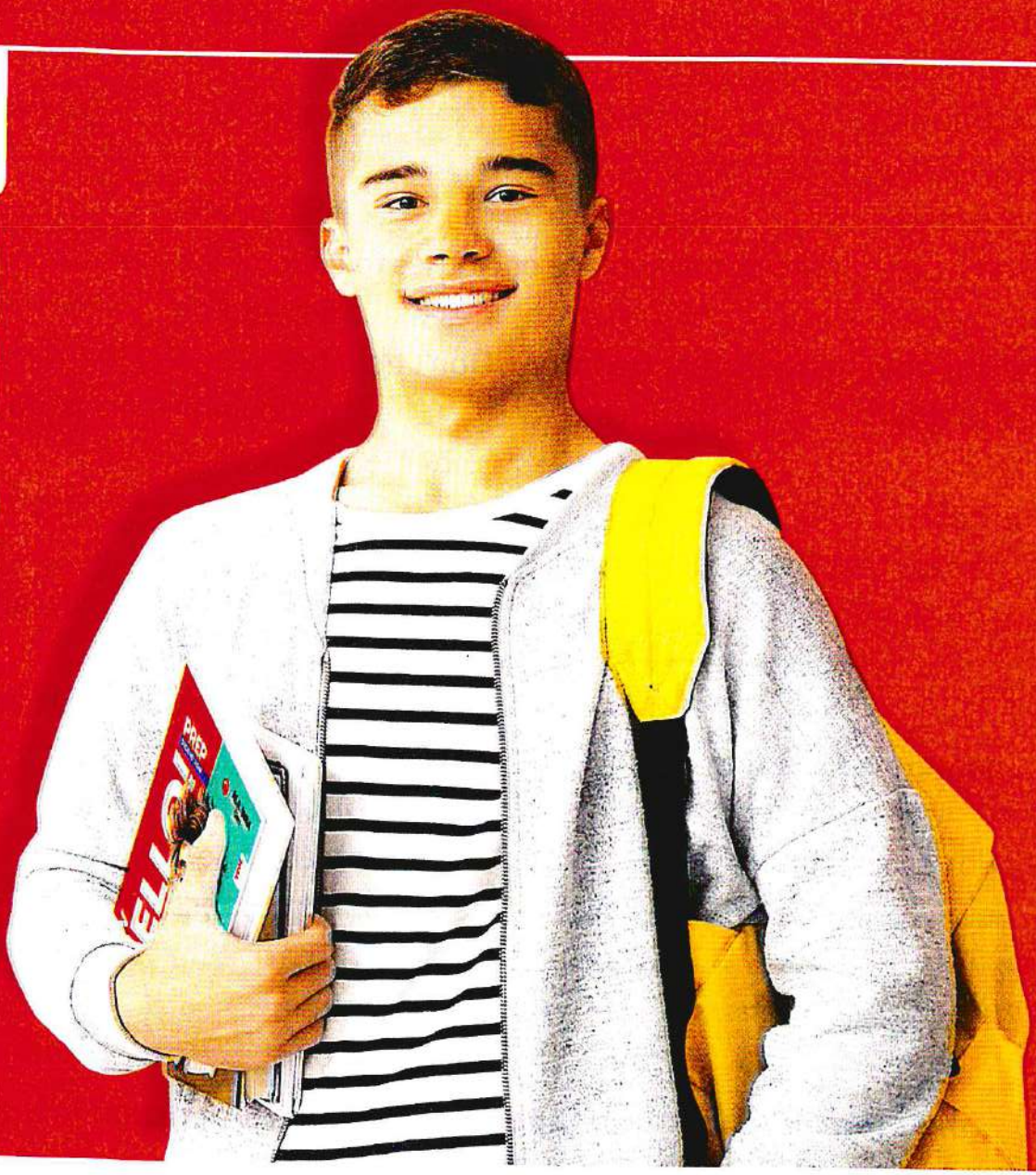
7. Pass me ..... (these) magazine over there, please. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣

8. ..... (This) earrings are very nice. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

9. Shall I buy that blue T-shirt or that green ..... (ones)? القليوبية ٢٠٢٣

10. These shoes are the worst ..... (one). الشرقية ٢٠٢٤

MODULE 6



Unit 11 The future of our planet

Unit 12 Languages and learning

Module 6 Question Bank

Selected from Previous Exams

Unit 11

THE FUTURE OF OUR PLANET



OBJECTIVES OF THE UNIT

Reading	Online posts about helping the environment; texts about a school trip; an article about teenage inventors; a postcard
Writing	A paragraph about an environmental problem; a holiday postcard
Listening	Identifying what is going to happen; a radio programme about environmental problems; a teacher talking about drones; a discussion about making arrangements
Speaking	Making predictions and future plans; suggesting solutions; giving opinions
Language	*be going to* and the present continuous for the future
Life Skills	Problem solving; Negotiation; Collaboration

SB تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب

WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات

STUDY

Lessons 1 & 2

Watch a video

SB pages 44 - 47 | WB pages 100 & 101

A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

alarm clock (n)	منبه	race (n)	سباق
approach (ed) (v)	يقترب من	reuse (d) (v)	يعيد استخدام
environmental (adj)	بيئى	save (d) (v)	ينقذ/يحفظ/يدخر
extra (adj)	إضافى	snow (n)	ثلج
flood (ed) (v/n)	يفيض/فيضان	solar panels (n)	ألواح الطاقة الشمسية
hunter (n)	صياد	solve (d) (v)	يحل
improve (d) (v)	يحسن	storm (n)	عاصفة
install (ed) (v)	يثَبِّت/يركب	traffic (n)	حركة المرور
local people (n)	السكان المحليون	turn (ed) (v)	يدور
melt (ed) (v)	ينصهر/يذوب	wildlife (n)	الحياة البرية
planet (n)	كوكب	wind turbines (n)	توربينات الرياح

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

because of	بسبب	online post (n)	منشور عبر الإنترنت
cause (d) (v)	يسبب	path (n)	ممر
climate change (n)	تغير المناخ	project (n)	مشروع
commentator (n)	المعلق	radio programme (n)	برنامج إذاعى
departure (n)	مغادرة/رحيل	roof garden (n)	حديقة على السطح
equipment (n)	معدات	snoring (n)	صوت الشخير
event (n)	حدث	station square (n)	ميدان المحطة
fire (n)	حريق/نار	stop (n)	موقف
flour (n)	دقيق	washing machine (n)	غسالة

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية: (n) = noun | (adj) = adjective | (prep) = preposition | (v) = verb | (adv) = adverb | (conj) = conjunction

Check Point

Choose and complete: traffic – improve – solve – path

1. The teacher helped the students ..... the maths problem.
2. We walked along the ..... in the park.
3. Nancy works hard to ..... her grades.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

catch	the bus	يلحق الأتوبيس	install	solar panels	يثَبّت ألواح طاقة شمسية
do	well	يؤدى جيدًا	make	electricity	يولد كهرباء
find	a solution to	يجد حلًا لـ		money	يربح مالًا
get	worse	يزداد سوءًا		predictions	يقوم بتنبؤات
go	trekking	يذهب للترحال	pick up	rubbish	يلتقط القمامة
have	a vote on	يُجرى تصويتًا على			

Prepositions — حروف الجر

at first	فى البداية	drive across	يقود عبر
based on	قائم على	get off	ينزل (من وسيلة مواصلات)
change into	يتغير إلى/يتحول إلى	go off	يرن (للمنبه)
come on	تعال/هيا	on your own	بمفردك

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.
break	يكسر	broke	broken
bring	يُحضر	brought	brought
catch	يلحق بـ	caught	caught
fall down	يقع/يسقط	fell down	fallen down
throw away	يرمى بعيدًا	threw away	thrown away

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
local	محلى	global	عالمى
reduce	يقلل	increase	يزيد
repair	يصلح	damage	يدمر
unfortunately	لسوء الحظ	fortunately	لحسن الحظ

Check Point

Choose and complete: off – threw – global – make – of

1. Solar panels can ..... electricity from sunlight.
2. Please, I want to get ..... the bus at the next stop.
3. My brother ..... away the old toys two days ago.
4. Asmaa works for a ..... company. That's why she travels a lot.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر وتصريفات الأفعال والكلمات وعكسها.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 Adjectives ending in (al)

الصفات المنتهية بـ (al)

Noun		Adjective		Noun		Adjective	
environment	البيئة	environmental	بيئى	nature	الطبيعة	natural	طبيعى
music	الموسيقى	musical	موسيقِى	tradition	التقليد	traditional	تقليدى

- These chemicals cause serious environmental damage.
- Our skin cream contains only natural ingredients.

2 seem to + inf.

يبدو

- Farida seems to be happy.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The weather seems ..... better.
   a) to getting **b)** getting **c)** get **d)** to get
2. They attended a/an ..... show when they were in Alex.
   a) natural **b)** environmental **c)** musical **d)** tradition

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ

Definitions		التعريفات
install	يثَبِّت	put equipment somewhere so it is ready to use
reduce	يقلل	make something less in amount or size
repair	يصلح	fix something that is broken
save	ينقذ	make something safe from danger
solar panels	ألواح طاقة شمسية	equipment that changes the sun's light into electricity
wind turbines	توربينات الرياح	equipment that uses the wind to make electricity

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word — الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning) — مرادفها
reduce — يقلل	decrease — يقلل
repair — يصلح	fix/mend — يصلح

Suffix اللاحقة

Word — الكلمة	Suffix — اللاحقة	Function — الوظيفة	The new word — الكلمة الجديدة
equip (v) — يعد/يجهز	-ment	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	equipment (n) — معدات

Prefix البادئة

Prefix — البادئة	Function — الوظيفة	Word — الكلمة	The new word — الكلمة الجديدة
re-	تعطى معنى الإعادة	use (v) — يستخدم	reuse (v) — يعيد استخدام
un-	تعطى عكس المعنى	fortunately (adv) — لحسن الحظ	unfortunately (adv) — لسوء الحظ

Similar Spelling - Different Meaning

Word — الكلمة	Similar word — الكلمة المشابهة
flour — دقيق	floor — طابق/أرضية الغرفة
path — ممر	pass — ينجح/يمر
save — ينقذ/يحفظ/يدخر	safe — آمن
trekking — ترحال/ترحُّل	tricking — حيلة/خدعة

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.



B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 1

- Mention some habits that people can follow to help the environment.

Read some online posts[1] from teenagers[2] who want to help the environment[3]. Match each post with one of the photos from page 44. Use a dictionary to search for difficult words. *SB Page 45*

The rivers in Kaziranga National Park in India often flood[4] and the problem is getting worse because of climate change[5]. Later this year, I'm going to help my father to save wildlife from the flood water. This can be dangerous, but my father works in the park and he knows how to keep me safe!

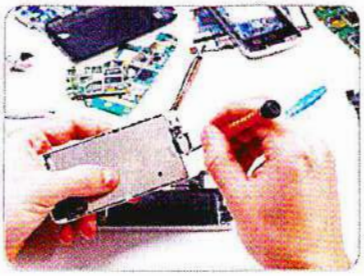
There's a lot of air pollution[6] from the traffic[7] in our city and this is very unhealthy. Trees are good for the environment and help reduce air pollution - so next week, we're going to plant trees on the roof of our school and make a school roof garden.

(1) منشورات عبر الإنترنت
(2) مراهقون
(3) البيئة
(4) يفيض
(5) تغير المناخ
(6) تلوث الهواء
(7) حركة المرور
(8) مشروع
(9) يصلح





I love phones, but I know that throwing away old phones can be bad for the environment. I started a project[8] in school to recycle mobile phones. From tomorrow, people are going to bring us their old phones and we're going to reuse parts from them to repair[9] other phones.



Comprehension Skills

Giving a title to the passage: إعطاء عنوان للفقرة:

1. Focus on the main idea. ركز على الفكرة الرئيسية (يجب أن يعطى العنوان تلميحًا عليها).

2. Use descriptive words. استخدام كلمات وصفية تصف الموضوع بشكل جيد.

3. Make it interesting. اجعله شيقًا ليجذب القارئ.

4. Keep it short and simple. اجعله قصيرًا وبسيطًا.

- Can you think of a title for the previous passage?

Examples: Protecting Nature Together.
Helping Our Environment.

Listening Text

Lesson 2

Pre-listening question:

- What are your plans for the weekend?

Listen and complete the sentences with the correct form of these verbs to say what is going to happen. *SB Page 46*

(1) Boy : Oh no! Look at the time! It's 9 o'clock! Come on, quick!

(They are going to be late.)

(2) Girl 1 : The water's a bit cold at first but it's lovely. Come on, Huda! Come and join me!

Girl 2 : OK, I'm coming! *(Huda is going to go swimming.)*

(1) يقترب من

(2) سباق

(3) [Sound of snoring then alarm clock ringing. Snoring stops and person wakes up]

(He's going to get up.)

(4) Voice: We are now approaching[1] Station Square.

Boy 1: Is this our stop?

Boy 2: Yes, it is. Come on.

(They are going to get off the bus.)



(5) Commentator: And they're near the finishing line now and suddenly Farida seems to be running faster. Nothing can stop her now. Just look at her go!

(Farida is going to win the race[2].)



(6) Boy : Oh, I'm tired. But it's only nine o'clock!

Woman : Yes, but you've got school in the morning, Omar.

Boy : You're right. Good night, Mum.

(Omar is going to go to bed.)

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

approach /əproʊtʃ/ suddenly /sʌdənli/

Post-listening question:

- What is Farida going to do?

Listening Text

Lesson 2

Pre-listening question:

- What places around the world would you like to visit?

Listen to a radio programme about beautiful places in the world and check your answers to Exercise 4. *SB Page 47*

Speaker:



Wadi Rum is a large area of desert in the south of Jordan. It's a very beautiful place with mountains, desert plants and wildlife[1]. Unfortunately[2], Wadi Rum has some environmental problems[3].

Tourists help the local people[4] make money, but when tourists go trekking[5] in the desert, they often leave rubbish, too.

Some tourists drive across the desert in cars: they don't use roads or paths, but drive wherever they want to and this can damage plants and wildlife.

The hotels use lots of water which can be a problem in the desert. But they are building new hotels so even more tourists will go there.

Another big problem is hunters who kill the desert animals. They shouldn't do this, but there aren't enough people to stop them. There is much less wildlife now than in the past and soon there won't be any.

(1) الحياة البرية
(2) لسوء الحظ
(3) مشاكل بيئية
(4) السكان المحليون
(5) يذهب للترحال

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

unfortunately /ʌnfɔːrtʃʊnətli/ wildlife /waɪldlaɪf/

Post-listening question:

- In your opinion, how can we save Wadi Rum?

Life Skills

1. Do you think it is best to find solutions to a problem on your own, or as a group? Why?
2. If you work in a group, how can you decide whose solution is the best one?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I think electric cars will help ..... pollution in the future. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) save **b)** reduce **c)** repair **d)** install
2. Scientists think that climate change will ..... many problems for the environment. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٤
   a) protect **b)** keep **c)** cause **d)** save
3. My uncle helped us to ..... a new washing machine this morning. دمياط ٢٠٢٤
   a) serve **b)** decide **c)** reduce **d)** install
4. Wind ..... generate electricity for the local community. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
   a) alarms **b)** machines **c)** turbines **d)** panels
5. I asked the mechanic to ..... my broken car. دمياط ٢٠٢٤
   a) play **b)** repair **c)** prefer **d)** require
6. Climate change can cause ice to ..... . أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
   a) melt **b)** charge **c)** freeze **d)** produce
7. Polluted water is a great danger to ..... . الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) wildlife **b)** lifestyle **c)** solar panels **d)** bacteria
8. ..... away old phones can damage the environment.
   a) Staying **b)** Saving **c)** Meeting **d)** Throwing
9. Tourism helps local people to ..... money.
   a) make **b)** do **c)** steal **d)** rob
10. The cat slowly ..... the bird to catch it.
    a) solved **b)** saved **c)** approached **d)** joined
11. When tourists go ..... in the desert, they often leave rubbish, too. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٤
    a) diving **b)** swimming **c)** trekking **d)** skiing
12. We asked the ..... for directions to the nearest market.
    a) online posts **b)** local people **c)** solar panels **d)** wind turbines
13. All his books are often based ..... real life events.
    a) on **b)** in **c)** at **d)** of
14. Check your ..... before you go mountain climbing.
    a) factories **b)** engines **c)** hobbies **d)** equipment
15. We don't know where we will spend our weekend, so we ..... a vote on it.
    a) do **b)** have **c)** think **d)** get
16. ....., Wadi Rum has some environmental problems.
    a) Luckily **b)** Unfortunately **c)** Fortunately **d)** Lucky

C Language

(be) going to سوف

e.g. - I'm going to **meet** my friends.

Usage الاستخدام

(1) We use (be) going to + inf. to talk about our intentions for the future.

١- تستخدم للتعبير عن نية أو قصد لفعل شىء فى المستقبل تم التخطيط له.

e.g.
- I'm going to **join** the school football team. I've **decided**.
- Sally is going to **sweep** the floor. She **intends** to do that.
- We need potatoes to make dinner. I'm going to **buy** some.

لاحظ أن عند ذكر decide/plan/intend نستخدم going to لأنهم يدلوا عن وجود نية لفعل شىء فى المستقبل.

(2) We use (be) going to + inf. to make predictions about the future based on what we can see or know. (evidence)

٢- تستخدم لعمل تنبؤات حول المستقبل بناءً على ما يمكننا رؤيته أو معرفته (تنبؤ بدليل).

e.g.
- I can see some dark clouds. It is going to rain.
- The ladder is shaking. That man is going to fall.

Form التكوين

Affirmative & Negative الإثبات والنفى

I	am/ am not	+ going to + inf. مصدر الفعل
He, She, It, اسم مفرد	is/ isn't	
We, They, You, اسم جمع	are/ aren't	

e.g.
- I am going to **study** French. I am not going to **study** Arabic.
- My brother is going to **play** tennis. He isn't going to **play** football.
- You are going to **watch** TV. You aren't going to **listen** to music.

Got it ?

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Mr. Khaled ..... (going/ take) us to the Egyptian Museum. He's decided.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (is going to take) لوجود decided الدالة على النية لفعل شىء ما.

2. I ..... (going) visit my grandparents next week because I have a meeting.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (am not going to) لأن الجملة تعطى معنى النفى.

3. My friends ..... (watch) the match at the stadium. They've planned.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (are going to watch) لوجود planned الدالة على وجود نية لعمل شىء فى المستقبل.

Question السؤال

① Yes/No question السؤال بهل

Am/Is/Are + subject الفاعل + going to + inf. مصدر الفعل?

Subject الفاعل:
I, he, she, it, we, they, you
اسم مفرد/ اسم جمع

e.g. Am I going to **join** the athletics team, mum?
Is your sister going to **get** married next year?
Are you going to **make** dinner for your family tonight?

② Wh- question السؤال بأداة استفهام

Q.Word أداة استفهام + am/is/are + subject الفاعل + going to + inf. مصدر الفعل?

e.g. What are you going to **study** when you go to university?
When is he going to **visit** his grandparents?

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 Are they going ..... (having) a picnic next weekend?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (to have) لوجود going التى يتبعها to + inf.

2 When ..... (she is) going to study English?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (is she) لأنها صيغة سؤال.

3 ..... (Do) I going to study French this evening?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Am) لوجود going to وفاعل الجملة (I).



PRACTICE

Language Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I have planned; I ..... medicine.

a) will study **b)** studies **c)** study **d)** am going to study

2. Ali intends to buy a new laptop. He ..... it. دمياط ٢٠٢٤

a) is buying **b)** is going to buy **c)** buys **d)** will buy

3. It's cloudy. It is ..... to rain. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤

a) will **b)** go **c)** going **d)** went

4. They ..... to go to the concert tonight. They're busy completing the project.

a) will **b)** won't **c)** are going **d)** aren't going

5. What are you going to ..... tomorrow? دمياط ٢٠٢٤

a) do **b)** doing **c)** done **d)** did

6. Noha is ..... next weekend with her aunt. It's planned. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢

a) spend **b)** going to spend **c)** spent **d)** spends

7. ..... going to accept the job offer?

a) Will you **b)** You will **c)** You are **d)** Are you

8. We ..... play football tomorrow. We have an English exam.

a) are going to **b)** aren't going to **c)** going to **d)** not going to

9. She is driving too fast. She ..... have an accident. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣

a) is going **b)** will **c)** won't **d)** is going to

10. **A:** Have you got any plans for tomorrow? **B:** Yes, I ..... visit my grandparents.

a) going to **b)** am going to **c)** will **d)** am going

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Are you going ..... (sold) your bike? القاهرة ٢٠٢٤

2. I ..... (not/going) eat out tonight. I have decided not to do this.

3. ..... (They are) going to move to a new city?

4. The traffic is terrible. We are going ..... (being) late.

5. I forgot my homework; my teacher is going to ..... (is) angry. قنا ٢٠٢٣

6. What are you going ..... (do) this evening?

D Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

1. Speaking

Making predictions and future plans

عمل تنبؤات وخطط مستقبلية

Situation ما يقال فى هذا الموقف **Response** جملة الرد

online

What are you going to do at the weekend?
ماذا سوف تفعل فى العطلة الأسبوعية؟

I'm going to visit my grandparents. سوف أزور أجدادى.

How are you going to improve your English?
كيف ستطور لغتك الإنجليزية؟

I'm going to have holiday courses.
سأقوم بالحصول على دورات تدريبية صيفية.

Are you going to recycle your mobile phone when it's old?
هل ستقوم بإعادة تصنيع هاتفك عندما يصبح قديمًا؟

Sure. I'm going to reuse old parts from it to repair other phones.
بالتأكيد. سوف أقوم بإعادة استخدام أجزاء منه لإصلاح هواتف أخرى

Speaking Exercise

▲Remembering ▲Understanding ▲Applying ▲Analysing ▲Evaluating ▲Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

Mona and Merna are talking about the next summer holiday. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٤

Mona : How are you, Merna?

Merna : (1)..... .

Mona : Where are you going to spend the next summer holiday?

Merna : (2)..... .

Mona : (3).....?

Merna : We are going to Hurghada by train.

Mona : (4).....?

Merna : We are going to stay there for two weeks.

Mona : Who are you going to go with?

Merna : (5)..... .

Mona : I hope you will have good time there.

2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to help the environment

كيفية مساعدة البيئة

- Our natural environment gives us everything that we need.
- We get (ما نحصل عليه من البيئة) from the environment.
- We can save the environment by ... (طرق الحفاظ على البيئة)
- We should never ... (ما لا يجب فعله).
- We can recycle many things instead of throwing them away.
- Trees are good for the environment and help reduce air pollution.

Writing tips

Use varied sentence patterns in your writing. There should be both long and short sentences.

استخدم نماذج متنوعة من الجمل. يجب أن تكون هناك جمل طويلة وأخرى قصيرة فى الفقرة.

Example

The environment

Our natural environment gives us everything that we need. We get air, water, food and many other things from the environment. We can save the environment by making sure that we take care of nature. We should save water. Water is very important in our environment, so we should never pollute it. We can recycle many things instead of throwing them away. Trees are good for the environment and help reduce air pollution. We should plant more trees. This will help to improve the size of natural habitats موطن for animals. We should teach our children to look after the environment.

Check Point

Write a paragraph on:

"How to save the environment"

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: الشرقية ٢٠٢٤

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. How do trees help the environment? – They ..... air pollution.
   a) increase **b)** reduce **c)** make **d)** raise
2. What are you going to do?
   a) Water trees. **b)** Throw paper. **c)** Plant trees. **d)** Collect rubbish.
3. When are you going to do that?
   a) Next month. **b)** Next week. **c)** Next weekend. **d)** Next year.
4. Where are you going to do that?
   a) In the street. **b)** On the farm.
   c) On the roof of the school. **d)** On the ground.

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Alaa is going to study for her English test and Roqaya is going to go shopping.

Alaa : Hi, Roqaya. How are you?
Roqaya : Hi, Alaa. I'm good, thanks. And you?
Alaa : (1)..... . What are you going to do this afternoon?
Roqaya : (2)..... . What about you?
Alaa : (3)..... .
Roqaya : Do you think you are going to do well on the test?
Alaa : Yes, I think so. I always study hard. (4).....?
Roqaya : I am going to buy a dress for my sister's birthday.
Alaa : That sounds exciting! (5).....?
Roqaya : It's going to be next Saturday. I'm really looking forward to it!

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This factory uses solar ..... to make electricity. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
   a) canals **b)** panels **c)** turbines **d)** controls
2. We can ..... plastic bottles. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) reuse **b)** reduce **c)** save **d)** turn
3. To ..... is to make something safe from danger. بورسعيد ٢٠٢٤
   a) save **b)** reuse **c)** reduce **d)** install
4. The loud ringing of my ..... woke my father up.
   a) station square **b)** wind turbine **c)** alarm clock **d)** solar panel
5. The bus ..... is about 200 metres from here.
   a) port **b)** building **c)** race **d)** stop
6. When water increases in rivers, there is a ..... .
   a) roof **b)** crop **c)** flood **d)** drought

7. Ali is running very fast. He ..... win. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤

a) will b) is going to c) would d) could

8. Look at that clear sky! It ..... rain today.

a) is going to b) isn't going to c) will d) won't

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We are going to ..... (travelling) to Japan. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
2. ..... (Amgad/is) going to decorate the garden for the party?
3. The snow is going ..... (melt). بنى سويف ٢٠٢٤
4. I ..... (doesn't) going to go to the meeting.
5. Are you ..... (go) join the gym?

5 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words to your friend, Omar telling him what you are going to do next holiday. Your friend's email address is omar@yahoo.com. Your name is Ali and your email address is ali@gmail.com. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٤

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

1. When I went to the mountains, I ..... trekking very interesting.

a) got b) found c) went d) kept

2. She ..... the university last year.

a) went b) got c) arrived d) joined

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Mo Salah is the best player. I think he ..... (score) a goal next match.
2. Mo Salah is running fast. He ..... (score) a goal.

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك فى كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

QUESTION	1	2	3	4	5
TACKLES	Listening	Speaking	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
MARK					

STUDY

Lessons 3 & 4

Watch a video



SB pages 48 - 50 WB pages 102 & 103

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

array (n)	مجموعة/مصفوفة	jungle (n)	أدغال
bacteria (n)	بكتيريا	liquid (n)	سائل
canal (n)	قناة (مائية)	mangrove (n)	شجرة المنجروف
chemistry (n)	الكيمياء	microorganisms (n)	كائنات دقيقة
conservation (n)	الحفاظ على	midday (n)	منتصف النهار
control (led) (v)	يتحكم فى	ocean (n)	محيط
decay (ed) (v)	يتحلل/يتعفن	pollute (d) (v)	يلوث
develop (ed) (v)	يطور	remote control (n)	جهاز التحكم عن بعد
drone (n)	طائرة بدون طيار	seed (n)	بذرة
environment-friendly (adj)	صديق للبيئة	suitcase (n)	حقيبة سفر
film (ed) (v/n)	يصور فيلمًا/فيلم	system (n)	نظام
filter (n)	فلتر (جهاز للتنقية)	trainers (n)	حذاء رياضى
forest (n)	غابة	volunteer (n)	متطوع
green (adj/n)	أخضر/نظيف للبيئة		

Additional Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

coral reefs (n)	شعاب مرجانية	irrigate (d) (v)	يروى
determine (ed) (v)	يحدد/يعقد العزم	location (n)	موقع
diary (n)	مذكرات/يوميات	organised (adj)	منظم
diving (n)	الغطس	recycling bin (n)	سلة القمامة
farmland (n)	أرض زراعية	share (d) (v)	يشارك
forever (adv)	إلى الأبد	text message (n)	رسالة نصية
forms (n)	أشكال/ أنواع	tools (n)	أدوات
invention (n)	اختراع	trip (n)	رحلة

Check Point

Choose and complete: suitcase – control – share – diary

1. A good driver can ..... his car well on busy streets.
2. She writes in her ..... every night before going to bed.
3. I packed my clothes in the ..... for the trip.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

complete	a form	يكمل استمارة	present	solutions	يقدم حلولًا
develop	an app	يطور تطبيق	make	deliveries	يوصل طلبات
have	a rest	يأخذ راحة		noise	يقوم بعمل ضوضاء
irrigate	the land	يروى الأرض	see	a play	يشاهد مسرحية

Prepositions — حروف الجر

according to	طبقًا لـ	in what ways	بأى الطرق
better for	أفضل لـ	leave for	يغادر لـ/يسافر إلى
connected to	متصل بـ	look after	يهتم/يعتنى بـ
drop onto	يُلقى على	take part in	يشارك فى
go on a trip	يذهب فى رحلة	work on a project	يعمل فى مشروع
take out	يُخرج	instead of	بدلًا من

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.	Present		Past simple	P.P.
meet	يقابل	met	met	lend	يسلف	lent	lent

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها	Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
busy	مشغول	free	حر/فارغ	simple	بسيط	complex	معقد
dirty	متسخ/قذر	clean	نظيف	suitable for	مناسب لـ	unsuitable	غير مناسب

Check Point

Choose and complete: lend – for – present – have – simple

1. My cousins will leave ..... Paris early in the morning. They'll travel at 6 am.
2. After a long day at work, he decided to ..... a rest on the sofa.
3. Can you ..... me a book to read over the weekend?
4. "Complex" is the opposite of ..... .

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر وتصريفات الأفعال والكلمات وعكسها.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 **see/watch/hear + obj.** مفعول + **(inf. + ing/inf.)** ..... يرى/يشاهد/يسمع

- Deepika saw children **drinking/drink** water from a dirty canal.

2 **look forward to (n./inf. + ing)** يتطلع إلى

- I'm really looking forward to **our holidays!**
- Sara looks forward to **studying** medicine.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I'm looking forward ..... you next week.

a) meet **b)** meeting **c)** to meet **d)** to meeting

2 They saw their grandfather ..... flowers in the garden yesterday.

a) to planting **b)** planting **c)** to plant **d)** planted

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Definitions التعريفات

bacteria بكتيريا	microorganisms that are everywhere but are too small to see and can make you ill
chemicals مواد كيميائية	things you can make in chemistry
filters الفلاتر	tools that take things out of liquids such as water
green نظيف للبيئة	good for the environment
location موقع	the place or position of a particular area of land
system نظام	an organised way of doing something

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning) مرادفها
suitable مناسب	appropriate مناسب/ملائم
look after يعتنى بـ	care about يهتم بـ

Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
invent (v) يخترع	-ion	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	invention (n) اختراع
suit (v) يناسب	-able	تحويل الفعل إلى صفة	suitable (adj) مناسب

Similar Spelling - Different Meaning

Word الكلمة	Similar word الكلمة المشابهة
bin سلة القمامة	pin دبوس
conservation الحفاظ على	conversation محادثة
diary مذكرات/يوميات	dairy ألبان

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

B Reading & Listening Skills

Listening Text

Lesson 3

Pre-listening question:

- Do you think there is a solution to the problem of air pollution? Why/ Why not?

Listen to a science teacher talking about drones and check your answers to Exercise 1. *SB Page 48*

Scientist Drones[1] can fly, but they don't need a person to fly them: we can use remote control[2]. This means we can control[3] drones from the ground. In the future, drones are going to help solve some environmental problems.

(1) طائرات بدون طيار
(2) جهاز التحكم عن بعد
(3) يتحكم فى
(4) البيئة
(5) فيضانات



Boy Really? How can we do that?

Scientist Well, companies are going to use drones a lot instead of lorries to make deliveries. This is going to help the environment[4] because drones don't make much noise and they don't cause as much air pollution as lorries.



Boy That's interesting.

Scientist Yes, and we are also going to use drones to help wildlife. Drones can fly over places where people can't go. We can see if there are any problems. For example, we can use drones to help save wildlife after floods[5] or fires.

Boy Can they help people, too?

Scientist Of course! We can send drones to dangerous places. For example, we are starting to use drones to check wind turbines. This is not an easy job. Wind energy is much better for the environment and makes less pollution. We can even use drones to plant trees. Drones can drop seeds onto the ground in places that people can't go to. And they don't need to stop and have a rest!

Post-listening question: - How do you think drones will help us?

Lesson 3

Read the letter and text message about a school trip to Ras Mohammad. Use a dictionary if you don't know the meaning of a word. SB Page 49

Dear parents



The bus will be leaving for Ras Mohammad from the school tomorrow at 6.30 am and returning in five days' time at 12.30 pm on Thursday 11th June.

Please make sure that your daughter has suitable clothes for the swimming and diving trips to the coral reefs(1) on Monday and Tuesday. They will also need good trainers(2) and a sunhat(3) for the visit to the mangrove(4) forest on Wednesday. We will be taking part in the conservation project(5) in the mangrove forest and helping to plant new trees.

online

Hi, Laila

We aren't sharing a room.

Mrs Nagwa says that the older students have to help look after the younger girls. Can we meet at the school gates tomorrow morning at 6 am? I need to give you the trainers I'm lending(6) you so that you can put them in your suitcase(7).

Habiba

(1) شعاب مرجانية
(2) أحذية رياضية
(3) قبعة شمس
(4) شجرة المنجروف
(5) مشروع الحفاظ على البيئة
(6) يسلف
(7) حقيبة سفر

Listen and complete Khaled's diary.

Listening Text

Lesson 4

WB Page 102



Khaled It's 12 o'clock on Saturday, but I'm going to be busy for the next few days. So, what am I doing? This evening, I'm going to the theatre to see a play. Then tomorrow, I'm playing basketball in the park. The day after tomorrow, I'm helping my uncle in his shop after school. Then, next Saturday, we're taking my cousins to the desert. That should be fun. But I'm really looking forward to our holidays! We're flying to Greece, but that's in nine days' time. I can't wait!

Read the article and check your answers to Exercise 1.

Lesson 4

SB page 50

Fantastic green inventions by teenagers

Green inventions are environment-friendly[1]. These inventions present solutions to environmental problems without damaging the environment.

Boyan Slat was a student in Holland when he invented a system to take plastic rubbish from the sea. There is a lot of plastic in our seas, which kills[2] lots of wildlife[3]. Boyan's system is called Ocean Cleanup Array[4].

It uses machines whose arms have lots of filters[5] on them. These filters take the plastic out of the sea water, without[6] hurting sea life.

Deepika Kurup was 14 when she invented a green system for cleaning water and making it safe for people to drink.

When she visited her grandparents in India, Deepika saw children drinking water from a dirty canal[7]. Before this, systems for cleaning water were expensive and used dangerous chemicals[8] which pollute[9] the environment. Deepika's system is cheap and uses light from the sun to kill bacteria[10] in water.



Five Egyptian students from STEM Schools were able to develop an app to help small farmers save water and energy. In this app, farmers complete a simple form with information about their farmlands. This form is connected to a smart app which tells farmers the right amount of water that they need to irrigate their lands. The app also determines the amount of energy and the number of workers the lands need, according to their location and the season.

(1) صديق للبيئة
(2) يقتل
(3) الحياة البرية
(4) مجموعة تنظيف المحيط
(5) فلاتر (أجهزة للتنقية)
(6) بدون
(7) قناة
(8) مواد كيميائية
(9) يلوث
(10) بكتيريا

Comprehension Skills

Give a title: وضع عنوان:

When you give a title to something like a book, article or story, you usually capitalise the important words. But, you don't need to capitalise small words like "the", "a" or "of" unless they are the first words of the title.

عندما تقوم بإعطاء عنوان لشىء مثل كتاب أو مقال أو قصة، عادة ما تكون الكلمات الرئيسية مبنية بحروف كبيرة ولكن لا نضع للكلمات الصغيرة مثل the/a/of حروفًا كبيرة إلا إذا كانت هى الكلمات الأولى فى العنوان.

Example: Give another title to the previous passage.

Answer: Saving the Environment

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Volunteers are working on a ..... project to save the Egyptian tortoises. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤

   a) conservation **b)** control **c)** forest **d)** garden

2. Don't drink water from a canal because it can be full of dangerous ..... . الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٤

   a) tortoises **b)** animals **c)** bacteria **d)** drones

3. People sometimes use a ..... to film animals from the sky. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤

   a) rock **b)** panel **c)** filter **d)** drone

4. Green inventions are environment ..... . الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٤

   a) friend **b)** friendly **c)** friendship **d)** friends

5. The charity needs some ..... like you. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤

   a) vans **b)** fans **c)** volunteers **d)** thieves

6. A lot of animals live in the ..... forests next to the sea. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢

   a) mangrove **b)** drone **c)** gloves **d)** mountains

7. It's easy now to change the TV channels using a ..... control. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣

   a) fast **b)** remote **c)** low **d)** tall

8. The Red Sea is full of colourful ..... . الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢

   a) pets **b)** canals **c)** deserts **d)** coral reefs

9. I think that your light clothes aren't ..... for this cold weather. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢

   a) ready **b)** safe **c)** dangerous **d)** suitable

10. Farmers use canals to ..... their farmland.

    a) control **b)** irrigate **c)** pollute **d)** damage

11. If you leave food out for too long, it will ..... and become bad.

    a) complete **b)** disappear **c)** decay **d)** develop

12. Sarah will ..... in the school play.

    a) work on **b)** take out **c)** take place **d)** take part

13. Nader uses his bicycle to ..... deliveries for the local restaurant.

    a) make **b)** develop **c)** complete **d)** do

14. A ..... is an organised way of doing something.

    a) location **b)** filter **c)** tool **d)** system

15. Scientists try to ..... solutions to our problems.

    a) catch **b)** present **c)** irrigate **d)** complete

16. The new restaurant's ..... is downtown, near the park.

    a) invention **b)** filter **c)** location **d)** system

C Language

The present continuous tense زمن المضارع المستمر

e.g. - I'm visiting the dentist at half past four next Thursday.

Usage الاستخدام

We use the present continuous for future plans and arrangements, often with a time and date.

نستخدم المضارع المستمر للخطط والترتيبات المستقبلية، غالبًا مع الوقت والتاريخ (الشيء المرتب له مسبقًا).

e.g.
- On Sunday, Omar is meeting his friends.
- We're catching a train to Tanta at 5 tomorrow.

Form التكوين

Affirmative & Negative الإثبات والنفى

I	am/ am not	+ inf. مصدر الفعل + ing
He, She, It, اسم مفرد	is/ isn't	
We, They, You, اسم جمع	are/ aren't	

e.g.
- I am having a picnic in the park this weekend. **It's arranged.**
- Mum isn't making cookies today; **we have enough snacks.**
- Sally and Hend are flying to Paris on **Tuesday evening.**

Question السؤال

① Yes/No question السؤال بهل

Am/Is/Are + subject الفاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل + ing ...?

e.g. Is your cousin studying Japanese at the university next year?

Subject الفاعل: I, he, she, it, we, they, you اسم مفرد/ اسم جمع

② Wh- question السؤال بأداة استفهام

Q. Word أداة الاستفهام + am/is/are + subject الفاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل + ing ...?

e.g. What are you doing this afternoon?

Got it ?

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

– They ..... (have) a barbecue at the weekend. They have arranged everything.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (are having) لوجود arranged الدالة على أن الحدث تم الترتيب له مسبقا.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mona ..... her flat tonight. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٤

a) is cleaned **b)** clean **c)** was cleaned **d)** is cleaning

2. I ..... part in the race next month. I'm very ill.

a) going to take **b)** not going to take **c)** am taking **d)** am not taking

3. What ..... they doing in their room?

a) are **b)** do **c)** have **d)** did

4. I'm sorry. We can't come at 10 o'clock. We ..... a vet because of our cat. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

a) meet **b)** met **c)** going to meet **d)** are meeting

5. My friends and I ..... a party on Friday night. Would you like to come?

a) having **b)** has **c)** are having **d)** going to have

6. I ..... my cousins tomorrow; we have arranged everything.

a) saw **b)** see **c)** am seeing **d)** was going to see

7. Where ..... travelling next summer?

a) we will **b)** will we **c)** are we **d)** we are

8. My cousins ..... to France for a holiday next month. They've got the plane tickets!

a) are flying **b)** will fly **c)** going to fly **d)** fly

9. I ..... a book before bedtime tonight.

a) going to read **b)** reads **c)** reading **d)** am reading

10. Our class ..... a museum next week. Our teacher has booked a bus!

a) visit **b)** will visit **c)** was visiting **d)** is visiting

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. She ..... (watch) a video of people playing tennis at present. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
2. I've arranged it. I ..... (visit) my uncle next Friday. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
3. I look forward to ..... (sees) you. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
4. ..... (you/doing) anything on Saturday morning?
5. Sara and Omar ..... (not) visiting their parents this holiday.
6. Baher is ..... (move) to Jordan later this month. He has got a job there.

D Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.



Write it right

1. How to write about environmental problems

كيفية الكتابة عن المشاكل البيئية

Example

"Environmental problems"

The environment is the place where we all live, but there are some problems that damage life on our planet, the Earth. The main problems are pollution and global warming, which cause climate change. Our daily activities harm تؤذى the environment. We can use technology to solve some of these problems. For example, when we use electric cars, air pollution will be reduced because these cars don't pollute the environment. Water pollution is also a serious problem. In the future, we may use a system that can filter water to make it clean and kill bacteria in it. Furthermore, we can recycle most of our rubbish that damages the environment.

2. How to write about holidays

كيفية الكتابة عن الإجازات

Example

To : batool@gmail.com **From** : basmala@gmail.com

Subject : A fantastic holiday

Dear Batool,

Greetings! How are you and your family? I hope you are in good health. I'm very happy to write this email to you. I'm excited to tell you about my fantastic holiday. I had a great time. I had an amazing holiday in Siwa, where there are wonderful places to visit. I saw the strange ruins of the Shali Fortress. I walked along the sandy road. I finished my day by taking a dive at Cleopatra's Pool. I didn't forget to buy some souvenirs on my way. I also visited the Siwa House Museum. I'm looking forward to seeing you. Best wishes.

Yours, Basmala

1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

أسوان ٢٠٢٤

Drones can fly, but they don't need a person to fly them. We can use remote control to control them from the ground. In the future, drones are going to help find a solution to some environmental problems. Some companies are going to use drones instead of lorries to make deliveries. This helps the environment because drones don't cause as much air pollution as lorries.

Drones help us see if there are any problems in ***faraway*** places. For example, we can use drones to save wildlife after floods or fires in remote places. In addition, **they** can help people by sending them to dangerous places like checking wind turbines. This is not an easy job. We can even use drones to plant trees. They can drop seeds in places where people can't go. What a smart invention!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Drones are ..... than lorries for the environment.
   a) shorter **b)** hotter **c)** better **d)** worse
2. The opposite of the word "***faraway***" is ..... .
   a) nearby **b)** traditional **c)** remote **d)** control

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Give a suitable title to the passage. .....
4. What does the underlined pronoun "**they**" refer to? .....
5. Do you think that drones are useful? .....
6. How can drones help wildlife in remote places? .....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The drone is a great ..... . الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
   a) invitation **b)** translation **c)** invention **d)** introduction
2. Tools that take things out of liquids are ..... . الجيزة ٢٠٢٢
   a) systems **b)** bacteria **c)** chemicals **d)** filters
3. Teachers decided to ..... the school play for everyone to watch later.
   a) film **b)** drop **c)** do **d)** pollute
4. I put the empty soda can in the recycling ..... .
   a) system **b)** bin **c)** drone **d)** text
5. Fatma has to ..... a form to get the job.
   a) make **b)** fill **c)** complete **d)** develop
6. I love ..... because I'm good at swimming under the water. البحيرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) driving **b)** zip-lining **c)** diving **d)** trekking

7. He ..... tennis this afternoon. He's sick.

a) wouldn't play **b)** would play **c)** isn't playing **d)** is playing

8. Why ..... to the zoo tomorrow?

a) you are going **b)** aren't you going **c)** you aren't gone **d)** not going

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We ..... (have) a party next Friday. Everything is arranged. القليوبية ٢٠٢٤

2. I'm looking forward ..... (to pass) the exam. دمياط ٢٠٢٤

3. ..... (Does) Adel and Marwan playing basketball this afternoon?

4. Maher ..... (fly) to London. He's got his ticket. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

5. My cousins ..... (going/arrive) at 11 a.m. tomorrow.

4 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Environmental problems"

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

1. They wanted to ..... Egypt to ..... Paris to spend their holiday there.

a) leave for/leave **b)** leave/leave for

c) leave/leave **d)** leave for/leave for

2. The ..... ordered the player to put on the best ..... .

a) trainer/trainer **b)** trainer's/trainers

c) trainers/trainer **d)** trainer/trainers

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We are doing an experiment and ..... (take) some notes.

2. **A:** Why are you carrying your laptop? **B:** I ..... (do) some homework.

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك فى كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

QUESTION	1	2	3	4
TACKLES	Comprehension	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
MARK				

STUDY Lessons 5 & 6

Watch a video

SB pages 51&52 | WB pages 104&105

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

bird watching (n)	مشاهدة الطيور	rock climbing (n)	تسلق الصخور
bungee jumping (n)	القفز بالمطاط	ruins (n)	أطلال
dates (n)	بلح	salt lake (n)	بحيرة مالحة
fortress (n)	قلعة/حصن	sandboarding (n)	التزلج على الرمال
horse riding (n)	ركوب الخيل	snorkelling (n)	السباحة بأنبوبة تنفس
hot-air ballooning (n)	ركوب منطاد الهواء الساخن	star gazing (n)	النظر للنجوم
postcard (n)	بطاقة بريدية	temple (n)	معبد

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

actually (adv)	فى الواقع/حقًا	guess (ed) (v)	يخمن
beginner (n)	مبتدئ	hotel (n)	فندق
fishing (n)	صيد السمك	sunset (n)	غروب الشمس
fresh (adj)	طازج	towel (n)	منشفة/فوطة

Check Point

Choose and complete: temple – dates – postcards – towel

1. My favourite dessert is a simple dish of ..... .
2. After showering, I use a soft ..... to dry off.
3. When I was in Luxor, I sent ..... to my best friends.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

get	> cold/ bored	يشعر بالبرد/بالملل	make	> arrangements	يتخذ ترتيبات
have	> a picnic	يقوم بنزهة خلوية	one last thing		شىء واحد أخير
miss	> a lesson	يفوت حصة	the day before yesterday		أول أمس
make	> dinner	يعد العشاء			

Prepositions — حروف الجر

arrive at	يصل إلى	help with	يساعد فى
at the same time	فى نفس الوقت	scary to	مخيف لـ
by the water	بجوار الماء	stay on the boat	يبقى على القارب
for breakfast	على الإفطار	walk towards	يمشى تجاه

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
afraid	خائف	brave	شجاع
bored	يشعر بالملل	excited	متحمس
exciting	مثير/شيق	boring	ممل
positive	إيجابى	negative	سلبى

Check Point

Choose and complete: to – have – on – get

1. We decided to ..... a picnic by the water and enjoy the view of the lake.
2. It's scary ..... me to stay alone in the dark.
3. I often ..... bored during long car rides.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر والكلمات وعكسها.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

go + activities with (ing) يذهب لـ

- go (snorkelling – rock climbing – horse riding, etc.)
- I like to go **sandboarding**.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ

Words and Synonyms

الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
afraid	خائف	frightened	خائف

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
actual (adj)	واقعى	-ly		تحويل الصفة إلى حال		actually (adv)	فى الواقع
begin (v)	يبدأ	-er		تحويل الفعل إلى اسم فاعل		beginner (n)	مبتدئ

B Reading & Listening Skills

Listening Text

Lesson 5

Pre-listening question:

- Which activity would you like to try when you go to the desert?

Listen to three teenagers making arrangements. Which two of the activities from Exercise 1 do they talk about? *SB Page 51*

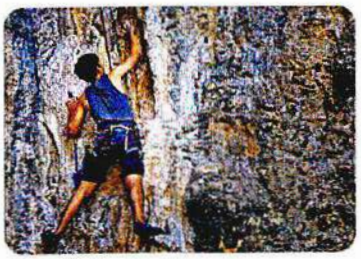
Kamal Hi Amir. What are you doing this afternoon? I'm going rock climbing (1). There is a special activity for beginners. Would you like to come?

(1) تسلق الصخور

(2) مخيف

(3) خائف

(4) النظر للنجوم



Amir I don't know. Rock climbing looks a bit scary (2) to me! Are you going, Nasser?

Nasser Yes! I've always wanted to learn rock climbing! Oh, come on, don't be afraid (3), Amir!



Amir Actually, I can't come this afternoon; I'm helping my father with something.

Kamal How about tomorrow afternoon instead? There's another rock climbing activity then at the same time.

Amir OK! I'll come. You're right. It might be fun. Also, I wanted to ask you something: are you and Nasser free this evening?

Nasser I think so. Why?

Amir Dad is going to take me star gazing (4) into the desert with my brother Ramy and Uncle Sami and he said I could invite you, too.

Kamal Thank you. We'd love to come, wouldn't we, Nasser? I'd love to go to the desert at night. Is your brother Ramy going?

Amir No, he doesn't want to. He thinks he'd get cold and bored!

Nasser Well, I think it sounds really exciting!

Amir Great! We're meeting outside my house at half past ten. See you then.

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمة التالية:

gazing /geɪzɪŋ/

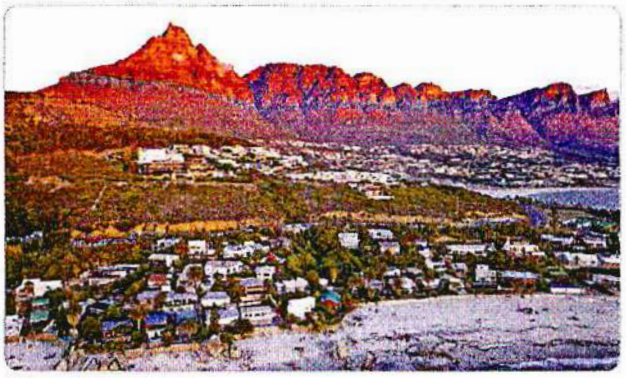
Post-listening question: - What's Amir's dad going to do?

Pre-reading question:

- Where would you like to spend your next holiday?

Read the postcard and answer the questions. SB Page 52

Dear Nahla,



I'm having a fantastic time with my family in Siwa. Today, we had a picnic on Fatanas Island (1). At the moment, I'm sitting by the water and watching the sunset. It's very beautiful.

We're staying with my parents' friends and they are very kind. When we arrived the day before yesterday, it was very late. They still wanted to get up and make us dinner, and they bring us fresh dates (2) for breakfast every day.

Yesterday morning, we visited Shali Fortress (3) and the Siwa museum. I've always wanted to go there. I learnt such a lot of history in one morning.

Tomorrow, we're going to visit the Siwa salt lake (4). I'm looking forward to visiting it. It sounds really interesting.

Lots of love

Heba

(1) جزيرة فطناس
(2) بلح طازج
(3) قلعة/ حصن
(4) بحيرة مالحة

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

Island /ˈaɪlənd/ fortress /fɔːrtrɪs/

Post-reading question:

- Make a list of all the places that people can visit in Siwa.

Lesson 6

Pre-reading question:

- What are you going to do in ten minutes' time?

Read Hamdi's email and circle the correct time expressions from Exercise 1.

WB page 105

Hi



Guess where I am? **At the moment**, I'm walking in the desert in the Nabq Nature Reserve. It's really interesting.

Yesterday, we visited the mountains. It was very hot! **The day before yesterday**, we went diving in the coral reefs at Shoura al Manquata. The fish were amazing. **Tomorrow**, we're going to visit Wadi Kid. I'm looking forward to seeing the beautiful birds that live there. We're coming home **in three days' time**.

What are you doing? Write to me and tell me your news.

Best wishes, **Hamdi**

Post-reading question: - What does Hamdi want to see at Wadi Kid?

Lesson 7

Write a reply to the text message in your notebook.

SB page 53

Hi

Are you busy? What are you doing this afternoon?

Please could you call me later because I need some help with the English homework! I had to go to the dentist, so I missed the last English lesson. What did you study in English class last week?

One last thing – are you free on Saturday morning?

I'm playing tennis in the park. Would you like to come?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I like star ..... at night. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) fishing **b)** climbing **c)** gazing **d)** collecting
2. ..... are the parts of a building that are left after the rest has been destroyed. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) Ruins **b)** Walls **c)** Blocks **d)** Roofs
3. Try ..... in the clear, blue sea. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) trekking **b)** snorkelling **c)** climbing **d)** running
4. Have you tried horse ..... before? الغربية ٢٠٢٢
   a) diving **b)** watching **c)** riding **d)** climbing
5. I like watching the ..... when the sun goes down.
   a) sunrise **b)** sunset **c)** dawn **d)** midday
6. We went bird ..... in the forest and saw several rare species.
   a) watching **b)** snorkelling **c)** gazing **d)** riding
7. Can you ..... what I'm holding behind my back?
   a) call **b)** guess **c)** get **d)** miss
8. We need to ..... arrangements for our trip to Spain.
   a) come **b)** stay **c)** make **d)** miss
9. As a/an ....., he needs some help from his teachers.
   a) activity **b)** reserve **c)** dentist **d)** beginner
10. Haidy likes to have eggs and toast ..... breakfast every day.
    a) of **b)** by **c)** on **d)** for
11. We will arrive ..... the airport at noon.
    a) at **b)** to **c)** in **d)** on
12. If you ..... a lesson, you can revise the notes online.
    a) get **b)** make **c)** miss **d)** come
13. We spent all afternoon ..... by the lake.
    a) climbing **b)** watching **c)** riding **d)** fishing
14. Samy enjoys spending his weekends rock ..... with friends in the mountains.
    a) watching **b)** climbing **c)** jumping **d)** gazing
15. After watching videos of people bungee ....., she decided to try it herself.
    a) fishing **b)** snorkelling **c)** sandboarding **d)** jumping
16. On the ..... side, most students were improved in English.
    a) boring **b)** excited **c)** negative **d)** positive

C Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.



Speaking

Suggestion and invitation

- **Would you like to** + inf.?
- **Why don't you** + inf.?
- **You could** + inf.
- **What about** + inf. + ing?

الاقتراح والدعوة

هل تود أن .....؟

لمَ لا .....؟

يمكنك ..... .

ماذا عن .....؟

Accepting:

- Yes, that/it might be fun.
- Great! Let's do that.
- Thanks, I'd love to.
- I think it sounds/looks really exciting!

قبول الاقتراح/الدعوة

سيكون هذا ممتعًا.

عظيم. هيا نفعل ذلك.

أشكرك. أود ذلك.

أعتقد أن هذا يبدو مثيرًا حقًا.

Refusing:

- I think I'd get cold and bored.
- It looks a bit scary to me!
- I'd love to do that, but ...

رفض الدعوة/الاقتراح

أعتقد بأننى سأشعر بالملل والبرد.

يبدو هذا مخيفًا لى!

أود فعل ذلك ولكن ....

Not sure:

- I don't know.
- I'm not sure.

عـدم التأكـد

أنا لا أعرف.

لست متأكدًا من ذلك.

Speaking Exercise



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

Rana and Mona suggest doing things.

Rana : I'm hungry. What about you?

Mona : (1)..... . Why don't we eat pizza?

Rana : (2)..... . Pizza is tasty.

Mona : (3).....?

Rana : We can meet in thirty minutes.

Mona : Would you like to do anything else?

Rana : (4)..... .

Mona : OK, the cinema isn't far from here.

Rana : (5).....?

Mona : The film is called *"The Lost Girl"*.

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 11 Lessons (5 & 6)

12

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Mohamed is asking Ali about drones. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤

Mohamed : What are you doing?
Ali : (1)..... .
Mohamed : What is the article about?
Ali : Drones!
Mohamed : Can they fly alone?
Ali : (2)..... .
Mohamed : Do they need a person to fly them?
Ali : (3)..... . We can use remote controls.
Mohamed : (4).....?
Ali : Yes, they are very useful.
Mohamed : (5).....?
Ali : We can use them for solving some environmental problems.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Some tourists like to visit the desert to try ..... .
   a) swimming **b)** snorkelling **c)** sandboarding **d)** diving
2. They took many pictures of statues at the ..... .
   a) dentist **b)** library **c)** hotel **d)** temple
3. Adel wasn't at school yesterday, so he ..... an English lesson.
   a) had **b)** won **c)** missed **d)** lost
4. The ..... was built on a high hill.
   a) lake **b)** port **c)** fortress **d)** airport
5. I ..... my uncle at the new restaurant tomorrow morning.
   a) am meeting **b)** meet **c)** meets **d)** going to meet
6. What ..... going to do on your holiday?
   a) are you **b)** you are **c)** will you **d)** you will

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. She ..... (going) buy fresh vegetables from the market.
2. Why don't you ..... (wearing) this nice scarf? البحيرة ٢٠٢٤
3. My brothers ..... (leave) for London tomorrow night.
4. It's 8.30! You ..... (miss) your train!

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك فى كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

QUESTION TACKLES MARK	1	2	3
	Speaking	Vocabulary	Language

Al-Adwaa Test On Unit 11

30

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

دمياط ٢٠٢٤

نص الاستماع
فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. Drones can ..... .

a) swim **b)** float

c) sink **d)** fly

2. We can use a ..... control to fly drones.

a) remoted **b)** remotes

c) remote **d)** remoting

3. We can control drones from the ..... .

a) ground **b)** sea

c) sky **d)** floor

4. In the future, drones are going to help solve ..... problems.

a) medical **b)** environmental

c) health **d)** mental

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

Ayman is asking Rodina about her favourite activity.

Ayman : What's your favourite activity, Rodina?

Rodina : (1)..... .

Ayman : I like rock climbing, too but I think it's scary, isn't it?

Rodina : (2)..... .

Ayman : (3).....?

Rodina : Yes, I need special equipment to practise it.

Ayman : You should be careful while climbing.

Rodina : (4)..... .

Ayman : (5).....?

Rodina : OK, I'll take you with me next time.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions: الفيوم ٢٠٢٢

Dear Omar,

I'm having a great time with my family in Luxor. Today, we visited the Luxor Temple. It was amazing to see all the ancient statues. Right now, I'm sitting by the Nile River, watching the boats go by. The view is beautiful. We're staying at a small hotel near the temple. The people **here** are very friendly. When we arrived yesterday, they welcomed us with a special drink. It's very **tasty**. This morning, we went to the Karnak Temple. I learned a lot about ancient Egyptian history. The guide told us many interesting stories.

Tomorrow, we're going to take a boat trip on the Nile. I'm excited to see more of Luxor from the river. It sounds like a lot of fun.

Best wishes,
Amina

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Amina is having a great time with her family in ..... .
   a) Cairo **b)** Luxor **c)** Alexandria **d)** Aswan
2. Amina visited the ..... today.
   a) Pyramids **b)** Luxor Temple
   c) Egyptian Museum **d)** Valley of the Kings

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What type of text is this? .....
4. What does the underlined adverb "**here**" refer to? .....
5. What does the underlined word "**tasty**" mean? .....
6. What is the family planning to do tomorrow in Luxor? .....

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Rock climbing looks a bit ..... to me. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
   a) bored **b)** tired **c)** afraid **d)** scary
2. There is ..... at the top of that mountain. Look, it's all white! البحيرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) snow **b)** wind **c)** rain **d)** storm
3. There is much wildlife in the ..... .
   a) park **b)** field **c)** farm **d)** jungle

4. Drones can ..... seeds onto the ground in places that people can't go to.

a) irrigate **b)** develop **c)** drop **d)** film

5. Dad is going to take me star ..... into the desert.

a) riding **b)** gazing **c)** climbing **d)** ballooning

6. Mum brings us ..... dates for breakfast every day.

a) negative **b)** boring **c)** brave **d)** fresh

7. They ..... build a new shopping mall here. They planned to do so.

a) are going to **b)** going to **c)** will **d)** have

8. Grandma ..... me make a cake tomorrow. We've bought the ingredients.

a) will help **b)** helps **c)** is helping **d)** helping

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I ..... (sell) my old car. This is my intention. بورسعيد ٢٠٢٠
2. Retaj ..... (getting) married next month. She invited many people.
3. Where ..... (we are) going to have a picnic?
4. ..... (Will) your aunts coming to your house tomorrow?
5. Is Ahmed going ..... (join) us for lunch?

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Environmental problems"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك فى كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

QUESTION	1	2	3	4	5	6
TACKLES	Listening	Speaking	Reading	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
MARK						

Bubble Sheet Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Rabab and Hasnaa are talking about next summer holiday.

Rabab : What are you going to do next summer holiday?

Hasnaa : (1) ..... .

a) I am going to stay home **b)** I am going to travel to Aswan

c) I am going to travel to Alex **d)** I am going to travel to Luxor

Rabab : (2) .....?

a) How are you going to travel to Alex **b)** When are you going to travel to Alex

c) Why are you going to travel to Alex **d)** Who are you going to travel to Alex with

Hasnaa : I am going to travel to Alex by train.

Rabab : (3) .....?

a) How are you going to stay **b)** How long are you going to stay

c) How many are you going to stay **d)** Where are you going to stay

Hasnaa : We are going to stay for two weeks.

Rabab : Who are you going to travel with?

Hasnaa : (4) ..... .

a) At school **b)** At the club **c)** In a hotel **d)** My family

Rabab : Could you call me when you arrive there?

Hasnaa : (5) ..... .

a) You're joking **b)** Fantastic **c)** Of course **d)** That's terrible

2 Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d:

1. Salma ..... (going) bake a cake for the party.

a) going **b)** going to **c)** is going **d)** is going to

2. They are ..... (have) a picnic next Saturday.

a) having **b)** to having **c)** to have **d)** had

3. ..... (he/be) going to finish his homework soon?

a) He will **b)** Will he **c)** Is he **d)** He is

4. ..... (Do) they moving next week?

a) Will **b)** Are **c)** Would **d)** Must

5. The girl ..... (not) going to wear casual clothes at the party.

a) isn't **b)** doesn't **c)** won't **d)** hasn't

ANSWER HERE

Q 1	1 (a)(b)(c)(d)	2 (a)(b)(c)(d)	3 (a)(b)(c)(d)	4 (a)(b)(c)(d)	5 (a)(b)(c)(d)
Q 2	1 (a)(b)(c)(d)	2 (a)(b)(c)(d)	3 (a)(b)(c)(d)	4 (a)(b)(c)(d)	5 (a)(b)(c)(d)



Unit 12

LANGUAGES AND LEARNING

OBJECTIVES OF THE UNIT

Reading	A quiz about learning styles; an article about languages in Africa; an advert for a language school
Writing	An internet post giving advice; a study plan; an application form
Listening	A conversation about future plans; a radio interview about animal communication
Speaking	Talking about learning styles; a presentation about your studies; a discussion about study tips; giving advice, opinions and suggestions
Language	A review of tenses
Life Skills	Self-management; Communication skills; Critical thinking

WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات SB تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب

STUDY Lessons 1 & 2

Watch a video

SB pages 54 - 57 | WB pages 107 & 108

A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

diagram (n)	رسم توضيحى	learner (n)	المتعلِّم
directions (n)	اتجاهات	learning (n)	التعلُّم
discuss (ed) (v)	يناقش	manager (n)	مدير
experiment (n)	تجربة	secondary (n/adj)	ثانوى
free time (n)	وقت الفراغ	summarise (d) (v)	يلخص
instructions (n)	تعليمات	summary (n)	ملخص
laboratory = lab (n)	معمل	university (n)	الجامعة

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

American (adj)	أمريكى	menu (n)	قائمة طعام
castle (n)	قلعة	podcast (n)	بث صوتى/إذاعى
continue (d) (v)	يستمر	prefer (red) (v)	يفضل
English grammar (n)	قواعد اللغة الإنجليزية	remember (ed) (v)	يتذكر
explain (ed) (v)	يشرح	studies (n)	دراسات
follow (ed) (v)	يتبع	TV show (n)	برنامج تلفزيونى
laugh (ed) (v)	يضحك	visitor (n)	زائر

Check Point

Choose and complete: university – podcast – laboratory – summarise

1. Could you please ..... the main points of the meeting?
2. When students finish school, they go to the ..... .
3. She listens to a new ..... about science every morning.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

achieve	a dream	يحقق حلمًا	make	a video	يصنع مقطع فيديو
do	an experiment	يقوم بعمل تجربة	practise	a language	يمارس لغة
	research	يقوم ببحث	take	an exam	يأخذ امتحانًا
give	a presentation	يقدم عرضًا تقديميًا	write	a blog	يكتب مدونة
learn	best	يتعلم أفضل			

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

(n) = noun | (adj) = adjective | (prep) = preposition
(v) = verb | (adv) = adverb | (conj) = conjunction

Prepositions — حروف الجر

agree with	يتفق مع	look in a dictionary	يبحث فى القاموس
ask for	يطلب	make up	يؤلف
cut down	يقطع	proud of	فخور (بـ)
disappointed about ...	محبط بشأن ...	work out	يستنتج/يستنبط
find out	يكتشف	write down	يدون

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
fly يطير	flew	flown	understand يفهم	understood	understood
spell يتهجى	spelt	spelt	write يكتب	wrote	written

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym) عكسها	Word الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym) عكسها
pass ينجح فى	fail يفشل فى	regular منتظم	irregular غير منتظم

Check Point

Choose and complete: achieved – up – pass – spell – out

1. Menna likes to make ..... stories for her children at bedtime.
2. They finally ..... their dream of opening their own restaurant.
3. Can you ..... your last name for me, please?
4. The opposite of "fail" is "..... ".

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر وتصريفات الأفعال والكلمات وعكسها.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 busy + (inf. + ing) — مشغول بـ

- You are always **busy** making and repairing things.

2 by (inf. + ing) — بواسطة/عن طريق

- You learn best **by** reading and writing.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning) مرادفها
continue يستمر	go on يستمر
find out يكتشف	discover يكتشف

Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
instruct (v) يأمر	-ion	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	instruction (n) تعليمات
manage (v) يدير	-er	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم فاعل	manager (n) مدير

Similar Spelling - Different Meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
advice	نصيحة	advise	ينصح
practice	ممارسة/تدريب	practise	يمارس/يتدرب

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 1

Pre-reading question:

- Do you prefer the same way of learning all the time?

What type of learner are you? Take the quiz to find out! SB page 54

1. Which of these things do you prefer to do in your free time?



a) Read a book. **b)** Watch a film or TV show.
c) Play a video game. **d)** Listen to music.

2. If you want to learn how to play a new sport, what do you do?



a) Read online about how to play it.
b) Watch a video of people playing it.
c) Start playing and learn as you play.
d) Ask for advice from someone who can play it.

3. You need to tell your class about a new English book. What would you prefer to do?



a) Write a review of it.
b) Make a short video about it.
c) Act some of the book with friends.
d) Read some of the book to your class.

4. Someone asks you for directions (1). What do you do?



a) Write down instructions (2).
b) Draw a map.
c) Use your hands and body to explain (3).
d) Tell them where to go.

(1) اتجاهات
(2) تعليمات
(3) يشرح

5. If you don't know how to spell a word, what do you do?



a) Look in a dictionary.
b) Try to work out how to spell it.
c) Write it down to see if it looks right.
d) Say the word slowly to hear the sounds.

Count how many of each letter you chose in the quiz. Then read about your result. SB page 55



I chose mostly a:

You learn best by reading and writing.

You like reading books or writing stories. You love words and learn best by reading about something and taking notes.

I chose mostly b:

You learn best by seeing things.

You love to watch videos and look at diagrams(1). You love films and art. You learn things better if you can see them.

(1) رسم توضيحى

(2) يصلح

I chose mostly c:

You learn best by doing things.

You are always busy making and repairing(2) things. You learn things best by trying to do them and sometimes find it hard to understand by listening or reading.

I chose mostly d:

You learn by listening.

You love music and are often talking! You find it easier to learn by listening to people explain things to you and by discussing things with them.

Comprehension Skills

- How to guess the meaning of a word: كيفية تخمين معنى كلمة:

1. Read the passage well. اقرأ القطعة جيدًا.
2. **Look for Clues:** Point to words around the unfamiliar word that might help understand its meaning.

ابحث عن دليل يساعدك لفهم الكلمة - اقرأ الكلمات حول الكلمة غير المألوفة لتحاول فهم المعنى يمكن أن تجد كلمات مشابهة للمعنى.

3. **Make a Guess:** حاول تخمين معنى الكلمة فى النص:

Example: - You love to watch videos and look at diagrams.

What does the underlined word "diagram" mean?

بعد القراءة جيدًا نستنتج أنها تعنى:

- The underlined word "diagram" means a drawing or a chart that makes things easier.

Pre-reading question: - What are the four types of learners?

What sort of learners are the following? Choose the correct words.

WB page 107



1. Habiba likes summarising (1) a text. For example, if a text is 100 words long, she writes a summary (2) in about 15–20 words.
Habiba learns best by writing.

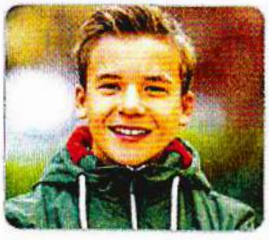
(1) يلخص
(2) ملخص
(3) قواعد اللغة الإنجليزية
(4) تجربة علمية
(5) معمل



2. Fares remembers things easily. I showed him a map of how to walk to my house yesterday. He says he can see the map in his head today!
Fares learns by seeing things.



3. For Dareen, the best way to remember English grammar (3) is to make up a song about it! Then she sings the song quietly to herself. She says it is a great way to remember irregular verbs!
Dareen learns best by listening.



4. Marwan finds it difficult to understand science books, but when he does an experiment (4) in the laboratory (5), he always understands what is happening!
Marwan learns best by doing things.

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

experiment /ɪksperəmənt/ laboratory /lə'bɒrətri/

Post-reading questions:

1. What type of learner is Dareen?
2. In which type of learning do people do experiments?

Pre-listening question:

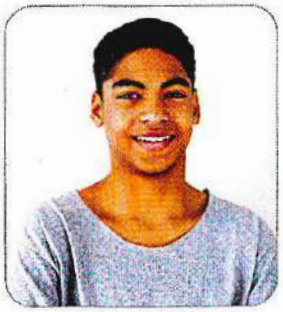
Listening Text

Lesson 2

- What do you want to be when you grow up?

Listen to Fares and Nevine talking about their future plans. What jobs do they hope to do?

SB page 56



Fares My name's Fares. When I was young, I didn't use to like studying. But, one day, I failed (1) an exam. My father was disappointed (2). He said that one day he wanted me to be the manager (3) of our family shop. He explained (4) about all the skills (5) that I needed to work there: maths, reading, writing and English. Now I'm working hard to pass (6) my exams so I can make my family proud (7). Next year, I'm starting secondary (8) school and I'll continue (9) to study hard!

Nevine When I was nine, I was playing with my sister when I fell and hurt my arm. The doctor at the hospital was so clever and kind, so I decided I wanted to be a doctor too! I know it will be hard to achieve (10) my dream. I need to go to university (11) and pass lots of exams.

My uncle lives in the USA, so I'm going to study there when I'm older, and then I want to come back to Egypt and work in a hospital.

(1) يرسب
(2) محبط
(3) مدير
(4) شرح
(5) مهارات
(6) يجتاز/ينجح
(7) فخور
(8) ثانوى
(9) يستمر
(10) يحقق
(11) الجامعة



Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

secondary /ˈsekəndəri/ university /juːnɪvɜːrsɪti/

Post-listening question:

- What skills do you need to get a good job?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When Omar got the full marks in English, he was ..... . القليوبية ٢٠٢٤
   a) careless b) proud c) unhappy d) disappointed
2. I ..... that the clever jacket won't be useful in Egypt. We don't need it. القليوبية ٢٠٢٤
   a) agree b) disagree c) waste d) spend
3. The pupils are doing a/an ..... in the laboratory. سوهاج ٢٠٢٢
   a) experiment b) play c) experience d) exercise
4. You should write ..... instructions on a piece of paper. أسيوط ٢٠٢٤
   a) of b) down c) up d) in
5. I feel proud to ..... my dream.
   a) fail b) do c) lose d) achieve
6. If you don't know a word, look it up in a ..... . أسوان ٢٠٢٤
   a) dictionary b) project c) photograph d) presentation
7. I learn by watching videos and looking at ..... . الدقهلية ٢٠٢٤
   a) diagrams b) views c) germs d) robes
8. The ..... of this restaurant includes a lot of international dishes.
   a) map b) ingredient c) menu d) castle
9. I asked my teacher to ..... the reasons for pollution. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٤
   a) explain b) have c) protect d) paint
10. The ..... had a meeting to discuss the new project.
    a) manager b) laboratory c) instructions d) summary
11. Hany is an active ..... . He asked many questions during the class.
    a) worker b) player c) learner d) actor
12. She followed the ..... carefully to start the machine.
    a) maps b) studies c) instructions d) skills
13. The park attracts many ..... during the summer months.
    a) learners b) visitors c) managers d) instructions
14. If you get lost, you should ask someone for ..... . القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
    a) directions b) direct c) money d) food
15. Manal stayed extra time at university to ..... research.
    a) play b) try c) do d) make
16. We go to the ..... in science lessons. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
    a) library b) factory c) workshop d) laboratory

C Language

Tenses (present, past and future)

الأزمنة (مضارع - ماضٍ - مستقبل)

1 Present tenses

أزمنة المضارع

A Present simple

المضارع البسيط

Usage & Form الاستخدام والتكوين

يستخدم للتعبير عن العادات المستمرة فى الحاضر وعن الحقائق الثابتة.

I, You, We, They, اسم جمع + inf. مصدر الفعل / don't + inf. مصدر الفعل

He, She, It, اسم مفرد + inf. مصدر الفعل + s, es, ies / doesn't + inf. مصدر الفعل

Do/ Does + subject الفاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل?

e.g. I study English on Fridays.
- We don't go to school on Fridays.
- Do Marwan and Yehia **play** tennis?
- My uncle lives in the USA.
- She doesn't like meat.
- Does the cat **need** milk?

B Present continuous

المضارع المستمر

Usage & Form الاستخدام والتكوين

يستخدم للتعبير عن شىء يحدث الآن أثناء الكلام ويستمر لفترة.

I > am/am not

He, She, It, اسم مفرد > is/isn't

You, We, They, اسم جمع > are/aren't

> inf. مصدر الفعل + ing

Am/ Is/ Are + subject الفاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل + ing?

e.g. I'm emailing him **today.** I **am not talking** on the phone.
- Hamsa is doing her homework **now.** She **isn't watching** TV.
- They are playing football **at the moment.** They **aren't having** lunch.
- Is he **studying** French?
- Are you **enjoying** your time?

Got it ? تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 My friends and I ..... (go) to the club at the moment.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (are going) لأن الجملة فى زمن المضارع المستمر لوجود at the moment والفاعل جمع.

2 Hend ..... (prepare) dinner to her family at the weekends.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (prepares) لأن الجملة تدل على عادة فى الوقت الحاضر.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises (1)

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Noha ..... her homework now.
   a) does b) did c) is doing d) was doing
2. The train ..... at 9:00 am.
   a) arrive b) arrives c) arriving d) was arriving
3. ..... they building a new house next month?
   a) Would b) Will c) Do d) Are
4. Adel and Nader ..... French at school. They study English.
   a) are studying b) is studying c) don't study d) doesn't study
5. I'm not ..... to the party tonight.
   a) go b) going c) went d) gone
6. Does Ghada ..... the bus to work?
   a) take b) takes c) taking d) taken
7. Be quiet. The baby ..... .
   a) sleep b) sleeps c) sleeping d) is sleeping
8. What are the children ..... now?
   a) play b) playing c) played d) plays
9. The students ..... studying for the test. They are wasting their time.
   a) aren't b) are c) will d) won't
10. ..... it snow in summer?
    a) Do b) Does c) Will d) Is

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The sun ..... (be) bigger than the Earth.
2. My daughters ..... (read) a book right now.
3. I ..... (not/wearing) my glasses today.
4. ..... (Do) Nancy going to the beach tomorrow?
5. Why does he always ..... (arrives) late?
6. We ..... (doesn't) eat meat every day.

2 Past tenses أزمنة الماضى

A Past simple الماضى البسيط

Usage & Form الاستخدام والتكوين

يستخدم للتعبير عن شىء حدث فى الماضى وانتهى وليس له أثر فى الحاضر ومع سرد أحداث ماضية.

Subject الفاعل + التصريف الثانى للفعل / didn't + inf. مصدر الفعل

Did + subject الفاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل?

e.g. She visited her aunt last weekend. She didn't go to the club.

Did she visit her aunt last weekend?

يستخدم مع العادات التى كانت تحدث فى الماضى فقط.

e.g. I usually played football when I was young. I didn't study French when I was young.

B Used to اعتاد أن (فى الماضى)

تستخدم للتعبير عن عادة فى الماضى.

Usage & Form الاستخدام والتكوين

Subject الفاعل + used to / didn't use to + inf. مصدر الفعل

Did + subject الفاعل + use to + inf. مصدر الفعل?

e.g. I used to like basketball. I didn't use to like tennis!

Did you use to like basketball?

C Past continuous الماضى المستمر

Usage & Form الاستخدام والتكوين

يستخدم للتعبير عن شىء حدث فى الماضى واستمر لفترة فى الماضى/شىء حدث فى وقت محدد فى الماضى.

I, He, She, It, اسم مفرد > was/wasn't

You, We, They, اسم جمع > were/weren't

> inf. مصدر الفعل + ing

Was/Were + subject الفاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل + ing?

e.g. The boys were playing all day yesterday. I wasn't studying yesterday evening.

Was it raining at 12 last night?

لاحظ استخدام When/ While مع أزمنة الماضى:

حدثان فى الماضى أحدهما كان مستمرًا (ماضٍ مستمر) عندما جاء حدث آخر وقطعة (أثَّر فيه) (ماضٍ بسيط).

When + subject الفاعل + past simple ماضٍ بسيط , subject الفاعل + past continuous ماضٍ مستمر

While + subject الفاعل + past continuous ماضٍ مستمر , subject الفاعل + past simple ماضٍ بسيط

e.g. When it started to rain, I was playing tennis with my sister.

While I was playing tennis with my sister, it started to rain.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises (2)

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. While I was walking, I ..... my friend.
   a) meets b) meeting c) met d) will meet
2. Samira ..... live in Paris before she moved to London.
   a) will b) has to c) used to d) uses to
3. I ..... to the party last Friday.
   a) don't go b) didn't go c) am not going d) won't go
4. We ..... for our exams all night yesterday.
   a) were studying b) are studying c) studied d) study
5. ..... your grandparents use to live in the countryside?
   a) Will b) Are c) Do d) Did
6. What ..... at 8 o'clock last night?
   a) were you doing b) you were doing c) are you doing d) you are doing
7. She wasn't ..... well during the party.
   a) feel b) felt c) feels d) feeling
8. Omar and Ramy ..... trekking in the mountains three weeks ago.
   a) went b) gone c) going d) go
9. What did she ..... for breakfast this morning?
   a) eating b) ate c) eat d) eats
10. She ..... dinner while I was watching TV.
    a) cooks b) was cooking c) cooking d) cooked

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My little sister ..... (swim) in the swimming pool last week.
2. ..... (Do) you use to have a pet when you were a child?
3. I ..... (read) a book yesterday evening.
4. I used ..... (play) football every weekend when I was younger.
5. He was driving to work when the accident ..... (happen).
6. We ..... (not/use) have smartphones when we were kids.

3 Future tenses أزمنة المستقبل

A Will

Usage & Form الاستخدام والتكوين

عمل تنبؤات فى المستقبل (بدون دليل).

Subject الفاعل + will ('ll)/won't + inf. مصدر الفعل

Will + subject الفاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل?

e.g. I think it will be hot tomorrow. Will they travel to Alex next Friday?

للتعبير عن القدرة فى المستقبل (سوف يكون قادرًا على).

Subject الفاعل + will (won't) be able to + inf. مصدر الفعل

e.g. If my mother has more free time, we'll be able to go out.

لاحظ استخدام if مع will:

If/When + subject الفاعل + present simple مضارع بسيط , subject الفاعل + will/won't + inf. مصدر الفعل

e.g. If everyone shops online, the shops in our towns and cities will close.

B (Be) going to

Usage & Form الاستخدام والتكوين

للتعبير عن نية أو قصدٍ لفعل شىء فى المستقبل تم التخطيط له.

لعمل تنبؤات فى المستقبل بناءً على ما يمكننا رؤيته أو معرفته (تنبؤ بدليل).

I > am/am not

He, She, It, اسم مفرد > is/isn't > going to + inf. مصدر الفعل

You, We, They, اسم جمع > are/aren't

Am/ Is/ Are + subject الفاعل + going to + inf. مصدر الفعل?

e.g. I am going to spend the weekend in my village as planned. (خطة)

I can see some dark clouds. It is going to rain. (تنبؤ بدليل)

C Present continuous المضارع المستمر

Usage الاستخدام

يمكن استخدام المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن المستقبل مع الخطط والترتيبات المستقبلية، غالبًا مع الوقت والتاريخ (الشىء المرتب له مسبقًا).

I'm visiting the dentist at half past four next Thursday.

Got it ? تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Sally ..... (meet) her friends in the club at seven o'clock tomorrow.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (is meeting) لأن الجملة تعبر عن شىء تم الترتيب له فى المستقبل مع ذكر الوقت فنستخدم المضارع المستمر.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises (3)

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They have arranged everything; they..... to Hurghada tomorrow.
   a) will travelling b) are travelling c) travels d) travelled
2. I ..... the university. This is my plan.
   a) will join b) am joining c) am going to join d) joins
3. I expect it ..... rain tonight.
   a) will b) have c) do d) going to
4. What ..... your parents do if you come home late?
   a) are b) will c) do d) did
5. Safia is going ..... her grandparents.
   a) visited b) visit c) to visit d) to visiting
6. Where ..... you going to spend your holiday?
   a) are b) did c) will d) do
7. ..... Sarah come to the next meeting?
   a) Is b) Will c) Does d) Did
8. Who ..... to the party tomorrow?
   a) will come b) came c) was coming d) comes
9. Nehad and Taha ..... buy a new car. They planned to do so.
   a) are going to b) will c) are d) going to
10. I ..... dinner with Sarah tonight. I've booked a table.
    a) to eat b) am eating c) eat d) ate

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. ..... (They are) going to visit their uncle?
2. I'm sure Sarah will not ..... (forgot) your birthday this time.
3. I ..... (will) eat fast food anymore.
4. ..... (Are we) going to meet our friends after work.
5. Will he ..... (finishes) his work on time?
6. How ..... (will) Mariam going to solve this problem?

Time to Practise

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The boy and his father ..... watch a football match. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) going to b) are going to c) is going to d) be going
2. He didn't ..... do sports when he was young. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) uses to b) used to c) using to d) use to
3. My son ..... 8 years next month. المنيا ٢٠٢٣
   a) will b) is going to be c) will be d) is being
4. I can see some dark clouds. It ..... . الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) going to rain b) rain
   c) raining d) is going to rain
5. Where did you ..... when you were young? الأقصر ٢٠٢٣
   a) used to play b) use to be played
   c) used to playing d) use to play
6. I think he ..... lend you some more money.
   a) is going to b) will c) have to d) going to
7. Who did he ..... to the party?
   a) invited b) invite c) invites d) inviting
8. Who ..... you English at school?
   a) going to teach b) teaching c) teach d) teaches
9. She ..... to music right now; she is reading a story.
   a) isn't listening b) not listening c) no listening d) won't listen
10. Baher ..... computer games when his father came into the room.
    a) will play b) was playing c) is playing d) plays

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Maggi ..... (play) nice music now. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
2. Laila used to ..... (ate) a lot of sweets, but now she doesn't.
3. Belal ..... (go) to the library last night. الغربية ٢٠٢٣
4. I think the exam ..... (would) be easy. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
5. Are you ..... (going/buy) another car? أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
6. When we travelled to Paris, we ..... (visit) the Eiffel Tower. دمياط ٢٠٢٢

D Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

1. Speaking

Talking about learning styles التحدث عن أساليب التعلم

online

How do you prefer to learn? كيف تفضل أن تتعلم؟

- I like to learn in different ways. I don't like doing the same thing. أحب أن أتعلم بطرق مختلفة. لا أحب عمل نفس الشيء.

What type of learning would you like to do more?
ما نوع التعلم الذى تود أن تؤديه بشكل أكبر؟

- I learn best by doing things.
أفضل طريقة للتعلم بالنسبة لى عن طريق فعل الأشياء. (التعلم العملى).

What type of learning would you like to do less?
ما نوع التعلم الذى تود أن تؤديه بشكل أقل؟

- I learn less by listening. أتعلم بشكل أقل عن طريق الاستماع.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

Maged and Seleem are talking about learning styles.

Maged : Hi, Seleem! How do you prefer to learn?
Seleem : Hi, Maged! (1)..... .
Maged : What type of learning would you like to do more?
Seleem : (2)..... . What about you?
Maged : I learn best by reading, too. (3).....?
Seleem : I learn less by listening. How about you?
Maged : I learn less by watching long videos without breaks.
Seleem : (4).....?
Maged : Using different types of learning keeps it interesting.
Seleem : (5)..... . It makes learning more fun.

2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about kinds of learners

كيفية الكتابة عن أنواع المتعلمين

- There are four kinds of learners.
- Firstly, who learn best by reading and writing.
- They like reading books or writing stories.
- Secondly, who learn best by doing things.
- They are always busy making and repairing things.
- Thirdly, who learn best by seeing things.
- They love to watch videos and look at diagrams.
- Finally, who learn by listening.
- They love music and are often talking!

Writing tips

For each supporting idea, think of RENNS that further explain the idea.

فكر فى أسباب وأمثلة وأسماء وأرقام ومشاعر لكل فكرة داعمة لكى تساهم فى شرح الفكرة بشكل أفضل.

Example

Kinds of learners

There are four kinds of learners. Firstly, some students learn best by reading and writing. They like reading books or writing stories. They love words and learn best by reading about something and taking notes. Secondly, other students learn best by doing things. They are always busy making and repairing things. They learn things best by trying to do them and sometimes find it hard to understand by listening or reading. Thirdly, others learn best by seeing things. They love to watch videos and look at diagrams. They love films and art. They learn things better if they can see them. Finally, not many students learn by listening. They love music and are often talking! They find it easier to learn by listening to people explain things to others and by discussing things with them.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"What type of learners you are"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 12 Lessons (1 & 2)

25

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

القاهرة ٢٠٢٤

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1. What does the speaker love?
   a) English. b) Music and running.
   c) Music and walking. d) Music and talking.
2. How does the speaker learn?
   a) By listening. b) By seeing things. c) By writing. d) By doing things.
3. What does he like summarising?
   a) Articles. b) Magazines. c) Books. d) Texts.
4. How often does the speaker discuss things with people?
   a) Always. b) Never. c) Sometimes. d) Usually.

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Safaa doesn't understand the last science lesson.

Safaa : Can you help me?
Wafaa : (1)..... . What do you want?
Safaa : (2)..... .
Wafaa : What type of learning would you like to do more?
Safaa : (3)..... .
Wafaa : Great! I have a diagram. We can look at it.
Safaa : Now I understand it. (4).....?
Wafaa : I like classes when we see things.
Safaa : (5).....?
Wafaa : I learn less by writing.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When he got low marks, his parents were ..... . القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) disappeared b) disappointed c) happy d) excited
2. The manager was angry when he found ..... the truth. سوهاج ٢٠٢٤
   a) off b) out c) on d) in
3. The teacher asked us to give a/an ..... to the story as it's too long. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
   a) presentation b) summary c) introduction d) action
4. Do you want to ..... doing your homework now?
   a) discuss b) repair c) continue d) act
5. Warda had to wake up early to ..... an exam at the university.
   a) make b) take c) give d) laugh

6. The film was so funny, so we ..... a lot.

a) discussed b) explained c) laughed d) preferred

7. Samer ..... a book before bedtime every night.

a) read b) reads c) reading d) is reading

8. It ..... heavily outside.

a) is rained b) rain c) raining d) is raining

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I didn't ..... (used) enjoy diving, but now I love it.
2. How ..... (are) you feeling when you heard the news?
3. My uncle will ..... (buying) a new car next month.
4. What are they ..... (going/do) this weekend?
5. Sarah ..... (study) for her exam last week.

5 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Kinds of learners"

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I communicate ..... with my friends by e-mails.

a) the mostly b) the most c) mostly d) most

2. She ..... her driving test on the first try. She was very happy.

a) dropped b) failed c) passed d) succeed

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The shop ..... (open) until 10 am.
2. She never ..... (use) cook. Now she does.

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك فى كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

QUESTION	1	2	3	4	5
TACKLES	Listening	Speaking	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
MARK					

STUDY Lessons 3 & 4

Watch a video

SB pages 58 - 60 | WB pages 109 & 110

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

body language (n)	لغة الجسد	identity (n)	هوية
communication (n)	تواصل	international (adj)	دولى/عالمى
community (n)	مجتمع	multilingual (adj)	متعدد اللغات
dialect (n)	لهجة/لغة بلد ما	national (adj)	قومى/وطنى
expert (n)	خبير	sounds (n)	أصوات
eye contact (n)	الاتصال بالعين	stroke (n)	مداعبة
facial expressions (n)	تعبيرات الوجه	touch (ed) (n/v)	اللمس/يلمس
field (n)	ملعب/حقل	voice (n)	صوت بشرى
home language (n)	اللغة الأم		

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

area (n)	منطقة	normally (adv)	عادة/فى العادة
difference (n)	اختلاف	own (adj)	ملك/خاصة بـ
join (ed) (v)	ينضم/يضم	quality (n)	صفة/ميزة
nearly (adv)	تقريبًا	result (n)	نتيجة

Check Point

Choose and complete: results – home – identity – stroke

1. Giving your cats a ..... can help them feel relaxed.
2. All the students are waiting for the exam ..... .
3. In schools, students should use their ..... language to communicate.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

copy › sounds	يقلد الأصوات	make › noise	تحدث ضوضاء/ضجة
give › identities	يعطى الهويات	spend › time with	يقضى وقتًا مع

Prepositions — حروف الجر

careful about	حريص على	disappointed with	محبط من
communicate with	يتواصل مع	go away	يذهب بعيدًا/يبتعد
connect to/with	يتصل بـ	look after	يعتنى بـ
different to	مختلف عن	walk into	يدخل فى/يصطدم بـ

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
advantages	مميزات	disadvantages	عيوب
possible	ممكن	impossible	مستحيل

Check Point

Choose and complete: on – about – impossible – copy

1. We should be careful ..... the food we eat.
2. Children learn to speak by trying to ..... sounds they hear.
3. The opposite of "possible" is "..... ".

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر والكلمات وعكسها.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Definitions

التعريفات

advantages	مميزات	the good things about something
dialect	لهجة/لغة بلد ما	a way of speaking used in one area
experts	خبراء	people who know lots about a subject
identities	هويات	the qualities that make you different to other people
multilingual	متعدد اللغات	be able to speak many languages
national	وطنى/قومى	of or for the whole country

Words and Synonyms

الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
advantages	مميزات	benefits	فوائد

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
differ (v)	يختلف	-ence		تحويل الفعل إلى اسم		difference (n)	اختلاف
nation (n)	أمة	-al		تحويل الاسم إلى صفة		national (adj)	وطنى/قومى

Prefix البادئة

Prefix	البادئة	Function	الوظيفة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
multi-		تعطى معنى التعدد		lingual (adj)	لغوى	multilingual (adj)	متعدد اللغات

B Reading & Listening Skills

Listening Text

Lesson 3

Pre-listening question:

- Have you ever felt that your pet understood you?

Listen to a podcast about animals. What types of communication from Exercise 1 does Dr Ahmed talk about? SB page 58



Munir What do you know about animals? Do you think they understand (1) you? Today, I'm talking to Dr Ahmed who is going to tell us about how animals communicate (2). Hello, Dr Ahmed.

Dr Ahmed Hello.

Munir Let's talk about the animals that you often see on a farm. My brother is a farmer and I think that his cat understands him sometimes. Is that possible (3)?

Dr Ahmed I'm sure the cat understands when he is angry and understands words like 'dinner', for example.

Munir But of course, the cat can't talk to him.

Dr Ahmed No, animals can't speak in the way people can, but some animals like birds can copy sounds (4). But animals do communicate, both to us and to each other. One way animals communicate is by using body language (5). For example, horses touch noses to say hello to another horse they like, and bees dance when they find a good flower.

Munir So can I learn to communicate better with animals then?

Dr Ahmed From my point of view, it's important to watch and listen to what animals are trying to tell you. You should be careful about how you use your body and voice. So, if an animal is scared, you should move slowly and use a soft voice (6). How about listening to the way your cat makes a noise? Does it sound different if it is frightened, wants some food? I think it will!

(1) يفهم
(2) يتواصل
(3) ممكن
(4) يقلد الأصوات
(5) لغة الجسد
(6) صوت هادئ

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمة التالية:

communicate /kəˈmju:nɪkeɪt/

Post-listening question: - How do animals communicate?

Lesson 3

Pre-reading question:

- Do you have any problems with your brothers and sisters?

Read this post from the internet. What's the girl's problem? *SB page 59*



Can anyone give me some advice(1)?

I have an older sister (she's three years older than me). We used to be best friends, but now she doesn't want to talk to me very much. She is always on the internet or talking to people on her phone.

She tells me to go away(2) if I try to talk to her. I miss(3) being friends with her. How can I get her to spend time with me again?

Please give me some advice!

Yours, Radwa

(1) نصائح

(2) يبتعد

(3) يفتقد

Post-reading question: - What advice would you give her?

Lesson 4

Complete the text with the correct form of the words from Exercise 1 (there is one word you do not need). *WB page 110*

The languages of Switzerland



Switzerland is a small European country. Here, you do not need to be an **expert** to speak many languages. That is because nearly all people in Switzerland are **multilingual**: they speak the country's four **national** languages. That is because each area of Switzerland has always had its own **identity** and its own language.

The parts of Switzerland near Italy speak Italian, the parts near Germany speak German and the parts near France speak French. In the southwest of Switzerland, they also speak a **dialect** called Romansh.

Each language **connects** the people with their area, but they are also very proud of their country.

Life Skills

1. When might you need to use each of the forms of communication in Exercise 1?
2. Why do you think good communication is so important?

Pre-reading question: - How many languages do you speak? What are they?

Read the text quickly and answer the questions. *SB page 60*

Multilingual[1] Africa



(1) متعدد اللغات
(2) الخبراء
(3) يعتقد/يصدق
(4) لهجة/لغة لبلد ما
(5) وطنى/قومى
(6) مميزات
(7) هويات
(8) يوصل
(9) مجتمع
(10) دولى

Experts[2] believe[3] that there are more than 2,100 languages spoken in Africa. Many African people speak three languages: their dialect[4] (or home language), the national[5] language and another European language such as English, French or Portuguese that they learn at school. This means they are **multilingual!** Of course, many people speak more than three languages!

People who speak different languages have lots of advantages[6]. If you speak more than one language, you can talk to different people in different places and in different ways. When you are multilingual, you are able to understand both your home and the world better.

It also gives people different identities[7]. If you speak your home language, it connects[8] you to your community[9]. Your national language connects you to your country and all the other people in it. An international[10] language, like English, connects you to an international community.

Comprehension Skills

Guessing meaning: مهارة تخمين معنى كلمة

اقرأ الفقرة الأولى من القطعة السابقة وأجب عن السؤال التالى:

What does the underlined word "**multilingual**" mean?

اقرأ الجمل جيدًا واهتم بقراءة الجملة التى تسبق الكلمة والتى تليها وفسر إلامَ تشير الضمائر فنستنتج أن:

- "Multilingual" means able to use more than two languages for communication.

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Everyone in Egypt has their own ..... . They speak differently. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) dialect b) identity c) nationality d) advantage
2. To ..... means to join two things or places together. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
   a) fix b) explain c) connect d) copy
3. A person who speaks lots of languages is ..... . بور سعيد ٢٠٢٣
   a) national b) multilingual c) old d) different
4. One of the mobile's ..... is to use it everywhere. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) advantages b) experts c) dialects d) disadvantages
5. Your ..... includes things like your name, age, and where you're from.
   a) dialect b) language c) identity d) community
6. We have known that the film is scary from their ..... expressions.
   a) facial b) hand c) finger d) toe
7. English is a/an ..... language.
   a) bad b) international c) national d) local
8. She is a/an ..... in baking delicious cakes. We all like her cakes.
   a) ready b) bad c) good d) expert
9. I love to ..... time with my family on the weekends.
   a) give b) copy c) spend d) speak
10. Her opinion was different ..... what we expected.
    a) to b) with c) in d) on
11. Modern technology helps people to ..... with each other. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
    a) communicate b) see c) read d) fight
12. Body ..... means the way you move your body. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
    a) language b) built c) lantern d) balance
13. A blind man walks into a clothes shop and buys a shirt. He chooses the shirt by ..... . الغربية ٢٠٢٢
    a) sounds b) sight c) smell d) touch
14. Can you raise your .....? I can't hear you. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
    a) sound b) sounds c) voice d) ton
15. Hanaa won first place in the ..... science competition all over the country.
    a) national b) multilingual c) normal d) international
16. Shahenda is never too busy to ..... after her child.
    a) give b) look c) take d) have

C Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

1. Speaking

1. A presentation about studies

عرض تقديمى عن الدراسة

online

What didn't you use to like to study but like to study now?

ما الشىء الذى لم تكن تحب دراسته ولكنك تحبه الآن؟

I didn't use to like to study history. But I like to study it now.

لم أعتد أن أحب دراسة التاريخ. ولكنى أحب أن أدرسه الآن.

What job did you want to do when you were younger, and do you still want to do it?

ما الوظيفة التى أردتها عندما كنت صغيرًا؟ وهل ما زلت تريدها الآن؟

I wanted to be a teacher. Yes, I still want to do it now.

أردت أن أكون مدرسًا. نعم ما زلت أريدها الآن.

What subjects do you like studying now? Why?

ما المواد التى تحب دراستها الآن؟ ولماذا؟

I like studying English and German because I like languages.

أحب أن أدرس اللغة الإنجليزية والألمانية لأننى أحب اللغات.

What do you want to study in the future? Why?

ماذا تريد أن تدرس فى المستقبل؟ ولماذا؟

I want to study the space because I want to learn about our planet.

أريد أن أدرس الفضاء لأننى أريد أن أتعلم عن كوكبنا.

Why do you want to study to be a scientist?

لماذا تدرس لتصبح عالمًا؟

Because I like science.

لأننى أحب العلوم.

2. Advice, Opinions and Suggestions

النصيحة والآراء والمقترحات

A) Advice: النصيحة

- **You should + inf.** يجب أن
  - You should be careful about how you use your body and voice.

B) Opinion: الرأى

- **I think .....** أعتقد
- **From my point of view, ...** من وجهة نظرى
  - I think that his cat understands him.
  - From my point of view, it's important to watch and listen to what animals are trying to tell you.

C) Suggestions: الاقتراح

- **Let's + inf.** هيا بنا
- **How about + inf. + ing...?** ماذا عن
  - Let's talk about the animals that you often see on a farm.
  - How about listening to how your cat makes a noise?

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

Khaled is asking Kamal about his studies in the past.

Khaled : Hi Kamal, are you ready for our presentation about studies?

Kamal : Hi, Khaled. (1)..... . Let's start.

Khaled : What didn't you use to like to study?

Kamal : (2)..... .

Khaled : (3).....?

Kamal : Because history was hard for me.

Khaled : (4).....?

Kamal : I wanted to be a pilot when I was younger.

Khaled : Do you still want to do it?

Kamal : (5)..... .

2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

1. How to write about the importance of learning many languages

كيفية الكتابة عن أهمية تعلم عدة لغات

Example

Learning languages

Learning other languages is a way of communicating with other nations because we can never understand other countries without knowing their languages. There are many reasons why learning a new language is a good idea. It helps you to communicate with new people. It helps you to see things from a different view, or understand other cultures. It helps you to become a better listener. It helps you to understand both your home and the world better. It also gives people different identities. It connects you to an international community.

Writing tips

Brainstorm supporting ideas. Choose 2 - 6 supporting ideas that do a good job supporting your topic sentence.

قم بالبحث عن أفكار مساعدة لموضوع الفقرة. اختر من ٢-٦ أفكار لتساعدك على دعم جملتك الرئيسية.

2. How to write about learning vocabulary

كيفية الكتابة عن تعلم مفردات اللغة

To : malek@gmail.com
From : adam@gmail.com
Subject : Learning vocabulary
Dear Malek,

I'd like to tell you about learning new vocabulary. English is the most popular spoken language all over the world. Many people speak English around the world. To improve your English, you should practise it. The most important part of learning English is the vocabulary. There are some tips that will help you to learn English vocabulary. Make flashcards of words that you need to remember, organised by topic. Read the words in context: that means putting the word in a written sentence, so you can see how it works with other words. Don't try to remember too many words at the same time. Watch English-language TV programmes or films and listen for known words. Read as many stories and news articles as you can.

Write soon.
Yours, Adam

القاهرة ٢٠٢٤

1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Reading is a very important habit. It gives us new ideas and improves our language. When you read, you need to be in a quiet place. It's better to wear your reading glasses if it is necessary. Also, you should read different topics in different fields. It's a good idea to have a pen in your hand to underline or circle the important points to **remember** what you read. It's good to discuss what you have read with your friends as well. People read for different goals. Some people read for enjoyment to feel happy and spend nice time. Others read for work. Students read for their study or research. All of us read the news and the weather reports daily.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The opposite of the underlined word "**remember**" is ..... .
   a) remind b) repeat c) forget d) discuss
2. Some people read to feel ..... .
   a) happy b) sad c) angry d) hungry

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What's the main idea of the passage? .....
4. What does the underlined pronoun "**It**" refer to? .....
5. Why do you think you should have a pen when you read? .....
6. What should you do to remember the important points while reading?
   .....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I ..... wake up at 7 am every morning.
   a) normally b) nearly c) possibly d) carefully
2. We use emails for most of our ..... in our office.
   a) quality b) community c) expression d) communication
3. It's ..... to finish the project by Friday if we work hard.
   a) national b) possible c) impossible d) normal
4. One of the ..... of reading books is that you learn new things.
   a) advantages b) languages c) identities d) disadvantages
5. I made a/an ..... with her and knew that she accepted the invitation.
   a) eye contact b) dialect c) expert d) identity

6. The cat ..... caught the mouse, but it got away.
a) quietly b) nationally c) nearly d) normally
7. Mariam is good at languages. She ..... French, Spanish and German. WB
a) will speak b) spoke c) is speaking d) speaks
8. This morning at 10 o'clock, it ..... heavily.
a) rains b) is raining c) rained d) was raining

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. When is she ..... (go) to finish her project?
2. Last night, I ..... (write) a letter to my friend.
3. I ..... (have) a delicious meal with my family right now.
4. Next month, I ..... (able to) drive a car.
5. Where ..... (be) you yesterday?

4 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Learning languages"

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

1. Diana speaks with a different ..... from her friends.
a) communication b) identity c) home language d) dialect
2. He moved his head to show that he refused the offer. He used his ..... .
a) body language b) eye contact
c) facial expression d) home language

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My father doesn't like to talk while he ..... (watch) a match.
2. He always ..... (ride) his bike when he was younger.

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك فى كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

QUESTION	1	2	3	4
TACKLES	Comprehension	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
MARK				

STUDY Lessons 5 & 6

Watch a video

SB pages 61&62 | WB pages 111&112

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

alone (adv)	بمفرده	organised (adj)	منظم
article (n)	مقال	personal statement (n)	بيان شخصى
date of birth (n)	تاريخ الميلاد	realise (d) (v)	يدرك
furniture (n)	أثاث	revise (d) (v)	يراجع
language school (n)	مدرسة لغات	study plan (n)	خطة دراسية
manage (d) (v)	يدير/يتمكن	topic (n)	موضوع
nationality (n)	جنسية	vocabulary (n)	مفردات اللغة

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

application form (n)	استمارة طلب	smoke (n)	دخان
comment (n/v)	تعليق/يعلق	spelling (n)	الهجاء
correctly (adv)	بشكل صحيح	summer course (n)	دورة صيفية

Check Point

Choose and complete: furniture – revise – information – comments

1. I need to ..... my lessons before exams.
2. Ahmed has lots of ..... on his new profile picture.
3. We bought new ..... for the living room.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

complete	a form	يكمل استمارة	make	flashcards	يعمل بطاقات تعليمية
do	activities	يؤدى أنشطة		timetable	يعمل جدولًا
	sports	يؤدى رياضة	take	a break	يأخذ استراحة
get	better	يتحسن	walk	past	يمشى مارًا بـ
sound	fun	يبدو مرحًا			

Prepositions — حروف الجر

advert for	إعلان لـ	in context	فى السياق
at the same time	فى نفس الوقت	organised by topic	مرتبة حسب الموضوع
at the weekend	فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	test (ed) on	يختبر على
hear from	يتلقى رسالة/أخبارًا من	useful for	مفيد لـ

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.
break يكسر	broke	broken
learn يتعلم	learnt (learned)	learnt (learned)

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym) عكسها
calm هادئ	noisy صاخب
known معروف	unknown غير معروف
personal شخصى	public عام

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Definitions — التعريفات

disappointed محبط	how you feel if you fail an exam
improve يحسن	to get better at something
organised منظم	able to plan things carefully
pass ينجح	what you want to do when you take an exam
personal statement بيان شخصى	where you tell someone about yourself
voice صوت	a sound that comes from your mouth

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning) مرادفها
broken مكسور	damaged تالف
known معروف	famous/popular مشهور

Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
pronounce (v) ينطق	-ation	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	pronunciation (n) نطق
person (n) شخص	-al	تحويل الاسم إلى صفة	personal (adj) شخصى

Similar Spelling - Different Meaning

Word الكلمة	Similar word الكلمة المشابهة
break استراحة	brake فرامل

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question: - How do you study English grammar?

Lesson 5

Complete the study plan with these words.

WB page 111

Study plan: how to learn English vocabulary(1)

1. Make flashcards(2) of words that you need to remember organised(3) by topic (for example, words for furniture).
2. Write the words in context(4): that means putting the word in a written sentence, so you can see how it works with other words.
3. Don't try to remember too many words at the same time: find how many words is best for you.
4. Watch English-language TV programmes or films and listen for known words.
5. Read as many stories and news articles(5) as you can: it's the best way to learn vocabulary!
6. Work with a friend and try to test each other on important words.

(1) المفردات اللغوية
(2) بطاقات تعليمية
(3) منظم
(4) سياق
(5) مقالات

Read the advert for a language school in England. Would you like to study there? Why/Why not?

Lesson 6

SB page 62

English Language Summer School for Teenagers!

Do you want to improve(1) your English? Would you like to study in England with other young people from around the world? Come and stay at Hapstone House, in the south of England, for our summer courses! You can study every morning with our friendly(2), expert teachers and spend the afternoons doing sports or other activities.

Every weekend, we visit famous English places (like London or Oxford).

Learn English,
have fun,
visit England!

For more information(3), visit our website(4).

(1) يحسن
(2) ودود
(3) معلومات
(4) موقع إلكتروني

Post-reading question:

- How can we improve our English?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Do you think it is better to work ..... or with friends? دمياط ٢٠٢٢
   a) alone b) along c) sadly d) loudly
2. We should always be ..... to do better in our life. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
   a) lazy b) recognised c) organised d) known
3. Study well and ..... your time to get higher marks. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢
   a) succeed b) waste c) manage d) damage
4. She was asked to ..... a form about her shopping habits.
   a) walk b) make c) do d) complete
5. Nurses help patients to ..... better at hospitals. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٢
   a) take b) cook c) get d) see
6. Many students decided to have a summer ..... to improve their English.
   a) course b) address c) number d) fire
7. Hanaa read an interesting ..... about space exploration.
   a) website b) film c) article d) content
8. **A:** What is your.....? **B:** I am English.
   a) name b) hobby c) titles d) nationality
9. When I post something on Facebook, my friends always make ..... .
   a) mistakes b) comments c) cakes d) contents
10. I didn't ..... how late it was until I checked my watch.
    a) realise b) organise c) improve d) manage
11. Nada always has a/an ..... smile for everyone she meets, so everyone likes her.
    a) silly b) disappointed c) friendly d) organised
12. He studied hard and finally ..... his test.
    a) pressed b) revised c) realised d) passed
13. The opposite of "known" is "..... ". أسيوط ٢٠٢٢
    a) unknown b) soft c) perfect d) popular
14. When joining a library, we need to fill in an application ..... .
    a) blog b) app c) farm d) form
15. My friends went to a ..... school to improve their English skills.
    a) personal b) language c) dialect d) furniture
16. He saw ..... coming from the kitchen.
    a) articles b) furniture c) smoke d) websites

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 12 Lessons (5 & 6)

12

القليوبية ٢٠٢٤

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Amr meets his friend Adel at the library.

Amr : Hi Adel, how are you?
Adel : (1) ..... .
Amr : What are you reading?
Adel : (2) ..... .
Amr : (3) .....?
Adel : The article is about recycling.
Amr : (4) .....?
Adel : It means that we can use things again.
Amr : Do you think recycling helps the environment?
Adel : (5) ..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She saw an advert ..... a job as a cook in the newspaper.
   a) from b) to c) at d) for
2. To remember new English words, read them in ..... .
   a) title b) context c) topic d) comment
3. You don't need games. You can ..... flashcards to help children learn these skills.
   a) make b) do c) take d) give
4. Students should make a study ..... to manage their time.
   a) exam b) whiteboard c) blackboard d) timetable
5. It ..... when I got up this morning.
   a) rains b) rained c) was raining d) is raining
6. Where ..... Omar live?
   a) is b) does c) was d) do

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. ..... (you/have) a nice time last weekend?
2. I ..... (not/know) much about art, but I like some artists.
3. They ..... (go) to spend six days in the USA next month.
4. The boy is going to ..... (watching) a football match tomorrow.

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك فى كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

QUESTION	1	2	3
TACKLES	Speaking	Vocabulary	Language
MARK			

Al-Adwaa Test On Unit 12

30

A Listening

نص الاستماع
فى نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Who did you use to be best friends with?
   a) My brother. b) My father.
   c) My sister. d) My mother.
2. What does he/she always do?
   a) On the internet. b) At the park.
   c) In the library. d) In the zoo.
3. How old is he/she?
   a) Twenty. b) Twelve.
   c) Thirty. d) Thirteen.
4. How does he/she like to communicate?
   a) On social media. b) On the phone.
   c) By emails. d) By text messages.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Sameh is asking Eslam for some advice about his presentation.

Sameh : Hi Eslam, can I ask for your advice about something?
Eslam : (1)..... . What do you need advice on?
Sameh : I have some problems with my presentation. (2).....?
Eslam : You should be careful about how you use your body and voice.
Sameh : (3).....?
Eslam : I think using flashcards can be very useful. What is the topic of the presentation?
Sameh : (4)..... .
Eslam : Animals! This is an interesting topic.
Sameh : Thanks for giving me some advice.
Eslam : (5)..... . I hope you do well in your presentation.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

The English Language Summer School for Teenagers is a fun and educational program. It is designed for teenagers who want to improve their English skills. The summer school is on a beautiful site with modern services. Students join classes every morning from Sunday to Thursday. In the afternoons, there are many activities like sports, arts and crafts, and trips.

Teachers are friendly and **experienced**, helping students to practise speaking, listening, reading, and writing in English. Students from different countries come to the summer school, making new friends and learning about different cultures.

At weekends, there are special events and trips to interesting places. These trips help students to use English in real-life situations. By the end of the program, students feel they get better in their English abilities.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Some of the activities offered in the afternoons are ..... .
   a) sports b) arts and crafts c) trips d) all of these
2. The word "**experienced**" most likely means "..... ".
   a) expert b) new c) unfriendly d) unskilled

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the text? .....
4. What do you think of the English Language Summer School? .....
5. When do students feel they get better in their English abilities? .....
6. How do the teachers help students improve their English skills? .....

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They felt ..... when they lost the match.
   a) proud b) scared c) excited d) disappointed
2. He didn't study hard, as a ..... he didn't succeed.
   a) reason b) cause c) result d) benefit
3. I will ..... what I have done. I know you don't have much time.
   a) summarise b) follow c) act d) fix
4. Switzerland has four ..... languages.
   a) international b) national c) global d) natural

5. To ..... is to get better at something.

a) improve b) connect c) contact d) complete

6. How long do you ..... to stay with your uncle?

a) connect b) pass c) manage d) plan

7. The teacher ..... our tests at the moment.

a) marks b) marked c) marking d) is marking

8. Sara usually ..... on black shoes, but now she is wearing white trainers.

a) puts b) put c) was put d) is putting

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. While I ..... (play) on the computer, I found out an interesting fact.
2. The bus is ..... (leave) now.
3. Last week, they ..... (go) to the cinema.
4. Tomorrow, I think I ..... (start) my new project.
5. Where did your grandparents ..... (use/live)?

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"An English course you are going to have"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك فى كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

QUESTION	1	2	3	4	5	6
TACKLES	Listening	Speaking	Reading	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
MARK						

Bubble Sheet Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Munir and Ahmed are talking about studies.

Munir : What subject didn't you use to like to study?

Ahmed : (1)..... .

a) I didn't use to like maths
b) I used to like maths
c) I used to like history
d) I didn't use to like history

Munir : (2).....?

a) Did you like it now
b) Do you like it now
c) Will you like it now
d) Would you like it now

Ahmed : Yes, I like history now.

Munir : What job did you want to do?

Ahmed : (3)..... .

a) I wanted to be a policeman
b) I wanted to be a doctor
c) I wanted to be a pilot
d) I wanted to be a teacher

Munir : Do you still want to be a policeman?

Ahmed : (4)..... . Now, I want to be a computer engineer.

a) No, I don't
b) Yes, I do
c) Thanks
d) Sorry

Munir : (5).....?

a) How
b) Where
c) Why
d) When

Ahmed : I want to be a computer engineer because I like computers.

2 Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d:

1. Did he ..... (used to) swim?
   a) used
   b) use
   c) use to
   d) using to
2. What ..... (you/do) when the phone rang?
   a) were you doing
   b) are you doing
   c) do you do
   d) will you do
3. We ..... (go) to the gym now.
   a) goes
   b) went
   c) going
   d) are going
4. There are a lot of clouds! It ..... (will rain) soon.
   a) will be raining
   b) is going to rain
   c) is raining
   d) was raining
5. ..... (Is) he always wear a tie?
   a) Was
   b) Will
   c) Does
   d) Did

ANSWER HERE

Q 1	1 (a)(b)(c)(d)	2 (a)(b)(c)(d)	3 (a)(b)(c)(d)	4 (a)(b)(c)(d)	5 (a)(b)(c)(d)
Q 2	1 (a)(b)(c)(d)	2 (a)(b)(c)(d)	3 (a)(b)(c)(d)	4 (a)(b)(c)(d)	5 (a)(b)(c)(d)

Module 6 Question Bank On Units 11 & 12

1 Complete the following dialogue:

A) Sama and Rana are preparing themselves to go to the party. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣

Sama : Will you go to the party tonight?
Rana : (1)..... .
Sama : What are you going to wear for the party?
Rana : (2)..... .
Sama : Oh! I really like that blue dress.
Rana : Thanks. (3).....?
Sama : I am going to wear my favourite red dress.
Rana : Wow! (4).....?
Sama : We'll meet at 6 p.m.
Rana : (5)..... .

B) Dareen is telling Habiba about her holiday plans.

Habiba: Tell me about your holiday plans, Dareen.
Dareen: (1)..... .
Habiba: (2).....?
Dareen: Because I want to improve my English.
Habiba: (3).....?
Dareen: I will travel to England and study there.
Habiba: How long is the English course?
Dareen: (4)..... .
Habiba: Is a three-week course enough?
Dareen: (5)..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There's a lot of air pollution from the ..... in our city. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
   a) water b) lake c) solar panels d) traffic
2. ..... are used to produce electricity. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
   a) Solar panels b) TV channels c) Coral reefs d) Mobile phones
3. Don't drink water from a canal because it can be full of ..... . أسيوط ٢٠٢٢
   a) salt b) sugar c) bacteria d) light
4. ..... are planes without pilots. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
   a) Boats b) Drones c) Rockets d) Donors
5. When tourists go ..... in the desert, they leave rubbish there. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) swimming b) trekking c) diving d) sailing

6. I felt so ..... when my son graduated from university. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
a) proud b) angry c) sad d) exciting

7. If you get lost, you should ask someone for ..... . القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
a) direct b) directions c) money d) food

8. Modern technology helps people to ..... with each other. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
a) see b) read c) fight d) communicate

9. A person who speaks lots of languages is ..... . بورسعيد ٢٠٢٢
a) national b) different c) multilingual d) old

10. Salem must ..... well for the next exam. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
a) fail b) revise c) pass d) manage

11. We are ..... dinner in a restaurant. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
a) have b) will have c) going to have d) to having

12. He can't answer the phone. He ..... at the moment. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
a) study b) to study c) studied d) is studying

13. If Ahmed ..... hard, he will win the race. قنا ٢٠٢٣
a) will train b) trained c) trains d) train

14. I ..... a football match two days ago. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
a) watching b) watched c) watch d) watches

15. He didn't ..... do sports when he was young. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
a) uses to b) used to c) using to d) use to

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I am ..... (sweep) the floor. I have intended to do that. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢
2. Rasha ..... (going to) help her mother tomorrow. She has decided. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
3. Maher ..... (fly) to London. He's got his ticket. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
4. What will he do if his son ..... (win) the match? بنى سويف ٢٠٢٤
5. They ..... (play) nice music now. أسيوط ٢٠٢٢
6. Listen! Your mobile ..... (ring). الشرقيه ٢٠٢٢
7. My uncle ..... (lived) in Aswan. He likes the weather there. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٤
8. Mona used to ..... (drinks) milk, but now she doesn't. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
9. I think the exam ..... (would) be easy. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
10. Shady is going ..... (buy) a new car next month. أسيوط ٢٠٢٢

Review D On Units 10, 11&12

Listening Text

Lesson 1

Listen to the talk about a school trip. What information is in the letter?

SB page 64



Voice: Next month is our school camping trip. We're leaving in three weeks and camping for three nights. The bus is leaving at 8 am on the 10th of May, and we will be back on the 13th at 6 pm. As you know, we're going to the desert, and it will be hot in the day and cold at night. You will need to bring loose, cool clothes for the day and warm night clothes. You will also need comfortable trainers because we're going to do lots of walking. You're going to be learning about life in the desert and about the geography of the area. You'll also need a camera, notebook and pen. Please take this letter for your parents which has all the information that you'll need.

Lesson 1

Listen to check your answers, then role-play the dialogue. *WB page 114*

Guide We're going to climb that big mountain today, Karim.

Karim Do you mean the mountain with the snow on top?

Guide No, we're going to climb the one with the tall, green trees on it.

Karim It looks a bit scary to me!

Guide From my point of view, it won't be scary if you wear the correct clothes.

Karim OK, what should I wear?

Guide You should wear these thick leather boots, and this hard, plastic hat.

Karim This hat is too big. Do you have a smaller size?

Guide Here you are. Does it fit?

Karim Yes, thank you.

Guide OK, let's go up the mountain!

Lesson 1

Pre-reading question:

- How did people use to send messages in the past?

Read the article again and answer the questions. *WB page 114*

New technology means that forms of **communication** are changing all the time. For example, think about how phones have **developed** over the last 20 years. In the past, people **used to type** messages using special letters on their phones. Then, people **started** to touch the screens on their phones to type their messages. Now, phones are able to understand people's **voices** and many people **are speaking** to their phones to send messages. Some scientists think that phones **are going to know** what people think in the future. Perhaps our phones will read our facial **expressions** before they send a message!

Lesson 2

Read the article about a shop and choose the correct words. *SB page 65*

On Monday, an exciting new shop is opening in the city centre. The Eco Shop only sells things that are **environment-friendly**.

Last week, we **talked** to the owner, Mariam El-Soory, about her new shop. "Lots of people want to help the environment, but it is sometimes difficult to know what to buy. We **are working** with lots of people to help local industries, too. So, we're going to sell local fruit and vegetables, **luxury, Egyptian cotton** clothes and other local things that don't damage the environment. You can also bring glass, plastic and paper to the shop for recycling. We will also have cooking and sewing classes at the shop soon".

Mariam **worked** for many years as a guide at a beach. She was sad because she **saw** a lot of plastic bags used for things from other countries on the beach. When she **was picking** up some rubbish one day, she decided she wanted to do more to help the environment and had the idea of a shop.

The shop is having an opening party **at** 1 pm in three days' time.

Listening Texts

Unit 7

Test yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Shopping online is great! It saves me time. I can stay at home and buy the things I want in a few minutes. Also, if more people shop online, there will be fewer cars on the road and less pollution!

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 7

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Last week, Samah ordered a new tablet and the delivery was today. When she opened the box, the screen was damaged. So, she sent an email to change the tablet for another one.

Unit 8

Test yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My friend Ali likes spicy food, but he always gets ill when he eats food with lots of spices. The doctor told him that he is allergic to spices and advised him not to put spices in his food.

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 8

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Sfenj is a kind of cake from Morocco. It has lots of sugar and fat in it and is very sweet, so it is not very healthy, but I love it! We sometimes eat sfenj for breakfast and sometimes as a snack with some tea or a cup of coffee.

Unit 9

Test yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Last month, I visited the Egyptian Museum of Modern Art in Cairo. Egypt is famous for its ancient art, but I was interested in seeing art by Egyptians from the 20th and 21st centuries.

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 9

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Last week, Nada visited the Textile Museum in Cairo. The museum has lots of clothes from different times in history. I thought the clothes from Ancient Egypt were fantastic.

Unit 10

Test yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

In Ancient Egypt, men and women wore similar clothes. They both wore loose, white, linen clothes with a belt. Most of the time, they did not wear shoes, but people sometimes wore expensive leather sandals.

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 10

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Omar is going to a special occasion tomorrow. It's his cousin's birthday party. The party will be at the park. He decided to buy new clothes for the party and he will give his cousin a nice present.

Unit 11

Test yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Next weekend, we are going to plant a lot of trees on the roof of the school because they help reduce air pollution. I think we all should plant trees to help solve some environmental problems.

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 11

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Drones can fly, but they don't need a person to fly them: we can use remote control. This means we can control drones from the ground. In the future, drones are going to help solve some environmental problems.

Unit 12

Test yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My favourite subject is English and I like to be perfect at it. I always summarise the English texts to remember the main points because I like learning by writing. But, I never discuss them with my friends.

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 12

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My sister is thirteen years old and we used to be best friends. But now she doesn't want to talk to me very much. She is always on the internet or talking to people on her phone. She tells me to go away if I try to talk to her. I miss being friends with her.

Challenging Questions Answers

Unit 7

Lessons (1 & 2)

1. 1. b) hear 2. d) speaks

2. 1. turns 2. to get

Lessons (3 & 4)

1. 1. a) answer 2. c) of

2. 1. I should 2. don't think

Unit 8

Lessons (1 & 2)

1. 1. c) power 2. b) a run

2. 1. fewer 2. some

Lessons (3 & 4)

1. 1. b) abnormal 2. c) recipe

2. 1. Be careful 2. ever

Unit 9

Lessons (1 & 2)

1. 1. c) scene 2. d) sculpture

2. 1. Am I able 2. aren't

Lessons (3 & 4)

1. 1. b) get 2. c) to

2. 1. be 2. know

Unit 10

Lessons (1 & 2)

1. 1. b) comfortable 2. c) scarf

2. 1. large and white 2. large, white

Lessons (3 & 4)

1. 1. b) have 2. c) im-

2. 1. one 2. the

Unit 11

Lessons (1 & 2)

1. 1. b) found 2. d) joined

2. 1. will score 2. is going to score

Lessons (3 & 4)

1. 1. b) leave/leave for 2. d) trainer/trainers

2. 1. taking 2. am going to do

Unit 12

Lessons (1 & 2)

1. 1. c) mostly 2. c) passed

2. 1. doesn't open 2. used to

Lessons (3 & 4)

1. 1. d) dialect 2. a) body language

2. 1. is watching 2. rode

جميع الحقوق محفوظة © لدار نهضة مصر للنشر
يحظر طبع أو نشر أو تصوير أو تخزين
أى جزء من هذا الكتاب بأية وسيلة إلكترونية أو ميكانيكية
أو بالتصوير أو خلاف ذلك إلا بإذن كتابى صريح من الناشر.

رقم الإيداع: ٢٠١١٥ / ٢٠٢٤
ترخيص وزارة التربية والتعليم رقم:
٢٦٧/٢/١٠/١٠٣
خدمة العملاء: 16766
NAHDET MISR PUBLISHING HOUSE

ALADWAA
Gem

2nd PREP
SECOND TERM

2025

NEW HELLO

Final Revision & Exams Booklet

CONTENTS

Part 1 Final Revision 3

1. Vocabulary Revision on Each 2 Units
مراجعة على أهم الكلمات الخاصة بكل وحدتين

2. Language Revision on Each 2 Units
مراجعة على أهم القواعد الخاصة بكل وحدتين

3. Skills Revision on Each 2 Units
- Speaking Skills مراجعة على أهم مهارات التحدث
- Writing Skills مراجعة على أهم مهارات الكتابة

4. Al-Adwaa Monthly Models on Each 2 Units
نماذج الأضواء الشهرية على كل وحدتين

Part 2 SB & WB General Exercises 22

1. SB & WB General Exercises
مجموعة مختارة من أهم الأسئلة فى كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات

2. End of Term Practice اختبار نهاية الفصل الدراسى

Part 3 Final Exams & Listening Texts 38

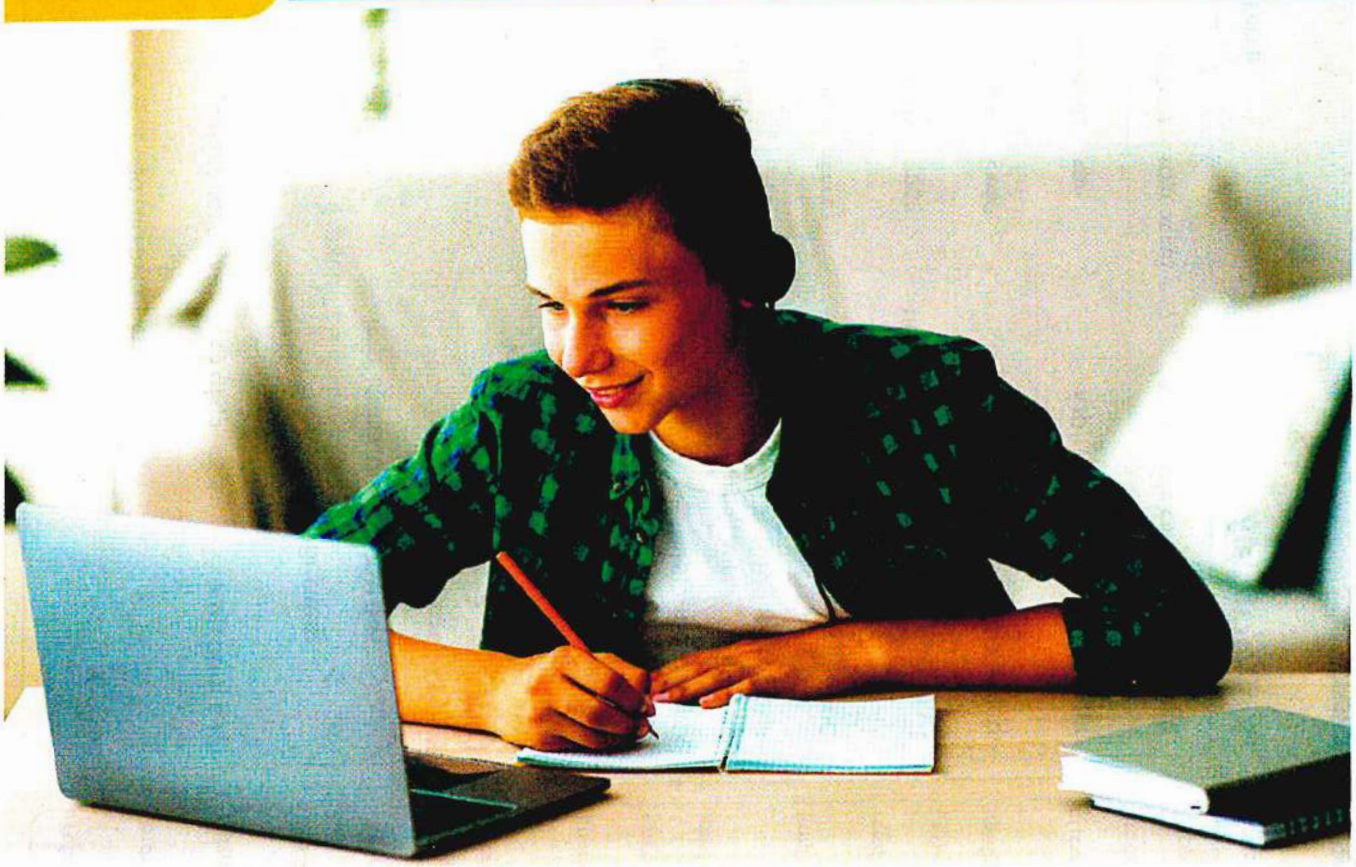
1. 20 Schools & Directorates Exams اختبارات المدارس والإدارات وعددها ٢٠

2. 8 Al-Azhar Exams اختبارات الأزهر وعددها ٨

3. 2 Inclusive Exams اختبارات الدمج وعددها ٢

4. Final Exams Listening Texts نصوص استماع الاختبارات النهائية

Part 1 Final Revision



1 **Vocabulary Revision on Each 2 Units** مراجعة على أهم الكلمات الخاصة بكل وحدتين

2 **Language Revision on Each 2 Units** مراجعة على أهم القواعد الخاصة بكل وحدتين

3 **Skills Revision on Each 2 Units**

- Speaking Skills مراجعة على أهم مهارات التحدث
- Writing Skills مراجعة على أهم مهارات الكتابة

4 **Al-Adwaa Monthly Models on Each 2 Units** نماذج الأضواء الشهرية على كل وحدتين

Units 7 & 8 Vocabulary Revision

Unit 7

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

advice	نصيحة	danger	خطر	lever	رافعة/ عتلة/ مقعد
app	تطبيق	debate	مناظرة	model	نموذج
benefit	فائدة	delivery	توصيل/تسليم	motorbike	دراجة نارية
businesses	أعمال تجارية	expert	خبير	online shopping	التسوق عبر الإنترنت
check (ed)	يراجع/يفحص	explore (d)	يستكشف	pollution	التلوث
clever jacket	سترة ذكية	headache	صداع	push (ed)	يدفع
climate change	التغير المناخى	headphones	سماعات الرأس	robot	إنسان آلى
communicate (d)	يتواصل	hearing	السمع	solar panels	ألواح الطاقة الشمسية
copy (ied)	نسخة/ينسخ	improve (d)	يحسن	take away	يُبعِد/يسلب
damage (d)	يدمر/يضر	invention	اختراع	technology	التكنولوجيا

Language Expressions and Prepositions — التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

agree/disagree with	يتفق/لا يتفق مع	take turns	يتبادل الأدوار
by mistake	عن طريق الخطأ	translate into	يترجم إلى
do the shopping	يقوم بالتسوق	look forward to + inf. + ing	يتطلع إلى
go on holiday	يذهب فى إجازة	worried about	قلق على
make electricity	يصنع/يولد كهرباء	write down	يدون

Unit 8

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

allergic	لديه حساسية	diet	نظام غذائى	reason	سبب
athletics	ألعاب القوى	dry	جاف	relax (ed)	يسترخى
balanced	متوازن	fat	دهون	salty	مالح
beat (with)	يخفق بـ	frying pan	مقلاة	spices	توابل/بهارات
bones	عظام	heat (ed)	يُسَخِّن	spicy	حار/متبل
chop (ped) (into)	يقطع (إلى)	instructions	تعليمات	energy	طاقة
dairy products	منتجات ألبان	popular	محبوب/شعبى/شائع	teenager	مراهق
diagram	رسم تخطيطى/توضيحى	pour (ed) (into)	يصب (فى)	taste (d)	مذاق/ يتذوق

Language Expressions and Prepositions — التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

do	the washing up	يغسل الأطباق	make	an offer	يقدم عرضًا
	drawing/ painting	يقوم بالرسم/بالتلوين		sure	يتأكد
for a long time		لمدة طويلة	revise for exams		يراجع للامتحانات
get	food	يحضر طعامًا	take out of		يخرج من
	ill	يمرض	to conclude = in conclusion		وفى الختام

Unit 7

1 The future with "will" المستقبل

Usage

To talk about future predictions. للتحدث عن التنبؤات المستقبلية. (تنبؤ بدون دليل)

e.g. The new bikes will **be** very useful for travelling.

Form

Subject الفاعل + will ('ll)/ won't + inf. مصدر الفعل

Will + subject + inf.?

e.g. - My team will (won't) **win** the next match.
- Will you **visit** your grandparents tomorrow?

لاحظ: عند التعبير عن القدرة على عمل شيء في المستقبل نستخدم:

Subject + will ('ll) be able to + inf.

e.g. If my mother has more free time, we'll be able to **go** out.

2 If/When إذا/ عندما

Usage

To talk about things in the future which we think will probably happen.

للتحدث عن أشياء في المستقبل نعتقد أنها من المحتمل أن تحدث.

Form

If/When + subject + present simple المضارع البسيط, subject + will/won't + inf.

e.g. If/When everyone shops online, the shops in our towns and cities will close.

3 Giving advice (should) إعطاء النصيحة

Form

Subject + should + inf.	Subject + shouldn't + inf.
e.g. You should **eat** more vegetables.	e.g. Children shouldn't **eat** a lot of sweets.

لاحظ: يمكن استخدام (should) مع (If/When) عند إعطاء نصيحة كالتالي:

If/When + subject + present simple, subject + should/ shouldn't + inf.

e.g. If you see people being horrible online, you should tell your parents.

Unit 8

1 Countable and uncountable nouns الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة

Countable nouns	Uncountable nouns
book - car - man - boy - table - chair	water - rice - salt - sugar - information

a/an

تستخدم (a/an) مع الاسم المعدود في حالة المفرد.

- (an) قبل الاسم الذي يبدأ بصوت متحرك (a - e - i - o - u).

e.g. Mum, I want an egg, please.

- (a) قبل الاسم الذي يبدأ بصوت ساكن (باقي الحروف).

e.g. My father bought a new car yesterday.

some & any بعض/أي

- (some) (بعض) تأتي مع الاسم الجمع والاسم غير المعدود (كمية) في حالة الإثبات.

e.g. We sometimes eat sfenj with some **tea**.

- لاحظ: يمكن استخدام (some) مع حالة العرض أو الطلب.
- (any) (أي) تأتي مع الاسم الجمع والاسم غير المعدود (كمية) في حالة السؤال والنفي.

e.g. I don't put any salt on salad. - Are there any eggs in the fridge?

2 like/would like يحب/ يود أن

(1) Subject الفاعل + like/likes + (n. اسم/inf. + ing/to + inf. مصدر الفعل) (يحب)

e.g. - I **like** orange juice. - Sally **likes** playing computer games.

(2) Subject + would ('d) like + (n./to + inf.) (يود/يريد أن)

e.g. - I'd like **some beans**, please. - We'd like **to have** meatballs.

3 Imperatives صيغة الأمر

- تبدأ جملة الأمر بالفعل في المصدر ولا يوجد فاعل للجملة وينفى بكلمة Don't ثم مصدر الفعل.

e.g. - Chop the tomatoes! - Don't add too much salt!

4 enough/ too many/ too much

enough/ not enough + جمع/كمية (كاف/ غير كاف)

e.g. There are enough chairs for everybody to sit. - He doesn't do enough exercise.

too many + جمع (كثيرًا جدًا أكثر من اللازم)

e.g. There are too many people on the bus. I'll take the next one.

too much + كمية (كثيرًا جدًا أكثر من اللازم)

e.g. There is too much sugar in the tea. I can't drink it.

Units 7 & 8 Skills Revision

1. Speaking

Unit 7

Discussing new technology

مناقشة التكنولوجيا الحديثة

What types of technology do you use every day?
ما أنواع التكنولوجيا التى تستخدمها كل يوم؟

I often use my mobile phone, laptop and the headphones.
أستخدم الهاتف المحمول واللاب توب وسماعات الأذن.

What do you use them for? فيم تستخدمها؟

I use them to log on to the internet and for music.
أستخدمها للدخول على الإنترنت وللموسيقى.

Unit 8

Offering, accepting and refusing food

عرض وقبول ورفض الطعام

Would you like a sandwich? هل تود ساندوتش؟

Thank you, but I'm really full. شكرًا، ولكننى حقًا ممتلئ.

Do you like coffee? هل تحب القهوة؟

No, I don't. I prefer tea. لا. أنا أفضل الشاى.

Do you like a little salt on your chips?
هل تحب القليل من الملح على الشيبسى؟

Yes, please. نعم، من فضلك.

2. Write it right

Unit 7

How to write about online shopping كيفية الكتابة عن التسوق عبر الإنترنت

From : karim@student.com
To : maged@student.com
Subject : Online shopping
Dear Maged,

How are you and your family? I want to tell you about online shopping. Some people prefer shopping online, but others don't. Most people think that online shopping is great. It saves time. People don't need to spend lots of time travelling to the shops. They have more choices online. If more people shop online, there will be fewer cars on the road and less pollution. On the other hand, other people don't like online shopping. They prefer going to real shops. At a shop, they can see what they are buying and they can try it first. They think that if everyone shops online, many shops will close. If they close, then lots of other businesses like cafés will close, too. Do you have any experience with online shopping?

Best wishes, **Karim**

Unit 8

How to write about a healthy diet كيفية الكتابة عن نظام غذائى

A healthy diet

I live in a village. I like it very much. The air here is very clean. In my village, the food is very healthy. To start with, people in my village eat a lot of fruit and vegetables, which are very healthy. They eat a lot of eggs, nuts and fish. These have a lot of protein. They are all healthy. Another important point is that they eat dairy products that make their bones strong. Furthermore, they get enough sleep. They sleep early and get up early. That's why all the people in my village are healthy. To conclude, everyone should have a healthy diet to live a longer, healthier life.

Monthly Models on Units 7 & 8

Model 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There's a/an ..... on this phone which tells me the weather in my city. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) app b) screen c) battery d) charge
2. Tourists visit Egypt because it is famous ..... its ancient art. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) by b) for c) of d) at
3. I am sorry I took your pen ..... mistake. أسيوط ٢٠٢٢
   a) by b) in c) for d) from
4. We see pictures on the TV ..... . الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) pictures b) hard c) screen d) disc
5. My brother is ..... to spicy food, so he must be careful about what he eats. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) healthy b) diary c) amazed d) allergic
6. We cook chicken in the ..... . بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) over b) oven c) offer d) often
7. To be healthy, you have to ..... well. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣
   a) sleep b) play c) study d) fry
8. There are too ..... people at the station, so it's crowded. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) few b) much c) a lot d) many
9. I like eating fruits because it doesn't have ..... fat. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) many b) some c) any d) a lot
10. What should I do if I ..... a problem with my friends? سوهاج ٢٠٢٢
    a) had b) has c) will have d) have

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If she is ill, she should ..... (goes) to a doctor. القربية ٢٠٢٢
2. The boy has ..... (few) money. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
3. There is ..... (any) rice in the fridge. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣
4. They don't have ..... (some) books. They have a few. دمياط ٢٠٢٢
5. Mum, can I have ..... (a) orange after eating my lunch?

Model 2

1 Complete the following dialogue:

القليوبية ٢٠٢١

Amal is talking to Soha about food.

Amal : Can I ask you some questions about food?
Soha : (1) ..... .
Amal : What is your favourite food?
Soha : (2) ..... .
Amal : Why do you like fish?
Soha : (3) ..... .
Amal : (4) .....?
Soha : We need energy to be able to do many things.
Amal : (5) .....?
Soha : We should eat healthy food to keep healthy.

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

أسيوط ٢٠٢٢

Social media has become an important part of our daily lives. We use it to communicate with friends, share our ideas and photos, and know the latest news. However, using too much social media can also have negative effects on our mental and physical health. For example, spending too much time on social media can make you feel worried and lonely. **It** can also cause us to have **poor** sleep habits, eye problems and problems with our back. It's important to be careful of how much time we spend on social media and to take breaks when necessary. We shouldn't be addicted to social media or any technology. By doing so, we can enjoy the benefits of social media without hurting ourselves.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Spending too much time on social media can make you ..... to it.
   a) happy b) worried c) famous d) addicted
2. The underlined word "**poor**" in the passage means ..... .
   a) bad b) rich c) good d) strong

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage?
   .....
4. What does the underlined pronoun "**It**" refer to?
   .....
5. How do you think we can enjoy the benefits of social media without harming ourselves? .....
6. How do you feel when you spend a lot of time on social media?
   .....

Model 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My brother bought new ..... to listen to music. البحيرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) gloves b) trousers c) helmets d) headphones
2. Learning a foreign language is a great way to ..... other cultures. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
   a) become b) explore c) work d) pay
3. Falafel is really ..... and it is very popular in Egypt. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
   a) horrible b) terrible c) bad d) delicious
4. In restaurants, waiters usually ..... the food for customers. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
   a) try b) pour c) serve d) fry
5. I think the headphones ..... very useful for travelling. بورسعيد ٢٠٢٢
   a) be b) would be c) will be d) are going to be
6. Can I have some sugar, please? There is ..... in this tea. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
   a) too much b) too many c) a few d) not enough

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. You should ..... (brushed) your teeth every day. الجيزة ٢٠٢٢
2. If you ..... (had) a headache, you should take medicine.
3. They like ..... (a little) olives on the pizza. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٢
4. **A:** ..... (are) you like a cup of tea? **B:** Yes, please. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣

3 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Positive and negative sides of technology" أسيوط ٢٠٢٣

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Units 9 & 10 Vocabulary Revision

Unit 9

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

act (ed)	يمثل	deaf	أصم	request (ed)	يطلب/طلب
action	حدث/أداء	disabled	معاق	review	نقد
actor/actress	ممثل/ممثلة	escape (d)	يهرب	scary	مخيف
adventure	مغامرة	invitation	دعوة	scenery	منظر طبيعى
art	فن	musical instrument	آلة موسيقية	script	نص كتابى/سيناريو
artist	فنان	offer (ed)	يعرض	sculpture	النحت
blind	أعمى	play (ed)	يعزف/مسرحية	statue	تمثال
concert hall	قاعة حفلات موسيقية	portrait	صورة فنية للوجه	theme park	متنزه/مدينة ترفيهية

Language Expressions and Prepositions — التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

do > calligraphy	يؤدى فن حسن الخط	paint scenery	يرسم منظرًا طبيعيًا
do > make-up	يقوم بوضع مكياج	make > notes	يدون ملاحظات
get ready for	يستعد لـ	make > pottery/sculptures	يصنع الفخار/المنحوتات
have difficulties	لديه صعوبات	sew costumes	يخيط أزياء
help with	يساعد فى	write a script	يكتب نصًا/سيناريو

Unit 10

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

advert	إعلان	earrings	حلق/قرط	luxury	فخم/ترف
belt	حزام	fit (ted)	يناسب/يلائم	metal	المعدن
casual	ملابس غير رسمية/كاجوال	government	الحكومة	necklace	قلادة/عقد
changing room	غرفة تغيير الملابس	climate	مناخ	scarf	وشاح/طرحة
chest of drawers	خزانة ذات أدراج	industry	صناعة	soil	تربة زراعية
chemicals	مواد كيميائية	jewellery	مجوهرات	striped	مقلم/مخطط
comfortable	مريح	leather	الجلد	teenager	مراهق
crops	محاصيل	linen	الكتان	trainers	حذاء رياضى
customer	زبون	loose	واسع/فضفاض	wedding	حفل زفاف

Language Expressions and Prepositions — التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

by the Nile	بجوار النيل	look for	يبحث عن
care about	يهتم بـ	on a special occasion	فى مناسبة خاصة
do a job/sport	يؤدى وظيفة/ يمارس رياضة	protect from	يحمى من
get married	يتزوج	try on	يقيس

Unit 9

Ability القدرة

Usage

للتعبير عن القدرة فى المستقبل نستخدم can/ (be) able to/ know how to

Form

1 can يستطيع

Subject الفاعل + **can** + **inf.** مصدر الفعل

e.g. - I can **paint** scenery. - Sama can **play** chess.

Subject + cannot (can't) + inf.

e.g. - My sister can't **do** make-up. - They can't **play** the piano.

Can + subject + inf.?

e.g. **A:** Can you **swim** in the sea? **B:** Yes, I can./ **B:** No, I can't.

2 (be) able to قادر على

Subject الفاعل + **am/is/are + able to + inf.** مصدر الفعل

e.g. - I am able to **send** an email. - She is able to **sew** clothes.

Subject + am not/isn't/aren't + able to + inf.

e.g. - I am not able to **do** sport. - They aren't able to **do** calligraphy.

Am/Is/Are + subject + able to + inf.?

e.g. - **A:** Is your brother able to **ride** a bike? **B:** No, he isn't.
- **A:** Are you able to **sew** your clothes? **B:** Yes, I am.

3 know/ knows how to يعرف كيف

Subject الفاعل + **(know/ knows) + how to + inf.** مصدر الفعل

e.g. - I know how to **paint** scenery.
- Mayar knows how to **write** a script.

Subject + (don't/doesn't) know + how to + inf.

e.g. - They don't know how to **play** instruments.
- He doesn't know how to **write** an email.

Do/Does + subject + know how to + inf.?

e.g. - **A:** Do you know how to **paint** scenery? **B:** No, I don't.
- **A:** Does your father know how to **drive** a car? **B:** Yes, he does.

Unit 10

1 Adjectives order ترتيب الصفات

- **Use more than one adjective in this order. Do not use more than three or four adjectives.**
- استخدم أكثر من صفة فى هذا الترتيب. لا تستخدم أكثر من ثلاث أو أربع صفات.

Description وصف/ **Opinion** رأى	pretty/ colourful/ beautiful
Size حجم	big/ loose/ small
Shape الشكل	long/ short/ tall/ thin
Age العمر	old/ new/ young/ ancient
Colour اللون	green/ white/ black/ blue
Pattern النمط	striped/ plain
Origin المنشأ	Japanese/ Egyptian/ French
Material المادة	cotton/ linen/ leather/ wool
Noun الشىء	dress/ clothes/ galabeya/ necklace

e.g. - It's a beautiful, blue skirt.
- Mr and Mrs Osman live in a big, old, traditional flat in Aswan.

2 Demonstratives (this/ that/ these/ those)

This اسم إشارة للمفرد القريب	e.g. This is the best **concert** I went to.
That اسم إشارة للمفرد البعيد	e.g. That **café** looks good.
These اسم إشارة للجمع القريب	e.g. These two **people** are my neighbours.
Those اسم إشارة للجمع البعيد	e.g. Those are my **keys**.

3 one/ones

Use one (singular) or ones (plural) to replace nouns in a sentence.

نستخدم (one) (مع المفرد) أو (ones) (مع الجمع) لاستبدال الأسماء فى الجملة.

نضع (one, ones) كالتالى:

١- بعد الصفة:

e.g. - Look at those two girls? Hend is the tall one and Huda is the short one.
- My trousers are old. I need some new ones.

٢- بعد (the):

e.g. - Look at those two girls? Helen is the one on the left.
- Show me the photographs – the ones you took in Paris.

٣- بعد (Which):

e.g. - You can borrow a book. Which one do you want?
- There are different books. Which ones are yours?

٤- بعد (this - these - that - those):

e.g. - This cookie looks nice, but that one looks delicious.

Units 9 & 10 Skills Revision

1. Speaking

Unit 9

1. Expressions of giving an opinion: تعبيرات إعطاء الرأى
- From my point of view, the artists were really good.
- I thought the cartoons were also really cool!

2. Expressions of preference: تعبيرات التفضيل
- My favourite thing in the museum was a painting called Al Madina.
- The best thing about the museum is that it is free to visit!

3. Expressions of giving a recommendation: تعبيرات إعطاء التوصية
- I recommend looking at the clothes from other countries.

4. Invitation: الدعوة
A: Would you like to play table tennis? **B:** Yes, please. / **B:** No, thanks.

5. Offer: العرض
A: Shall I bring some table tennis balls? **B:** No, he's got those. / **B:** Yes, please.

6. Request: الطلب
A: Could you bring some food? **B:** Of course, I'll bring some sandwiches.

Unit 10

Shopping for clothes التسوق من أجل شراء الملابس

What type of jacket would you like? أى نوع من «الجاكيت» تريد؟

I'd like something loose but smart. أريد «جاكيت» فضفاضًا ولكن أنيقًا.

Could I try on the black one? هل يمكن أن أقيس الجاكيت الأسود؟

Of course. The changing room is there. بالطبع. غرفة تغيير الملابس هناك.

It fits me perfectly. I'll take it. إنه يناسبنى تمامًا. سوف أشتريه.

2. Write it right

Unit 9

How to write about a person you're proud of

كيفية الكتابة عن شخص تفخر به

A person I am proud of

Of all my family, my mother is the person I am most proud of. She is in her forties. She looks much younger than her age, with short hair and a beautiful face. At work, she is respected and admired by all of her friends. Furthermore, she is a very good cook. She often spends her free time cooking delicious dishes for us, which makes everyone in my family happy. What's more, my mother is an excellent adviser. She often gives me suggestions and a lot of advice to help me with my problems. She is not only my mother, but she is also my good example to follow. For all these reasons, I always love and take pride in my mother.

Unit 10

How to write about Egyptian linen and cotton

كيفية الكتابة عن القطن والكتان المصرى

Egyptian linen and cotton

Egypt is famous for growing crops to make material. The Ancient Egyptians grew plants by the Nile to make linen. They used it to make clothes. Today, Egyptian cotton is famous all over the world because it is very good. The climate and soil in Egypt are perfect for growing cotton. It is often used to make luxury clothes and things for homes. There are a lot of people working in the cotton industry. They still use water from the Nile for the crops. Cotton uses a lot of water and chemicals to grow. However, the government is trying to help farmers to protect the environment and use less water.

Monthly Models on Units 9 & 10

Model 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The ..... which the actors are wearing are wonderful. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
   a) costumes b) instruments c) customs d) scenes
2. You don't have to pay for this pen. It's ..... . المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) busy b) expensive c) cheap d) free
3. I'm very ..... of my little brother. He always comes first. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) proud b) happy c) interested d) bored
4. To ..... means to leave a place that you should stay in. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) paint b) escape c) sew d) review
5. I cover my bed with a nice ..... made of linen. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
   a) scarf b) belt c) skirt d) sheet
6. "....." means a business making things to sell. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
   a) Crop b) Industry c) Cotton d) Linen
7. I skipped the ..... before watching the video on YouTube.
   a) advert b) climate c) style d) occasion
8. Do you know how ..... a computer? السويس ٢٠٢٣
   a) to use b) use c) using d) uses
9. You ..... enter the room without a security pass.
   a) not able to b) don't know how c) can't d) aren't able
10. Look at these shorts. Which ..... do you like more? القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
    a) one b) ones c) one's d) ones'

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Dalia can ..... (doing) make-up very well. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
2. ..... (Can) Sameh able to do his homework alone?
3. Mariam doesn't know how ..... (write) an email. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
4. These trainers are much better than the ..... (one) I had before. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
5. These are ..... (plastic/cheap/black) sunglasses. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣

Model 2

1 Complete the following dialogue: الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣

Nour is buying a loose, blue dress for a special occasion.

Shopkeeper : Hello! Can I help you?
Nour : (1)..... .
Shopkeeper : What size would you like?
Nour : (2)..... .
Shopkeeper : (3).....?
Nour : I'd like it blue.
Shopkeeper : Here it is.
Nour : (4).....?
Shopkeeper : Of course, the changing room is here.
Nour : (5)....., I'll take it.

2 Read the following, then answer the questions: القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

The Al Nour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra is a very special musical group from Egypt. They are a group of good musicians who play beautiful music together. What makes this orchestra special is that all of the musicians are women, and many of them are blind or have difficulty seeing. They play different instruments like the violin, cello and piano. The orchestra has been ***performing*** for a long time, practising their music and learning new songs. **They** have even travelled to different countries to share their music with people around the world. The Al Nour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra shows us that anyone can follow their dreams and do something amazing, no matter what difficulties they may meet.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They travelled to ..... countries to play their music.
   a) no b) many c) very few d) two
2. The word "***performing***" can be the same meaning as ..... .
   a) eating b) crying c) travelling d) playing

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage? .....
4. What does the underlined pronoun "**They**" refer to? .....
5. What do you think makes this orchestra special? .....
6. What can we learn from the story of the Al Nour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra?
   .....

Model 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I went to a theme ..... and rode the big wheel. It was exciting. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) bark b) park c) break d) brake
2. We ..... all our plastic to use again. بورسعيد ٢٠٢٢
   a) burn b) explore c) throw d) recycle
3. The shops are very busy today. There are too many ..... . القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
   a) assistants b) shopkeepers c) customers d) sellers
4. I wear smart clothes in special ..... like wedding parties. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
   a) customers b) occasions c) daughter d) lives
5. Do you know how ..... this bike? العربية ٢٠٢٣
   a) to ride b) riding c) ride d) to riding
6. My uncle wore a ..... tie in the party. سوهاج ٢٠٢٢
   a) wool, blue, nice b) nice, wool, blue
   c) blue, nice, wool d) nice, blue, wool

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My mother can ..... (making) a cake. الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢
2. Magda ..... (able) play tennis. دمياط ٢٠٢٢
3. I like this ..... (cotton/red/smart) T-shirt. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
4. This book is the only ..... (ones) that I prefer. أسيوط ٢٠٢٢

3 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on: دمياط ٢٠٢٣

"A visit to a museum"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Units 11 & 12 Vocabulary Revision

Unit 11

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

bungee jumping القفز بالحبل المطاطى	melt (ed) ينصهر	snorkelling السباحة بأنبوبة تنفس
conservation الحفاظ على	ocean محيط	star gazing النظر للنجوم
decay (ed) يتحلل/يتعفن	recycle (d) يعيد تدوير/تصنيع	suitcase حقيبة سفر
drone طائرة بدون طيار	reduce (d) يقلل	system نظام
flood (ed) يفيض/فيضان	reuse (d) يعيد استخدام	temple معبد
fortress قلعة/حصن	rock climbing تسلق الصخور	traffic حركة المرور
hot-air ballooning ركوب المنطاد	ruins أطلال	volunteer متطوع
location موقع	sandboarding التزلج على الرمال	wind turbines توربينات الرياح

Language Expressions and Prepositions — التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

drive across يقود عبر	make arrangements يتخذ ترتيبات
get off ينزل	pick up rubbish يلتقط القمامة
go trekking يذهب للترحال	save wildlife ينقذ الحياة البرية
irrigate the land يروى الأرض	take part in يشارك فى
look after يهتم بـ/يعتنى بـ	work on a project يعمل فى مشروع

Unit 12

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

advantages مميزات	eye contact الاتصال بالعين	learning التعلم
body language لغة الجسد	field ملعب/حقل	manager مدير
communication تواصل	free time وقت الفراغ	multilingual متعدد اللغات
community مجتمع	home language اللغة الأم	national قومى/وطنى
connect to يوصل بـ	instructions تعليمات	organised منظم
dialect لهجة/لغة بلد ما	international دولى/عالمى	proud فخور
directions اتجاهات	laboratory = lab معمل	summarise (d) يلخص
discuss (ed) يناقش	learner المتعلم	summary ملخص

Language Expressions and Prepositions — التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

achieve my dreams أحقق أحلامى	give identities يعطى الهويات
communicate with يتواصل مع	look in a dictionary يبحث فى القاموس
disappointed with محبَط من	make a noise تحدث ضوضاء/ضجة
do > an experiment يقوم بعمل تجربة	proud of فخور بـ
do > research يقوم ببحث	write down يدون

Unit 11

(Be) going to & The present continuous tense

يمكن استخدام (The present continuous tense) و(Be going to) للتعبير عن المستقبل ولكن هناك فرق فى الاستخدام، سيتم توضيحه من خلال الجدول التالى:

Usage

(Be) going to	The present continuous tense
- تستخدم للتعبير عن نية أو قصد لفعل شىء فى المستقبل تم التخطيط له. e.g. - I am going to **visit** my uncle. I **intend** to do that.	- يستخدم للخطط والترتيبات المستقبلية، غالبًا مع الوقت والتاريخ (الشىء المرتب له مسبقًا). e.g. - We're catching our train at 12:30 tomorrow.
- تستخدم لعمل تنبؤات حول المستقبل بناء على ما يمكننا رؤيته أو معرفته تنبؤ بدليل. e.g. - I can **see some dark clouds**. It is going to **rain**.	

هيا نتذكر تكوين كل منهم:

Form

1. (Be) going to:

Subject الفاعل + **am/is/are** + **(not)** + **going to** + **inf.** مصدر الفعل

e.g. - They're going to **travel** to Alexandria. They aren't going to **travel** to Luxor.

Am/Is/Are + **subject** + **going to** + **inf.** ...?

e.g. - Is your sister going to **get** married tomorrow?

Q. Word + **am/is/are** + **subject** + **going to** + **inf.** ...?

e.g. - What are you going to **do**?

2. The present continuous tense:

Subject الفاعل + **am/is/are** + **(not)** + **inf.** + **ing**

e.g. - He is meeting his aunt at the airport at 9:00 tomorrow.

Am/Is/Are + **subject** + **inf.** + **ing** ...?

e.g. - Are they visiting their aunt the day after tomorrow?

Q. Word + **am/is/are** + **subject** + **inf.** + **ing** ...?

e.g. - Where is Nader travelling next week?

Unit 12

1 The present simple tense زمن المضارع البسيط

I, You, We, They, اسم جمع + **inf.** مصدر الفعل / (don't + inf.)

e.g. - We walk to school every day. - We don't go to school on Friday.

He, She, It, اسم مفرد + **(inf. + s, es, ies)** / (doesn't + inf.)

e.g. - My uncle lives in the USA. - She doesn't like meat.

2 The present continuous tense زمن المضارع المستمر

Subject الفاعل + am/is/are + **(not)** + **inf.** + **ing**

e.g. - I'm emailing him today. - Manal isn't drawing a picture now.

- They are playing chess at the moment.

3 The past simple tense زمن الماضى البسيط

Subject + التصريف الثانى للفعل / (didn't + inf.)

e.g. - Ahmed played tennis yesterday. - I didn't visit my grandparents last week.

4 used to اعتاد أن

Subject + used to/ didn't use to + **inf.**

e.g. - When I was young, I used to/ didn't use to **ride** a bike.

5 The past continuous tense زمن الماضى المستمر

Subject + was/were + **(not)** + **inf.** + **ing**

e.g. - I was studying yesterday evening. - The boys were playing all day yesterday.

6 The future simple tense زمن المستقبل البسيط

Subject + will ('ll)/ won't + **inf.**

e.g. - I think it will be **hard** but fun at university. I won't be bored.

7 (be) going to (be) going to المستقبل مع

Subject + am/is/are + **(not)** + going to + **inf.**

e.g. - I'm going to help my father. - They're going to buy a new car.

Units 11 & 12

Skills Revision

1. Speaking

Unit 11

Making predictions and future plans عمل تنبؤات وخطط مستقبلية

What are you going to do at the weekend?
ماذا سوف تفعل فى العطلة الأسبوعية؟

I'm going to visit my grandparents. سوف أزور أجدادى.

Where are you going to go for your next holiday?
أين ستذهب فى إجازتك القادمة؟

I'm going to go to Alexandria. سأذهب إلى الإسكندرية.

Are you going to recycle your mobile phone when it's old?
هل ستقوم بإعادة تصنيع هاتفك عندما يصبح قديمًا؟

Sure. I'm going to reuse old parts from it to repair other phones.
بالتأكيد. سوف أقوم بإعادة استخدام أجزاء منه لإصلاح هواتف أخرى.

Unit 12

Talking about learning styles التحدث عن أساليب التعلم

What type of learning would you like to do more?
ما نوع التعلم الذى تود أن تؤديه بشكل أكبر؟

I learn best by doing things.
أتعلم بشكل أفضل عن طريق فعل الأشياء. (التعلم العملى)

What type of learning would you like to do less?
ما نوع التعلم الذى تود أن تؤديه بشكل أقل؟

I learn less by listening. أتعلم بشكل أقل عن طريق الاستماع.

How do you prefer to learn? كيف تفضل أن تتعلم؟

I like to learn in different ways. I don't like always doing the same thing. أحب أن أتعلم بطرق مختلفة. لا أحب عمل نفس الشىء دائمًا.

2. Write it right

Unit 11

How to help the environment كيفية مساعدة البيئة

Helping the environment

Our natural environment gives us everything that we need. We get air, water, food and many other things from the environment. We can save the environment by making sure that we take care of nature. We should save water. Water is very important in our environment, so we should never pollute it. We can recycle many things instead of throwing them away. Trees are good for the environment and help reduce air pollution. We should plant more trees. This will help to improve the size of natural habitats for animals. We should teach our children to look after the environment.

Unit 12

How to write about the importance of learning many languages
كيفية الكتابة عن أهمية تعلم عدة لغات

From : alyaa@gmail.com
To : hana@gmail.com
Subject : The importance of learning many languages

Dear Hana,

How are you and your family? I'm writing this email to tell you about the importance of learning many languages. Learning other languages is a form of communicating with other nations because we never understand other countries without knowing their languages. There are many reasons why learning a new language is a good idea. It helps you to communicate with new people. It helps you to see things from a different view or understand other cultures. It helps you to become a better listener. It helps you to understand both your home and the world better. It also gives people different identities. It connects you to an international community.

Yours,
Alyaa

Monthly Models on Units 11 & 12

Model 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The ..... caught a lot of animals from the forest. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
   a) fisherman b) hunter c) writer d) vets
2. Many cars on the road cause more ..... . بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) storms b) pollution c) earthquakes d) floods
3. My cousin goes ..... around the coral reefs. البحيرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) diving b) driving c) riding d) cycling
4. ..... is more enjoyable when the sky is clear and free of clouds.
   a) Bungee jumping b) Sandboarding c) Horse riding d) Star gazing
5. The teacher asked us to give a/an ..... of the chapter we read for homework.
   a) presentation b) action c) summary d) introduction
6. Body ..... means the way you move your body. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) language b) built c) lantern d) balance
7. Mona used to ..... sports when she was young. دمياط ٢٠٢٢
   a) make b) do c) take d) go
8. I'm ..... the dentist at 1 o'clock next Tuesday. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) visits b) visiting c) to visit d) visited
9. I am ..... to travel to Aswan. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) go b) goes c) going d) went
10. Where did you ..... when you were young? الأقصر ٢٠٢٣
    a) used to play b) use to play
    c) used to playing d) use to be played

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I ..... (watch) a movie at the cinema tonight. I have booked the tickets.
2. At the moment, I ..... (stay) at a small hotel near the lake. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
3. I ..... (going) sweep the floor. I intend to do that. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
4. Are you ..... (going/buy) another car? أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
5. In the future, it ..... (be) possible to travel into space. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

Model 2

1 Complete the following dialogue: أسيوط ٢٠٢٢

Hana is travelling to the USA to take a summer holiday course.

Nayera : What are you going to do during the summer holiday?
Hana : (1)..... .
Nayera : (2).....?
Hana : To take a summer holiday course.
Nayera : (3).....?
Hana : I am going to stay for two months.
Nayera : When are you going to travel?
Hana : (4)..... .
Nayera : Could you send me photos when you are there?
Hana : (5)..... .

2 Read the following, then answer the questions: الغربية ٢٠٢٢

Keeping the environment clean is important for everyone who lives on the earth. Man has invented a lot of useful things that serve all people, but at the same time, they are harmful to the environment. Cars are useful because they carry us from place to place but **they**'re harmful to the environment because they give out the burning fuel which causes pollution to the air, man, and animals.

Factories make things for people and for the country as they help increase the country's money. But there are some factories that throw their waste and rubbish in the water, and this kills huge numbers of fish, too. We should plant more trees and stop cutting them down because trees are a source of life as they give out oxygen and **take in** carbon dioxide.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of the passage is ..... .
   a) saving the oxygen b) saving the factories
   c) saving the trees d) saving the environment
2. The underlined verb "**take in**" means ..... .
   a) give b) breathe c) make d) plant

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Why do you think cars are harmful to the environment? .....
4. Where do some factories throw their waste and rubbish? .....
5. What does the underlined pronoun "**they**" refer to? .....
6. What can people do to help protect the environment and keep it clean?
   .....

Model 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Many schools teach children how to ..... materials for arts and crafts projects.
   a) reuse b) reduce c) turn d) save
2. Children should ..... eating sweets because they are unhealthy. الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢
   a) encourage b) increase c) reduce d) suggest
3. The coach ..... the new strategy to the team.
   a) steal b) refuse c) paint d) explain
4. We did a fun science experiment in the ..... today.
   a) library b) factory c) workshop d) laboratory
5. Next Friday, we ..... the great show at the school hall. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
   a) are watching b) watch c) watches d) watched
6. When ..... you celebrate your birthday this year? المنيا ٢٠٢٣
   a) will b) are c) have d) are being

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Maggi ..... (play) nice music now. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
2. Why don't you ..... (wearing) this nice scarf? البحيرة ٢٠٢٢
3. I think people will all ..... (used) electric cars. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
4. Look! It ..... (rain), so we can't go to the beach. دمياط ٢٠٢٢

3 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Your future plans for a holiday"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Part 2 SB & WB General Exercises



1 **SB & WB General Exercises**

مجموعة مختارة من أهم الأسئلة فى كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات.

2 **End of Term Practice**

- اختبار نهاية الفصل الدراسى.

Unit 7

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. When these headphones hear another language, they can ..... it into your language.
   a) push **b)** make **c)** translate **d)** invent
2. This invention can ..... you into the air at the speed of a fast car!
   a) invent **b)** translate **c)** pull **d)** push
3. ..... are like planes, but they do not have wings!
   a) Helicopters **b)** Motorbikes
   c) Drains **d)** Headphones
4. Some people think that online shopping ..... time and money.
   a) saves **b)** uses **c)** spends **d)** protects
5. I think I am ..... to my phone!
   a) pleased **b)** advised **c)** addicted **d)** admired
6. To do something ..... means without planning or wanting to do this.
   a) by heart **b)** by sight **c)** by hand **d)** by mistake
7. Our friends sent us some photos on ..... media.
   a) website **b)** mass **c)** mobile **d)** social
8. The door was very heavy, so we had to ..... it open.
   a) explore **b)** pull **c)** pick **d)** drop
9. That new hotel looks ..... . I really don't like it.
   a) nice **b)** beautiful **c)** amazing **d)** horrible
10. It's not a good ..... to play games late at night.
    a) thought **b)** idea **c)** view **d)** review
11. I think people will visit other planets one day, but it is ..... to go to the sun.
    a) likely **b)** probable **c)** possible **d)** impossible
12. The road is not big enough for cars, but you can go down it on a/an ..... .
    a) motorbike **b)** invitation **c)** app **d)** tool
13. We all ..... the choice to either do online shopping or go to shops.
    a) spend **b)** use **c)** make **d)** have
14. I spend hours watching videos online and now I have ..... .
    a) a headache **b)** headphones **c)** a jacket **d)** a toothache

Language

15. If I help my mother at the weekend, she'll ..... more free time.
a) have **b)** having **c)** had **d)** has

16. I will use the internet ..... I'm free.
a) when **b)** before **c)** after **d)** unless

17. If I ..... all my exams, I'll be happy.
a) pass **b)** passes **c)** will pass **d)** passed

18. Who will I talk to if I ..... anyone at the school?
a) weren't knowing **b)** aren't knowing
c) won't know **d)** don't know

19. People who are addicted to eating sweets ..... try eating fruit instead.
a) should **b)** shouldn't **c)** will **d)** won't

20. We won't go to the beach this weekend if it ..... very windy.
a) is **b)** will be **c)** was **d)** should be

21. What ..... eat if I don't like the food?
a) will I **b)** I will **c)** do I **d)** I do

22. You ..... a parent or teacher if you feel worried about something.
a) are telling **b)** tell **c)** will tell **d)** should tell

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The machine won't ..... (able/fly) very high.
2. I hope they ..... (build) lots of these in Egypt.
3. If I go to the shops, I ..... (spend) a lot of money.
4. Mona will look online for a new phone when she ..... (get) home.
5. If you see people being horrible online, you ..... (tell) your parents.
6. I predict that the weather ..... (not/get) hotter in the future.
7. If we want to stop climate change, we ..... (reduce) pollution.
8. If you ..... (be) worried about something online, you should tell someone.
9. I think that there ..... (not/be) many corrections in my English homework.
10. What will the teacher say if I ..... (not/understand) the lesson?
11. Who ..... (meet) me at the airport if the plane's late?

Unit 8

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. Sfenj has lots of fat and sugar in it and it is very ..... .
   a) sweet **b)** hot **c)** salty **d)** spicy
2. Rojak is very sweet and ..... .
   a) salty **b)** juicy **c)** hot **d)** spicy
3. I don't put any salt on mine because I don't like ..... food.
   a) salty **b)** juicy **c)** hot **d)** spicy
4. To have ..... means having something that gives you the power to do things.
   a) energy **b)** sleep **c)** heat **d)** sugar
5. If you want to be ....., you should eat some of all types of food.
   a) sick **b)** ill **c)** healthy **d)** unhealthy
6. People need to eat one to two pieces of ..... fruit and vegetables every day.
   a) fresh **b)** old **c)** decayed **d)** damaged
7. We call foods that are made from milk dairy ..... .
   a) products **b)** exports **c)** goods **d)** ingredients
8. Do you prefer to boil or ..... your eggs?
   a) fry **b)** pour **c)** heat **d)** stir
9. Meat, fish and eggs all have ..... in them.
   a) protein **b)** sugar **c)** fat **d)** sweet
10. Heat some butter in a/an ..... pan.
    a) boiling **b)** frying **c)** heating **d)** adding
11. A ..... can be green, red or yellow.
    a) diet **b)** Japan **c)** pepper **d)** spinach
12. ..... some lemon juice over the hot beans.
    a) Beat **b)** Pour **c)** Chop **d)** Stir
13. Use a knife to ..... the vegetables.
    a) chop **b)** stir **c)** pour **d)** heat
14. I think that fried chicken ..... really good.
    a) tastes **b)** sees **c)** touches **d)** hears

15. Tokyo is the biggest ..... in Japan.
a) country b) city c) continent d) village

16. When Tamer is worried, he doesn't ..... hungry.
a) feel b) fall c) fail d) fell

17. Your ..... is the kind of food that you eat every day.
a) pepper b) salt c) diet d) juice

18. A lot of sugar is bad ..... your teeth.
a) for b) at c) to d) with

Language

19. Can I invite ..... friends to our house to watch a film?
a) much b) a little c) a few d) a lot

20. Leila likes ..... milk in her tea, but not very much.
a) many b) a lot of c) a few d) a little

21. My grandmother spends ..... of time cooking in the kitchen. She's often there all day.
a) a little b) a few c) much d) a lot

22. I don't like this soup. There is too ..... salt in it.
a) much b) many c) enough d) few

23. You should never drink sea water because there is ..... salt in it.
a) not enough b) too many c) too much d) a few

24. Can I have some more sugar, please? There is ..... in this tea.
a) too much b) too many c) a few d) not enough

25. Let's go to the beach. There are ..... people there today.
a) too much b) any c) a few d) a little

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. ..... (you/like) some more chicken?
2. What ..... (you/like) for breakfast?
3. **A:** ..... (you/like) a sandwich? **B:** Thank you, but I'm really full.
4. **A:** ..... (you/like) coffee? **B:** No, I don't. I prefer tea.
5. **A:** There are a few grapes left. ..... (you/like) like some? **B:** Yes, please.
6. **A:** ..... (you/like) a little salt on your chips? **B:** No, thank you.
7. **A:** ..... (you/like) some more pudding? **B:** Thank you, but I really couldn't.

Unit 9

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. My dress is damaged, so my mother is ..... it.
   a) acting **b)** sewing **c)** painting **d)** playing
2. The children all wore funny ..... to the family party. Ahmed was a firefighter!
   a) instruments **b)** paintings **c)** customs **d)** costumes
3. Mona can't answer the phone because she is doing her ..... .
   a) make-up **b)** scenery **c)** view **d)** script
4. The ..... is fantastic in the play, you feel like you are in the mountains!
   a) instrument **b)** script **c)** scenery **d)** make-up
5. Which musical ..... can you play?
   a) machines **b)** instruments **c)** costumes **d)** clothes
6. ..... is a funny drawing usually showing people or animals.
   a) Sculpture **b)** Cartoon **c)** Portrait **d)** Painting
7. ..... means without paying money.
   a) Expensive **b)** Cheap **c)** Free **d)** Busy
8. ..... means art made from stone or wood that looks like people, animals or other things.
   a) Cartoon **b)** Portrait **c)** Pottery **d)** Sculpture
9. ..... means things that are made from clay, such as cups and plates.
   a) Cartoon **b)** Portrait **c)** Pottery **d)** Sculpture
10. A ..... person is a person who is not able to hear.
    a) deaf **b)** blind **c)** dwarf **d)** dumb
11. A ..... person is a person who is not able to use parts of the body in the way other people can.
    a) deaf **b)** blind **c)** dwarf **d)** disabled
12. Ramy is proud ..... his sister and gives her a hug.
    a) to **b)** of **c)** on **d)** at
13. Look at those people in the street. I ..... what they are looking at.
    a) wonder **b)** wander **c)** offer **d)** say
14. Lara always gives her grandmother a big ..... when she sees her.
    a) hog **b)** bug **c)** hug **d)** hang

15. ..... means the things that happen in a film.
a) Portrait b) Review c) Scenery d) Action

16. Don't ..... your car outside the school.
a) review b) view c) star d) park

17. There is a great ..... from the top of the tower.
a) review b) view c) star d) park

18. A ..... is the word for a play.
a) view b) scenery c) script d) play

19. ..... is the type of art you need a camera to do.
a) Photography b) Portrait c) Painting d) Calligraphy

20. Jack throws the newspaper ..... .
a) off b) to c) down d) in

Language

21. ..... you like to listen to a famous orchestra on the radio?
a) Will b) Would c) Shall d) Could

22. ..... I bring some cakes or fruit?
a) Have b) Would c) Shall d) Do

23. ..... time should I come to your house?
a) What b) When c) How d) Where

24. ..... you bring your headphones?
a) Have b) Are c) Were d) Could

25. Mariam knows ..... write a script.
a) can b) how to c) how d) to be able

26. Suzy ..... paint well.
a) able to b) can c) know how to d) knows how

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Can you ..... (sewing) clothes?
2. ..... (you/know) how to use a computer?
3. ..... (you/able) to speak French?
4. Can Adel ..... (plays) football or tennis?
5. Lamar can ..... (talking) to the people at the drama club about acting.
6. We need people who ..... (able to) do make-up.
7. ..... (be) he able to help with music?
8. I can paint scenery if you want, but I ..... (not/know) how to do make-up.

Unit 10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. If something is ....., it is not hard to touch.
   a) hot **b)** salty **c)** soft **d)** delicious
2. If something is ....., it is expensive and of good quality.
   a) poor **b)** old **c)** ancient **d)** luxury
3. To ..... flowers or fruit is to break them off a plant.
   a) pick **b)** pour **c)** chop **d)** boil
4. ..... mean a large number of plants that are grown to be sold.
   a) Chemicals **b)** Materials **c)** Fruits **d)** Crops
5. Something scientists can make refers to ..... .
   a) tools **b)** chemicals **c)** crops **d)** costumes
6. ..... means as good as it is possible to be.
   a) Ugly **b)** Terrible **c)** Perfect **d)** Horrible
7. ..... means a business making things to sell.
   a) Crop **b)** Linen **c)** Industry **d)** Cotton

Language

8. It's a beautiful new, blue, ... dress.
   a) big **b)** loose **c)** long **d)** linen
9. He wore a long, ..., cotton galabeya.
   a) pretty **b)** white **c)** wool **d)** big
10. We saw a big, old, ... statue in the museum.
    a) stone **b)** pretty **c)** tall **d)** new
11. Look at that pretty, long, ... necklace.
    a) wonderful **b)** beautiful **c)** gold **d)** amazing
12. I like ..... smart, red, cotton T-shirt.
    a) this **b)** these **c)** those **d)** they
13. Are you wearing your brown shoes or the black .....?
    a) ones' **b)** one's **c)** one **d)** ones
14. Can I buy ..... earrings in the window?
    a) those **b)** these **c)** that **d)** this

15. I like ..... black, leather handbag! Is it new?

a) one **b)** ones **c)** that **d)** those

16. Which dress are you going to wear? This one or that .....?

a) one's **b)** ones' **c)** one **d)** ones

17. ..... market is amazing! There are so many cool things here.

a) This **b)** That **c)** Those **d)** These

18. Mr and Mrs Osman live in a/an ..... flat in Aswan.

a) big, old, traditional **b)** old, big, traditional

c) traditional, old, big **d)** traditional, big, old

19. Hoda's father has bought a/an ..... car.

a) red, new, electric **b)** new, red, electric

c) electric, new, red **d)** red, electric, new

20. I love wearing my ..... galabeya because it is very cool in the summer.

a) cotton, long, loose **b)** long, cotton, loose

c) long, loose, cotton **d)** cotton, loose, long

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. It's a ..... (blue/beautiful) skirt.
2. It's a ..... (cotton/colourful) scarf.
3. It's a/an ..... (old/short/gold) necklace.
4. They are ..... (leather/strange/big) shoes.
5. They are ..... (black/expensive/plastic) sunglasses.
6. It is a ..... (purple/nice/wool) jumper.
7. It's a ..... (cotton/striped) scarf.
8. Rich Egyptians wore ..... (gold/beautiful) necklaces.
9. She likes ..... (linen/white/loose) clothes.
10. He wore a ..... (cotton/long/green) galabeya.
11. Where did you get ..... (that) sunglasses?
12. Shall I buy this blue T-shirt or that green ..... (ones)?
13. Do you prefer ..... (these) dress or that one over there?
14. I bought ..... (this) shoes last week in the market.
15. Those earrings are the ..... (one) my mum gave me.

Unit 11

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. You see a lot of ..... in windy countries like England.
   a) wind turbines **b)** tools
   c) solar panels **d)** machines
2. I think electric cars will help to ..... pollution in the future.
   a) save **b)** reduce
   c) repair **d)** install
3. My uncle helped us to ..... a new washing machine this morning.
   a) damage **b)** lose
   c) hurt **d)** install
4. We should use ..... on buildings in sunny countries like Egypt.
   a) wind turbines **b)** tools
   c) solar panels **d)** machines
5. The desert is a difficult ..... to live in.
   a) tradition **b)** traditional
   c) environment **d)** environmental
6. Volunteers are working on a/an ..... project to save Egyptian tortoises.
   a) conservation **b)** conversation
   c) environment **d)** nature
7. A lot of animals live in the ..... forests next to the sea.
   a) music **b)** environment
   c) mangrove **d)** nature
8. ..... are tools that take things out of liquids, such as water.
   a) Panels **b)** Filters
   c) Turbines **d)** Tools
9. ..... is the place or position of a particular area of land.
   a) System **b)** Filter
   c) Location **d)** Environment
10. ..... are microorganisms that are everywhere, but are too small to see and can make you ill.
    a) Bear **b)** Fish
    c) Sheep **d)** Bacteria

11. We have a ..... for recycling in our house: we put old bottles in a box, then take them to the recycling bin once a week.

a) system b) road
c) street d) tool

12. I don't like old cars because they ..... a lot of pollution.

a) repair b) save
c) put d) cause

13. Mona forgot her pen today, so I'll ..... her mine.

a) lend b) install
c) borrow d) take

Language

14. The students are ..... very well in their exams.

a) do b) going to do
c) going to d) did

15. The tree is going to ..... down.

a) falling b) fell
c) fall d) falls

16. My cousins ..... at lunchtime tomorrow at 11 a.m.

a) arrive b) going to arrive
c) are arriving d) arrived

17. There's going ..... a storm.

a) be b) being
c) to being d) to be

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Fawzy ..... (not/work) next week because he has a holiday.
2. Lara ..... (play) tennis at 4 o'clock tomorrow.
3. At the moment, we ..... (stay) in a small hotel near the lake.
4. He ..... (not/going/catch) the bus.
5. The teacher is going ..... (be) angry.
6. They ..... (going) to do extra homework tonight.
7. Is the snow ..... (going/melt)?
8. There ..... (going/be) a drought.
9. The students aren't going to ..... (understanding) the lesson.

Unit 12

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. The best ..... study their subject for at least one hour a day.
   a) learners **b)** players
   c) workers **d)** waiters
2. If you ..... an exam, you will feel proud.
   a) lend **b)** succeed
   c) fail **d)** pass
3. Medhat can't drive because he ..... his driving test.
   a) passed **b)** decided
   c) failed **d)** fell
4. Nadia looked at the menu and ..... to have fish with rice.
   a) did **b)** decided
   c) took **d)** made
5. A ..... is a way of speaking used in one area.
   a) religion **b)** nationality
   c) system **d)** dialect
6. ..... are people who know lots about a subject.
   a) Film stars **b)** Singers
   c) Experts **d)** Learners
7. ..... are the things that make you different to other people.
   a) Areas **b)** Identities
   c) Communities **d)** Languages
8. A/An ..... person is someone who plans things carefully.
   a) kind **b)** friendly
   c) organised **d)** helpful
9. A ..... is a sound that comes from your mouth.
   a) religion **b)** nationality
   c) voice **d)** dialect

10. To ..... is what you want to do when you take an exam.

a) save **b)** decide

c) fail **d)** pass

11. ..... are the good things about something.

a) Advantages **b)** Disadvantages

c) Agreements **d)** Disagreements

Language

12. Ahmed ..... for his maths exam at the moment.

a) studies **b)** studied

c) is studying **d)** will study

13. Judy ..... to the library last night.

a) goes **b)** went

c) is going **d)** will go

14. I didn't ..... English, but now I speak it well.

a) understood **b)** understands

c) understand **d)** will understand

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. About five million people ..... (lives) in Alexandria.

2. Last Tuesday, my uncle ..... (fly) to Paris.

3. Look outside! It ..... (rain) at the moment.

4. In the future, I think we ..... (have) more lessons online.

5. When I was three years old, I ..... (not use/ go) to school.

6. Sara ..... (do) her homework when her friend visited her last night.

7. Ali is feeling ill, so I don't think he ..... (come) out this evening.

8. At the moment, my brother ..... (work) in a bank.

9. We ..... (go) to secondary school in two years.

10. Mona usually ..... (walk) to school, but today she came by bus.

End of Term Practice

A Listening

Listening Text

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. What does Injy know how to cook?
   a) A few things. **b)** Many things. **c)** Only cakes.
2. Why do they decide to make a carrot cake?
   a) Hala only eats vegetables.
   b) Hala likes healthy food.
   c) They find a recipe for it.
3. What will Amira do to make the cake?
   a) Mix the flour and sugar. **b)** Add some eggs. **c)** Cut the carrots.
4. How many nuts should they put on the cake?
   a) Four. **b)** Fourteen. **c)** Ten.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Baher is inviting Fares to his house.

Baher : Fares, I was wondering if you would like to come to my house today to work on our school project.

Fares : Great! What (1)……?

Baher : Around 7. We could research some information together.

Fares : (2)……?

Baher : I think it's better if we use the computer. Books won't give us all the information we need.

Fares : That's true. It's a (3)…… to look at different websites.

Baher : Would you bring some paper?

Fares : Why do you want them? We are going to do online research!

Baher : (4)…….

Fares : (5)…… we need to take notes on important information.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

When we taste food, our mouths tell us if the food is sweet, salty or spicy. But why do some people like some types of food and not others? There are many reasons. For example, some people don't like a type of food because they remember being ill after they ate it.

However, it is believed that you can change what you like. We often don't like unusual food because our brain doesn't understand it. So if you want to start liking food that is healthy, such as green vegetables, you should eat it more often. Then your brain will ***recognise*** it. You can also train your brain not to like something. For example, many people who stopped putting sugar on things found, after a time, that they didn't like sweet things.

So if you like sweets and don't like vegetables, you should train your brain to eat more healthily!

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Why do people often not like unusual food? .....
2. Why do you think people trained their brains not to like sugar? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. Some people don't eat certain food because they ..... .
   a) ate it before and liked it **b)** ate it and didn't like it
   c) didn't try it before
   d) some people told them that it wasn't tasty
4. What do you think the word "***recognise***" means?
   a) Know because you have seen it before. **b)** Photograph.
   c) Learn about. **d)** Like.
5. If you want to stop liking unhealthy food, ...
   a) eat healthy food instead **b)** stop eating this type of food
   c) eat this type of food often **d)** a and b

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If you feel ill, you ..... a doctor.
   a) will see **b)** should see **c)** see **d)** would see
2. My grandfather had an accident when he was younger and ..... to walk very well.
   a) can't **b)** doesn't know **c)** is not able **d)** won't
3. Please don't put ..... salt on my food. I don't like it.
   a) many **b)** a lot **c)** a few **d)** any

4. Tarek is not very hungry, so he only wants ..... rice with his chicken.
   a) a few **b)** a little **c)** a lot of **d)** any
5. Mona knows ..... draw. Let's ask her to draw us a picture.
   a) how **b)** to **c)** how to **d)** able to
6. This email is in Spanish. Are you able to ..... it for me?
   a) translate **b)** taste **c)** say **d)** waste
7. Waleed can't come out this morning because he needs to ..... for a delivery.
   a) buy **b)** pay **c)** save **d)** spend
8. People who do sport like to eat rice and pasta because they give them lots of ..... .
   a) fast food **b)** salt **c)** sugar **d)** energy
9. Before you fry food, you should ..... some oil in a pan.
   a) make **b)** serve **c)** heat **d)** fire
10. Judy's little sister hurt her hand and started ..... .
    a) crying **b)** laughing **c)** hiding **d)** wondering

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of these words:

visit - add - invent - act

1. Ramy's ..... saves a lot of water and helps the environment.
2. The story was very slow and there was very little ..... .
3. Don't ..... too much salt. It's unhealthy.
4. Reham is ..... the museum next weekend. Her mum gave her tickets.

E Writing

6 Choose one of the following:

1. Write a short review of about 90-100 words on a book, film or a place you like.
2. Write an email of about 90-100 words on an environmental problem you have near you, and how you could help solve this problem.

.....

.....

.....

.....

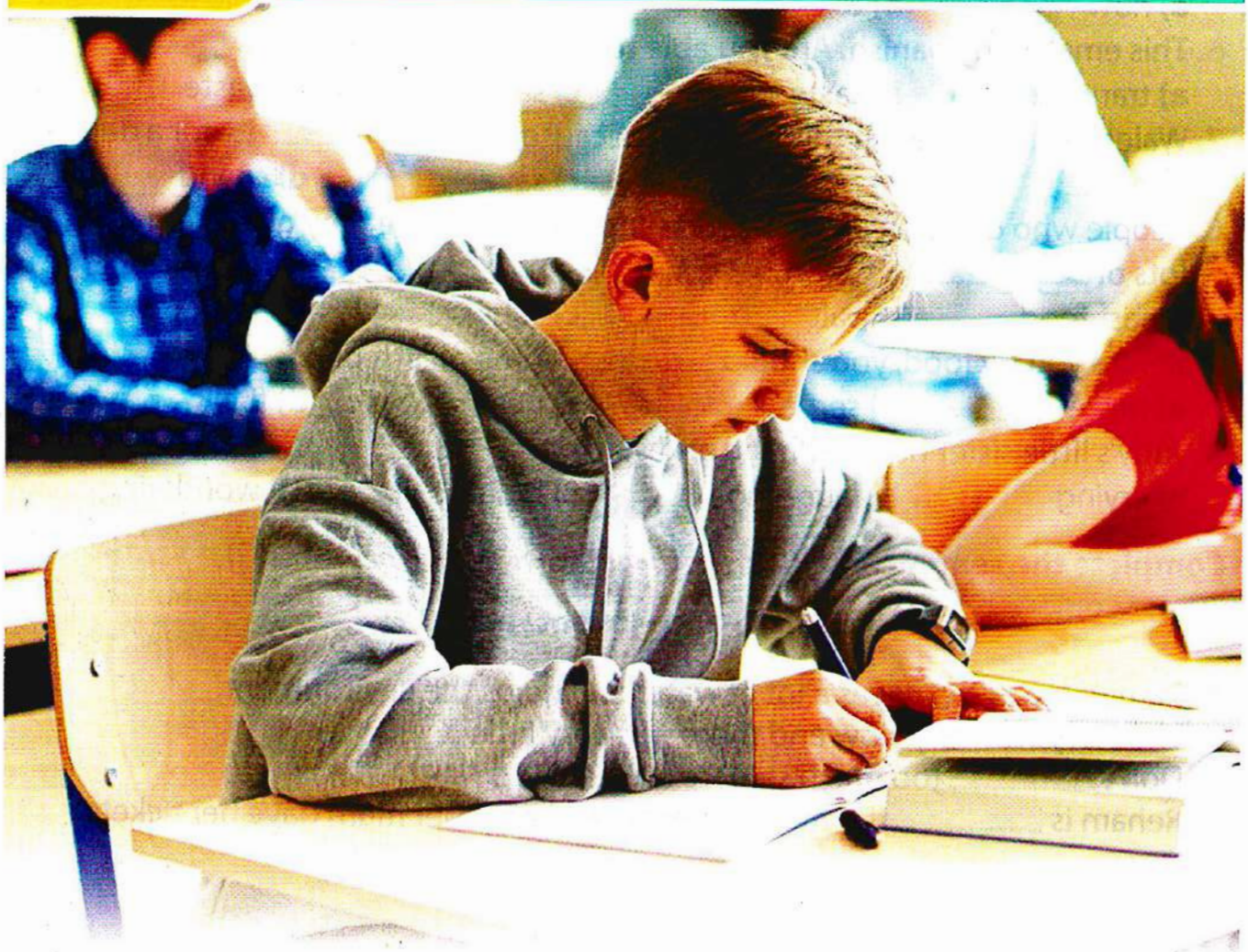
.....



Assess your progress ★ ★ ★ ★ ★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Part 3 Final Exams & Listening Texts



20 Schools & Directorates Exams اختبارات المدارس والإدارات وعددهم ٢٠

8 Al-Azhar Exams اختبارات الأزهر وعددهم ٨

2 Inclusive Exams اختبارات الدمج وعددهم ٢

Final Exams Listening Texts نصوص استماع الاختبارات النهائية

(1) Schools & Directorates Exams

معدلة وفق أحدث المواصفات الامتحانية

1 Cairo Governorate — El-Zawya El Hamara Educational Zone

Listening Text

30

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

A Listening

4

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **A:** How old is Samir? **B:** He is ..... .
   a) thirteen b) fourteen c) three d) fifteen
2. Samir is a/an ..... boy.
   a) lazy b) active c) bad d) ugly
3. **A:** Which sport does Samir like playing? **B:** ..... .
   a) Tennis b) Volleyball c) Basketball d) Football
4. Samir works hard to be a/an ..... .
   a) engineer b) teacher c) nurse d) doctor

B Language Functions

5

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Omar is talking to Adel about the summer holiday.

Omar : Hi, how are you?
Adel : (1)..... .
Omar : (2).....?
Adel : I will spend my summer holiday in Beni Suef.
Omar : Who will you go there with?
Adel : (3)..... .
Omar : (4).....?
Adel : We will stay there for three weeks.
Omar : How will you go there?
Adel : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

5

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Reading is a **useful** and important habit in our modern life. We read books when we are alone or have free time. A lot of people prefer watching TV, but I like reading because it widens my mind. I can find new ideas and a lot of information

which help make my life better. It gives me the chance to think and dream. Although we live at the age of the computer, the internet, and there is a television set in every house, we need to read books which are easier to carry and move with us everywhere. Try to read a book in the shade of a tree, in a garden or a field and I am sure you will enjoy it very much.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to ..... .
   a) information b) chance c) reading d) life
2. The underlined word "useful" is the opposite of "..... ".
   a) hard b) easy c) difficult d) useless

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of this passage?
   .....
4. Why do you think reading is important and useful?
   .....
5. Where can you read a book?
   .....
6. What kind of information can you find in books?
   .....

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Eating ..... food makes you strong.
   a) spicy b) healthy c) unhealthy d) salty
2. My father gave me one ..... to listen to my favourite songs.
   a) cup b) app c) motorbike d) headphone
3. Social media is very useful, but it has ....., too.
   a) hobbies b) ways c) dangers d) information
4. Egyptian cotton is used to make ..... clothes.
   a) heavy b) loose c) luxury d) cheap
5. My brother is ..... to his mobile phone. He uses it a lot.
   a) horrible b) deaf c) worried d) addicted
6. ..... are planes without pilots.
   a) Boats b) Drones c) Rockets d) Robots

7. My friend is blind. He ..... to see.
   a) is able b) can't c) can d) is not able
8. Look at those clouds, it ..... .
   a) will rain b) is raining c) is going to rain d) rains

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. There is ..... (a few) petrol in my car.
2. It is a ..... (green/pretty/new) dress.
3. Those bags are the ..... (one) that my mother loves.
4. My son ..... (bring) me a nice present yesterday.
5. If you go online, you should ..... (remembering) safety rules.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Technology is very important for everyone."

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

2 Cairo Governorate — El-Salam Educational Directorate

A Listening

Listening Text

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Nada is ..... .
   a) dumb b) deaf
   c) blind d) weak
2. Nada likes ..... .
   a) music b) food
   c) sport d) acting
3. Nada plays the ..... .
   a) guitar b) violin
   c) piano d) oud
4. I'm ..... of Nada.
   a) sad b) angry
   c) annoyed d) proud

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue: 5

Ali is asking Adel about what he did last Friday.

Ali : Hi, how are you?
Adel : (1)..... .
Ali : (2).....?
Adel : I went to the cinema.
Ali : (3).....?
Adel : I went there by bus.
Ali : What did you see there?
Adel : (4)..... .
Ali : Did you enjoy the film?
Adel : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions: 5

I'm Karim. I've got two brothers and three sisters. My father is an old farmer. My mother is a housewife. She spends all her time cooking and cleaning the house. **They** work day and night to help us live happily. We live in a nice house on the farm. My father grows a lot of vegetables. He also keeps some animals and birds. In my school, I have a lot of friends. My school day begins at eight o'clock in the morning. After school, I usually help my father. I love looking after animals and birds. I'd like to study **farming** because I want to grow the main crops on our farm.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**farming**" means ..... .
   a) weaving b) growing crops
   c) playing music d) making clothes
2. Karim's mother works at ..... .
   a) home b) a school c) a bank d) a company

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Give a suitable title to the passage.
   .....
4. Why do you think Karim's parents work day and night?
   .....
5. Why does Karim want to study farming?
   .....
6. What does the underlined pronoun "**They**" refer to?
   .....

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It's ..... today. It is going to rain.
   a) hot b) warm c) sunny d) cloudy
2. ..... products like milk and cheese help us to have strong bones.
   a) Dairy b) Daily c) Diary d) Fairy
3. The museum is full of ....., and many other historic objects.
   a) theatres b) statues c) stadiums d) castles
4. These books are funny, but those ..... are boring!
   a) one b) ones c) once d) only
5. My brother is ..... to nuts. He must be careful about what he eats.
   a) healthy b) diary c) amazed d) allergic
6. Are you ..... help me with my homework?
   a) could b) know how to c) can d) able to
7. We can't drink sea water, it is ..... .
   a) sweet b) spicy c) salty d) fresh
8. Wind ..... use the wind to make electricity.
   a) banks b) cars c) hospitals d) turbines

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We shouldn't ..... (wasting) our time.
2. My cousins are ..... (go) to travel abroad tomorrow.
3. I have ..... (few) salt in my food. I need more.
4. If I miss the bus, I'll ..... (taking) another.
5. My cousin ..... (like) reading adventure stories.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"A visit to a museum"

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Listening

Listening Text

30

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

4

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **A:** What does Hoda love? **B:** ..... .
   a) Sports b) Swimming c) Shopping online d) History
2. **A:** What does shopping online save? **B:** ..... .
   a) Time b) Money c) Water d) Pollution
3. **A:** Where can she shop online? **B:** At ..... .
   a) shops b) school c) home d) work
4. Hoda can buy what she needs in a few ..... .
   a) hours b) minutes c) places d) colours

B Language Functions

5

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Hossam is talking with an American tourist who will stay for three weeks in Egypt.

Hossam : Welcome to Egypt. Where are you from?
Tourist : (1)..... .
Hossam : (2).....?
Tourist : I'll stay here for 3 weeks.
Hossam : I'm sure you'll enjoy your stay in Egypt.
Tourist : (3).....?
Hossam : You can visit Luxor and Aswan.
Tourist : How can I go there?
Hossam : (4)..... .
Tourist : Thanks. (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

5

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

You should learn a foreign language, but learning a foreign language is not as **easy** as you think. Some people don't like learning a foreign language for this reason. Lots of people all over the world are learning English for different reasons. It is the most widely spoken language in the world. A tour guide needs

to use English when he speaks to tourists from different countries in the world. Businessmen need to use English because they travel to many countries. People who work with computers need to know English because they do a lot of work on the internet which is like a bank of information. Students need to learn English to be able to read books written in English. Do you agree?

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A tour guide needs English to speak to ..... .

a) doctors b) farmers c) students d) tourists

2. The opposite of the underlined word "**easy**" is "..... ".

a) different b) difficult c) fast d) amazing

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage? .....

4. What does the underlined pronoun "**he**" refer to? .....

5. Do you think learning English is important for students? .....

6. How can learning English help businessmen in their career? .....

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I hope we ..... the next match.

a) wins b) winning c) won d) will win

2. I like to wear my ..... on the bus to listen to music.

a) helmet b) motorbike c) helicopter d) headphones

3. Don't use too much social media or you will be ..... to it.

a) worried b) useful c) addicted d) possible

4. This factory uses solar ..... to make electricity.

a) canals b) panels c) turbines d) controls

5. A ..... is a period of 100 years.

a) decade b) fortnight c) week d) century

6. Do you know ..... to use a computer?

a) what b) who c) how d) which

7. Children use their ..... to play games online.

a) mobiles b) radios c) kites d) books

8. Don't ..... friends with bad people.

a) give b) wear c) have d) make

5 **Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

5

1. I like to put ..... (any) spices in food.
2. ..... (Turns) the lights off before you sleep.
3. Amira can ..... (cooking) koshari.
4. This dress is the ..... (ones) I like.
5. Don't ..... (drinks) a lot of fizzy drinks.

E Writing

6 **Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:**

7

"Your favourite sport"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

4 Giza Governorate — Educational Administration of Dokki

A Listening

Listening Text

30

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

4

1 **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Tamer likes to buy ..... things.
   a) expensive b) cheap
   c) luxury d) costly
2. Tamer always buys his needs ..... .
   a) disconnected b) online
   c) offline d) airline
3. Tamer does the shopping on the internet ..... .
   a) at work b) at home
   c) at office d) at hospital
4. Shopping on the internet is very ..... .
   a) easy b) difficult
   c) nice d) bad

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue: 5

Ahmed is telling Amir about his visit to the Egyptian Museum.

Amir : Hello Ahmed, how are you?
Ahmed : (1)..... .
Amir : (2).....?
Ahmed : I visited the Egyptian Museum last week.
Amir : (3).....?
Ahmed : I saw a lot of statues.
Amir : How did you go there?
Ahmed : (4)..... .
Amir : Did you enjoy your time there?
Ahmed : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions: 5

We all agree that eating healthy food means having a healthy life. The food we eat affects our life more than anything else. Most people have three meals a day, but in fact they don't care about what they should eat for each meal. These meals must contain everything that our bodies need like vegetables, fruit, milk and potatoes. Although fast food is **delicious** and an easy solution for people who work for long hours and have no time to cook, it is unhealthy and so expensive. **It** also causes a lot of dangerous diseases. To be healthy, you should eat healthy food and also drink much water.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**delicious**" means something that ..... .
   a) tastes bad b) tastes nice c) has no taste d) isn't nice
2. Eating healthy food means having a healthy ..... .
   a) light b) fight c) left d) life

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What's the main idea of the passage? .....
4. What does the underlined pronoun "**It**" refer to? .....
5. Do you think that eating one kind of food is healthy? Why? Why not? .....
6. How can fast food affect our health? .....

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I ordered a medium pizza, but the ..... was late.
   a) travelling b) delivery c) driving d) diving
2. I'm ..... to sweets, so I never eat them.
   a) hungry b) allergic c) tired d) ill
3. Don't ..... many sweets. They are bad for your teeth.
   a) eat b) ate c) eating d) to eat
4. Writing ..... of films needs skill and experience.
   a) scripts b) portraits c) pottery d) clay
5. He can't swim, but he ..... to play football very well.
   a) can b) can't c) able d) is able
6. The boy and his father are going to ..... a football match.
   a) watches b) watch c) watching d) watched
7. ..... are used to produce electricity.
   a) Coral reefs b) Mobiles c) Firefighters d) Solar panels
8. **A:** Which ..... do you prefer? **B:** The black ones.
   a) ones b) one c) of one d) for ones

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I think you will ..... (wins) the next match.
2. Huda doesn't like to have ..... (some) salt in her food.
3. We don't know ..... (what) to play the piano.
4. Sami lost his mobile and bought a new ..... (ones).
5. We ..... (visit) our uncle tomorrow.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Water pollution"

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Listening

30

Listening Text

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

4

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There are ..... ways to travel.
   a) few b) many c) same d) cheap
2. All ways of travelling have ..... and disadvantages.
   a) advantages b) dangers c) ways d) problems
3. The fastest way of travelling is by ..... .
   a) car b) train c) plane d) ship
4. Travelling by train is sometimes ..... .
   a) comfortable b) fast c) expensive d) uncomfortable

B Language Functions

5

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Rawan and Soha are talking about going to the zoo.

Rawan : Would you like to go to the zoo with us?
Soha : (1)..... .
Rawan : We will spend a nice time there and see animals.
Soha : (2).....?
Rawan : No, it's not far.
Soha : (3).....?
Rawan : We can meet at 7 a.m.
Soha : Where will we meet?
Rawan : (4)..... .
Soha : Can we take some food?
Rawan : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

5

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Shopping online is great! Firstly, it saves time. Most people don't want to spend much time travelling to the shops. They can stay at home and buy the things they want in a few minutes. Secondly, they have more choices online. Also, if more people shop online, there will be fewer cars on the roads and less pollution.

However, some people don't like online shopping because when they buy something online, the thing that they buy is sometimes wrong. They like to try the things they are buying first. Also, they don't like to **waste** time waiting for a delivery. If everyone shops online, the shops in towns and cities will be closed. If **they** are closed, lots of other businesses like cafés will be closed, too.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When you shop online, you have ..... choices.
   a) few b) enough c) many d) some
2. The opposite of the underlined verb "**waste**" is ".....".
   a) save b) make c) spend d) buy

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the text? .....
4. Mention two advantages of shopping online. .....
5. From your point of view, what is the best way of shopping?.....
6. What does the underlined pronoun "**they**" refer to? .....

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Life ..... easier in the future.
   a) is b) was c) will be d) were
2. "....." means very nice to eat.
   a) Sour b) Dirty c) Unhealthy d) Delicious
3. Meat, cheese and nuts have ..... in them.
   a) salt b) protein c) sugar d) milk
4. There are ..... notebooks on the table.
   a) some b) any c) much d) little
5. My dress is damaged, so my mother is ..... it.
   a) cleaning b) sewing c) tiding d) washing
6. We should ..... all our plastic to use it again.
   a) burn b) recycle c) throw d) damage
7. The museum is full of ..... and many other historic objects.
   a) theatres b) statues c) stadiums d) castles
8. My little brother started to ..... after he fell and hurt his hand.
   a) carry b) fry c) dry d) cry

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

5

1. There aren't ..... (some) students in the classroom.
2. Don't ..... (touching) electric wires.
3. My little sister can't ..... (feeds) herself.
4. ..... (These) is my mobile. I'm sending a message.
5. Hala ..... (go) to the library last night.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

7

"Healthy food"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

6 Al-Qalyubia Governorate — East Shubra Educational Directorate

A Listening

Listening Text

30

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

4

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **A:** Can drones fly? **B:** ..... .
   a) Yes, they can
   b) No, they can't
   c) No, they don't
   d) I don't know
2. **A:** How can we fly drones? **B:** By using ..... .
   a) knives
   b) soldiers
   c) remote control
   d) mobile phones
3. **A:** When are drones going to help solve problems? **B:** ..... .
   a) In the past
   b) Yesterday
   c) Last year
   d) In the future
4. **A:** What kind of problems can drones solve? **B:** ..... problems.
   a) Educational
   b) Environmental
   c) Ancient
   d) Funny

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue: 5

Amir is at a clothes shop. He wants to buy a shirt.

Assistant : Can I help you?
Amir : (1)..... .
Assistant : What size do you wear?
Amir : (2)..... .
Assistant : (3).....?
Amir : I want it blue.
Assistant : (4)..... .
Amir : (5).....?
Assistant : It's 300 pounds.
Amir : Here you are. Thank you.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions: 5

There are lots of jobs in our life. There are farmers who work in the fields. There are teachers who work at schools. There are carpenters who work in workshops. There are mechanics who work in garages. Among all of these jobs, the doctors' work is the most difficult and is more important than other jobs because **it** is concerned with people's lives.

There are many kinds of doctors who deal with different kinds of **patients**. The children's doctor deals with children who are ill. The eyes doctor deals with people whose eyes are ill. In many times, the doctors don't sleep at night if someone calls them to see a patient. Of course, we should respect all these jobs. Do you agree with me?

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**patients**" means ..... people.
   a) old b) healthy c) sick d) strong
2. We must ..... our doctors.
   a) sink b) respect c) hate d) prevent

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage?.....
4. Why do you think a doctor can't sleep?.....
5. Where do farmers work?.....
6. What does the underlined pronoun "**it**" refer to?.....

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Football is very ..... all over the world.
   a) popular b) unknown c) infamous d) local
2. A ..... person is a person who is not able to see.
   a) blind b) deaf c) wise d) stupid
3. All students should ..... well at school.
   a) save b) make c) keep d) do
4. ..... watch too much TV.
   a) Didn't b) Shouldn't c) Don't d) Mustn't
5. Shopping online is great. It ..... us time.
   a) makes b) saves c) does d) pushes
6. If you feel tired, you ..... have a rest.
   a) would b) could c) should d) do
7. What ..... do you think musicians need?
   a) money b) skills c) time d) power
8. Can I borrow your ..... skirt?
   a) old, cotton, brown b) old, brown, cotton
   c) brown, old, cotton d) cotton, old, brown

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. It is ..... (go) to rain, it is cloudy.
2. He is able ..... (ride) a bike.
3. If you do exercise, you (won't) ..... be fit.
4. ..... (This) earrings are very nice.
5. He wasn't very hungry, so he didn't eat ..... (little) rice.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"A visit to Aswan"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Listening

Listening Text نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب. 4 — 30

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The speaker visited a ..... last month.
   a) theatre b) museum c) pyramid d) temple
2. The place that the speaker visited was in ..... .
   a) Cairo b) Aswan c) Luxor d) Giza
3. Egypt is famous for its ancient ..... .
   a) music b) history c) art d) monuments
4. The speaker was interested in seeing art by ..... .
   a) Americans b) Africans c) the Japanese d) Egyptians

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue: — 5

Ali wants to buy a new shirt.

Shopkeeper : Hello sir, can I help you?
Ali : (1)..... . I want a T-shirt like this.
Shopkeeper : Here you are, sir.
Ali : (2).....?
Shopkeeper : Sure. The changing room is there.
Ali : It's a bit big. (3).....?
Shopkeeper : (4)..... .
Ali : How much is it?
Shopkeeper : (5)..... .
Ali : OK! I'll take it.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions: — 5

Healthy food is really important for everyone. It helps us grow well and gives us energy. If you want to be healthy, you should eat all types of food. We need to drink much water every day. Dairy products like milk and cheese are healthy. **They** give us calcium. It helps us to have strong bones. Meat, cheese and nuts have protein in them. We need protein to have strong bodies. Fruits and nuts are healthy snacks. People need to eat fresh fruit and vegetables every day. Fit people are so interested in what they eat. The more healthy food they eat, the **fitter** they will be. Bad habits of having food are the main reasons for health problems nowadays.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The word "**fitter**" can be replaced by ..... .

a) weaker b) stronger c) smaller d) bigger

2. Dairy products give us ..... .

a) calcium b) carbohydrates c) olives d) protein

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage?

.....

4. What does the underlined pronoun "**They**" refer to?

.....

5. Why do you think healthy food is so important for us?

.....

6. What are two dairy products mentioned in the text?

.....

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4

1. There is a ..... as it hasn't rained for a long time.

a) drought b) flood c) flour d) wind

2. I think the mobile is the greatest ..... .

a) discovery b) invitation c) invention d) translation

3. He had a terrible accident that left him ..... .

a) messy b) disabled c) happy d) noisy

4. Durian fruits are very healthy and ..... delicious.

a) taste b) hear c) smell d) touch

5. There is a big chest of ..... in my room.

a) adverts b) drums c) drawers d) drawings

6. The actors are wearing colourful ..... .

a) costumes b) scenes c) customs d) instructions

7. These stories are funny, but those ..... are boring.

a) once b) one c) ones d) only

8. If it rains, you ..... take an umbrella.

a) shouldn't b) mustn't c) need d) should

5 **Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. Would you like ..... (any) tea?
2. ..... (Do) he able to drive a car?
3. She likes ..... (linen, white, loose) clothes.
4. It ..... (rain), I can see some dark clouds.
5. ..... (Having) breakfast early. It's important.

E Writing

6 **Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:**

"Modern technology"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

8 **Damietta Governorate** **New Damietta Educational Directorate**

A Listening

Listening Text

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1 **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Egyptian cotton is famous because it is very ..... .
   a) weak b) expensive
   c) good d) bad
2. Egyptian cotton is picked by ..... .
   a) legs b) animals
   c) machines d) hands
3. Cotton is used to make ..... .
   a) luxury clothes b) pans
   c) heavy clothes d) pots
4. Many people work in the ..... .
   a) cars industry b) cotton industry
   c) oil industry d) chemicals industry

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue: 5

Mother and Farida are talking about computer games.

Mother : Farida, do you know that all computer games are bad for you?
Farida : (1)..... . Some of them can help me to learn things.
Mother : (2).....?
Farida : They can help me to learn as they refresh my mind.
Mother : (3)..... .
Farida : I understand that they are bad for my health, but I love playing games.
Mother : (4).....?
Farida : I like to play Fortnite online with my friends.
Mother : Why do you love to play it so much?
Farida : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions: 5

Through the ages, man has brought about a lot of important inventions. He has invented machines that can change darkness into light and that can lift and carry. Because man is **inventive**, he can travel under water like a fish and in the air like a bird. He can look towards other stars and planets with a telescope. Also, he can see inside himself using X-ray machines.

Science and technology are a mixed blessing. Although **they** have made our life easier, they have sometimes failed to make us happier. They have failed to make real progress. Land, air and water are polluted by man-made chemicals. Noise is caused by modern inventions, like planes, cars, televisions and radios. The result can be disease or death.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**inventive**" means to be able to think of..... ideas.
   a) difficult b) new c) easy d) dull
2. Man can see inside himself using ..... .
   a) a printer b) a telescope c) an oxygen tank d) X-ray machines

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Give a suitable title to the passage. .....
4. How is man similar to a fish or a bird? .....
5. Do you think scientists make our life happier? Why/ Why not? .....
6. What does the underlined pronoun "**they**" refer to?.....

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He is ..... to nuts. He feels ill after eating something with nuts.
   a) allergic b) scary c) addicted d) perfect
2. We need someone to sew the ..... .
   a) customs b) cosmetics c) costumes d) colours
3. A ..... is equipment that uses the wind to make electricity.
   a) pan b) wind turbine c) solar panel d) robe
4. A/An ..... is a funny drawing, usually showing people or animals.
   a) cartoon b) artist c) sculpture d) pottery
5. During the lesson, I listen carefully to my teacher and take ..... to remember.
   a) places b) notes c) actions d) roads
6. My uncle helped us to ..... the new washing machine this morning.
   a) serve b) decide c) reduce d) install
7. He wore a ..... galabeya.
   a) cotton, long, grey b) long, grey, cotton
   c) grey, long, cotton d) grey, cotton, long
8. I don't put ..... salt on my chips.
   a) few b) some c) many d) any

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If I'm free, I ..... (help) you.
2. My father is ..... (able) climb the mountain.
3. I'm ..... (go) to play tennis tomorrow.
4. These trainers are better than the ..... (one) I had before.
5. ..... (you/like) a few biscuits?

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"How to keep healthy"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Listening

Listening Text
نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

30 4

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In Ancient Egypt, ... wore similar clothes.
   a) men & girls b) boys & girls c) women & boys d) men & women
2. They both wore loose, white, ... clothes.
   a) wool b) wood c) linen d) leather
3. Ancient Egyptians didn't wear ..... .
   a) belts b) shoes c) scarves d) trousers
4. Some people wore expensive, leather ..... .
   a) sandals b) skirts c) shirts d) shorts

B Language Functions

5

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Omar and Sami are talking about technology.

Omar : Do you know much about technology?
Sami : (1)..... .
Omar : What types of technology do you use every day?
Sami : (2)..... .
Omar : (3).....?
Sami : I use the internet to communicate with my friends online.
Omar : (4).....?
Sami : Yes, sometimes I have problems online.
Omar : What should you do if you are worried about something online?
Sami : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

5

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Air is the secret of life on earth. If you look at other planets, you can't find any that we can live on as there's no air on them.

Scientists say that our planet is facing problems like air pollution and this will damage life on **it**. Reports around the world claim that air pollution comes from factories, burning woods, car smoke and so many human actions. If we continue increasing air pollution, we'll face **serious** problems in the future.

Air pollution doesn't only affect human beings, but also affects animals and birds. We should think from now about how to solve this problem. On the other hand, we should increase the green area as it's a great source of oxygen which we need for living.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We should ..... the green area.

a) damage b) reduce c) increase d) pollute

2. The underlined word "**serious**" means ..... .

a) perfect b) dangerous c) useful d) important

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Give a suitable title to the passage.

.....

4. Why can't we live on another planet?

.....

5. Do you think air pollution will increase in the future? Why/ Why not?

.....

6. What does the underlined pronoun "**it**" refer to?

.....

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 4

1. My kids had a wonderful time at the theme ..... .

a) garden b) fair c) house d) park

2. I think ..... cars will help to reduce pollution.

a) ancient b) colourful c) electric d) toy

3. Fresh fruit is not very ..... .

a) nice b) old c) healthy d) good

4. Dalida always eats ..... olives with her salad.

a) much b) a little c) a lot d) a few

5. ..... some lemon juice over the hot beans.

a) Wash b) Pour c) Fry d) Serve

6. I like star ..... at night.

a) fishing b) climbing c) gazing d) collecting

7. ..... are used to produce electricity.

a) Coral reefs b) Mobile phones c) Solar panels d) Climate changes

8. We won't go to the beach this weekend if it ..... very windy.

a) is b) will be c) was d) should be

5 **Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

5

1. These shoes are the worst ..... (one).
2. If you don't change, maybe you should ..... (finding) a new friend.
3. Shall we ..... (invited) her to the party?
4. He ..... (going) to throw away his old phone.
5. A film star knows how ..... (act) well.

E Writing

7

6 **Write an email of about 90 words to your friend Sami to tell him about "Learning languages". Your name is Reda and your email address is reda@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is sami@yahoo.com.**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

10 **Ismailia Governorate** **South Ismailia Educational Directorate**

A Listening

Listening Text

30

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

4

1 **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. **A:** Who did Ali enjoy his trip to Luxor with? **B:** ..... .
   a) His mother
   b) His father
   c) His sister
   d) His brother
2. **A:** Where were they staying? **B:** ..... .
   a) On a farm
   b) At a tent
   c) At a camp
   d) At school
3. **A:** How were they travelling around the desert? **B:** ..... .
   a) On camels
   b) On horses
   c) On donkeys
   d) On bikes
4. They came back by ..... .
   a) taxi
   b) train
   c) car
   d) bus

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue: 5

Salma is asking Aya about her plans for the summer holiday.

Salma : Can I ask you some questions?
Aya : (1)..... .
Salma : (2).....?
Aya : I'm travelling to Alexandria.
Salma : (3).....?
Aya : I will take my camera and some tasty food.
Salma : How long will you stay there?
Aya : (4)..... .
Salma : Have a nice time!
Aya : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions: 5

Students like the summer holiday because they don't have to get up early or study. They practise **different** sports. They also play computer games and go for a walk in the evening. Really, holidays are fun, but our students should have good habits. They should help their parents at work. They should go to bed early and get up early. They shouldn't eat a lot of sweets. They shouldn't cut their books and throw **them** in the street when they finish the exam.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Students should sleep ..... .
   a) late b) early c) in the morning d) in the afternoon
2. The underlined word "**different**" is the opposite of "..... ".
   a) other b) same c) various d) several

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What's the main idea of the passage?
   .....
4. What shouldn't students do when they finish the exam?
   .....
5. In your opinion, what other habits should students have on holidays?
   .....
6. What does the underlined pronoun "**them**" refer to?
   .....

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In China, the bamboo ..... makes a lot of money.
   a) industry b) eating c) fishing d) drinking
2. We need someone to ..... a scenery for the play.
   a) write b) paint c) show d) sew
3. You ..... swim in the sea if it is very cold.
   a) has to b) had to c) should d) shouldn't
4. If a person is ....., he or she isn't able to see.
   a) blind b) deaf c) strong d) weak
5. You can't wear my shirt. We are not the same ..... .
   a) colour b) size c) site d) high
6. Eggs need to be ..... to make an omelette.
   a) boiled b) chopped c) poured d) beaten
7. I would prefer ..... abroad.
   a) to travel b) travels c) travelling d) travelled
8. Fruit and nuts are examples of healthy ..... .
   a) snakes b) snacks c) snails d) sails

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. You shouldn't ..... (walking) in the sun if it's very hot.
2. At the moment, we ..... (stay) in a small hotel near the lake.
3. She ..... (be) able to ride a bike.
4. Are you wearing your brown shoes or the red ..... (one)?
5. Why don't you wear ..... (these) nice scarf?

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"A story you read"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Listening

Listening Text

30

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

4

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **A:** What does Ali's dad have? **B:** He has a ..... .
   a) shop b) school c) park d) restaurant
2. **A:** Who is the cook? **B:** He is Ali's ..... .
   a) father b) mother c) friend d) sister
3. **A:** What does the chef make? **B:** He makes ..... .
   a) cakes b) fruits c) bread d) vegetables
4. **A:** When does Ali go to the restaurant? **B:** He goes on ..... .
   a) Monday b) Sunday c) Saturday d) Friday

B Language Functions

5

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Noha is buying a skirt.

Salesman : Hello, how can I help you?
Noha : (1)..... .
Salesman : Do you want a long or a short skirt?
Noha : (2)..... .
Salesman : (3).....?
Noha : I would like it blue.
Salesman : (4).....?
Noha : Yes, I like it very much.
Salesman : Great!
Noha : How much is it?
Salesman : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

5

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Eating healthy food is really important for all people. It helps us to grow and gives us energy. If you want to be healthy, you should eat all types of food. You should also drink a lot of water **daily**. One of these important types of food is dairy products. Dairy products like milk and cheese are useful. **They** give us calcium. They help us to have strong bones, so mothers should give their children a glass of milk before they go to bed to make sure they have good health.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**daily**" means every ..... .

a) week b) month c) day d) hour

2. We should eat all types of food to be ..... .

a) healthy b) fat c) big d) unhealthy

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Why do you think we need dairy products?

.....

4. What is the main idea of the passage?

.....

5. What does the underlined pronoun "**They**" refer to?

.....

6. How much water should we drink every day?

.....

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 4

1. Online shopping ..... time and energy.

a) does b) makes c) saves d) plays

2. This dress ..... a lot of money.

a) lasts b) pays c) plays d) costs

3. ..... are things made of clay.

a) Cartoons b) Portraits c) Photographs d) Potteries

4. A/An ..... has two wheels and an engine.

a) motorbike b) headphones c) app d) helicopter

5. A lot of animals live in the ..... forests next to the sea.

a) mangrove b) drone c) gloves d) mountains

6. A ..... can be green, red or yellow.

a) pepper b) potato c) spinach d) beans

7. We are going to ..... a football match.

a) plays b) played c) playing d) play

8. Mum ..... lunch when she gets home.

a) cook b) cooks c) will cook d) cooking

5 **Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:** 5

1. If she ..... (pass) the exam, she will be happy.
2. He wasn't very hungry, so he didn't eat ..... (little) rice.
3. When you feel tired, you ..... (shouldn't) sleep.
4. These trainers are the best ..... (one).
5. I ..... (not/use) to drive well when I was young.

E Writing

6 **Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:** 7

"Your holiday"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

12 New Valley Governorate — Dakhla Educational Directorate

A Listening

Listening Text

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب. 30 4

1 **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The deaf are the people who can't ..... .
   a) walk b) hear
   c) see d) taste
2. The disabled are ..... to our country.
   a) unimportant b) unable
   c) useful d) useless
3. We ..... help disabled people.
   a) mustn't b) can't
   c) shouldn't d) should
4. All people should treat the disabled as ..... people.
   a) normal b) formal
   c) abnormal d) warm

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue: 5

Omar and Ahmed are talking about the weekend.

Omar : Hello! How are you?
Ahmed : I'm OK. (1).....?
Omar : I'm going to visit my uncle this weekend.
Ahmed : (2).....?
Omar : He lives in Alexandria.
Ahmed : How are you going to get there?
Omar : (3)..... .
Ahmed : Are you going to the beach?
Omar : (4)..... . I can't swim.
Ahmed : How about visiting the Alexandria Library?
Omar : (5)..... . I like reading a lot.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions: 5

Today, Egyptian cotton is famous all over the world. Because cotton from Egypt is very good, it is often used to make luxury clothes and things for homes. Many people work in the cotton industry, from farmers to people making or selling clothes and material. The climate and soil in Egypt are perfect for growing cotton. Water from the Nile is still used for the crops. All of the cotton is picked by hand to keep it soft. When you grow cotton, it uses a lot of water and chemicals. Now, the government is trying to help farmers to protect the environment and use less water.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The soil in Egypt is ..... for growing crops.
   a) luxury b) modern c) perfect d) bad
2. Using ..... chemicals may help to protect the environment.
   a) fewer b) a little c) many d) much

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage?.....
4. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?.....
5. How do you think the government is trying to protect the environment?.....
6. Why is Egyptian cotton picked by hand?.....

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There is a/an ..... on this phone which tells me the weather in my city.
   a) screen b) app c) battery d) charger
2. Your ..... is the kind of food that you eat every day.
   a) work b) exercise c) diet d) homework
3. The children all wore funny ..... to the family party. Tarek was a firefighter!
   a) contents b) customs c) concerts d) costumes
4. Many people in Egypt work in the cotton ..... .
   a) tradition b) occasion c) industry d) electricity
5. The desert is a difficult ..... to live in.
   a) park b) environment c) city d) village
6. We should use ..... on buildings in sunny countries, like Egypt.
   a) solar panels b) snowboards
   c) tablets d) washing machines
7. If you don't ..... the lesson, you should tell the teacher.
   a) understanding b) understands c) understood d) understand
8. Leila likes ..... milk in her tea, but not very much.
   a) a few b) any c) a little d) a lot

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. What is the temperature going to ..... (is) this afternoon?
2. He wore a ..... (long, cotton, red) galabeya.
3. These books are funny, but those ..... (one) are very boring.
4. A firefighter ..... (are) able to stop fires.
5. If she (went) ..... to the shop, she will buy cheese.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Healthy and unhealthy food"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Listening

Listening Text
نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

30 4

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **A:** What did Jihan buy? **B:** She ordered a ..... .
   a) computer b) TV c) laptop d) mobile
2. She ordered it ..... .
   a) today b) a week ago c) last month d) yesterday
3. Jihan wants to ..... .
   a) fix it b) make another order
   c) open it d) change it
4. The ..... was damaged.
   a) battery b) screen c) charger d) cover

B Language Functions

5

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Wafaa is talking to Rahma about technology.

Wafaa : What are you reading about, Rahma?
Rahma : (1)..... .
Wafaa : Technology! Are you interested in it?
Rahma : (2)..... .
Wafaa : (3).....?
Rahma : I think the mobile phone is the most important invention.
Wafaa : But for me, the internet is the most important invention.
Rahma : (4).....?
Wafaa : Because it helps us do research and get a lot of information.
Rahma : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

5

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

One day, my wife saw a mouse running across the kitchen floor. She was afraid of it. She ran out of the house, got on a bus, and went down to the shops. She bought a mouse **trap**. The shopkeeper said to her, "Put some cheese in it, and you will catch the mouse." She went home. She looked at the fridge, but she couldn't find any cheese in **it**. She cut a picture of cheese out of a magazine and put that in the trap. When she went to the kitchen the next morning, there was a picture of a mouse beside the picture of the cheese.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**trap**" means a machine that helps people to ..... mice.

a) help b) catch c) eat d) feed

2. The wife saw the mouse in the ..... .

a) bedroom b) kitchen c) living room d) bathroom

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the best title for this text?

.....

4. What do you think of the woman?

.....

5. What does the underlined pronoun "**it**" refer to?

.....

6. Where did the wife go after she ran out of the house?

.....

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. That new hotel looks ..... . I really don't like it.

a) nice b) wonderful c) horrible d) fantastic

2. If Ahmed ..... hard, he will win the race.

a) will train b) trained c) trains d) train

3. ..... are boys or girls from thirteen to nineteen.

a) Babies b) Teenagers c) Volunteers d) Adults

4. To be healthy, you have to ..... well.

a) sleep b) play c) study d) fry

5. I did too ..... shopping yesterday. I haven't got any money now.

a) much b) many c) enough d) few

6. Writing ..... of films needs special skills.

a) scripts b) sculptures c) names d) lists

7. She is wearing a pair of beautiful gold ..... .

a) scissors b) earrings c) gloves d) tools

8. Please, ... the speed of the car. You are going to crash.

a) reduce b) increase c) produce d) introduce

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 5

1. We ..... (should) make noise at night.
2. There are ..... (any) rocks on the side of the road.
3. She ..... (able) to read music by using Braille.
4. I've decided that I ..... (look) for a new job.
5. You shouldn't ..... (swam) in the sea if it is very cold.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on: 7

"Modern inventions"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

14 Beni Suef Governorate — Ihnasia Educational Directorate

A Listening

Listening Text 30

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 4

1. Ziad likes the ..... .
   a) stars b) desert
   c) noise d) clothes
2. The desert is always ..... at night.
   a) noisy b) cold
   c) hot d) heavy
3. Ziad always wears ..... clothes at night.
   a) heavy b) yellow
   c) light d) green
4. Ziad likes the desert because it is ..... .
   a) worse b) quiet
   c) cold d) noisy

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue: 5

Murad and Yassir are talking about music.

Murad : Can you play music, Yassir?
Yassir : (1)..... .
Murad : (2).....?
Yassir : I can play the drums.
Murad : (3).....?
Yassir : No, I can't sing well.
Murad : What other musical instrument do you like most?
Yassir : (4)..... .
Murad : Me, too. I like the violin. Have you had a school concert before?
Yassir : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions: 5

In my country, the summer holidays start around the beginning of June. The children get some rest because they don't have to come to schools on those days and spend time with their families. Kids are encouraged to get out and play in the evenings, read more books and watch cartoons. Parents should encourage their children to be more active and creative during summer breaks so that they don't become lazy. Cold drinks and ice cream are enjoyed by everyone in the heat of the summer. Many families plan trips during this time and go to the beaches. Some of the popular sports are swimming, tennis, and chess. Parents should also take their children to spend time with **their** grandparents and other **relatives**.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Kids are ..... to go out and play.
   a) visited b) spent c) written d) encouraged
2. The underlined word "**relatives**" means people ..... .
   a) we don't know b) who are strangers
   c) who are foreign d) we know

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage? .....
4. What should parents encourage their children to be? .....
5. Why do you think children enjoy summer holidays? .....
6. What does the underlined pronoun "**their**" refer to? .....

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. That shirt doesn't ..... you. You need a bigger one.
   a) save b) stay c) fit d) work
2. Hatem ..... orange juice now.
   a) drink b) drinks c) is drinking d) drank
3. Mona loves fashion. She can ..... costumes well.
   a) sing b) eat c) sew d) play
4. Farmers in Egypt grow ..... .
   a) baskets b) chemicals c) crops d) plastic
5. If I ..... to the shops, I will spend a lot of money.
   a) going b) go c) goes d) went
6. I like wearing ..... clothes such as T-shirts and trainers.
   a) casual b) formal c) different d) traditional
7. Don't drink water from a canal because it can be full of ..... .
   a) bacteria b) salt c) sugar d) light
8. This is my school ..... . I've to wear it every school day.
   a) team b) gate c) uniform d) library

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Eating ..... (a lot) fruit is good for you.
2. The snow is going ..... (melt).
3. I think Nader ..... (buy) a car in the future.
4. ..... (These) book is mine.
5. How ..... (you/go) to school every day?

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Online shopping"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Listening

Listening Text
نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

30 4

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **A:** What is Fatma's mother making? **B:** ..... .
   a) Balloons b) A cake c) A meal d) A party
2. **A:** Who will come to the party? **B:** Fatma's ..... .
   a) friends b) father c) cousins d) teachers
3. **A:** What will Fatma's father buy for the party? **B:** ..... .
   a) A cake b) Cards c) A present d) Balloons
4. Fatma's birthday party will be next ..... .
   a) Sunday b) Friday c) Monday d) Thursday

B Language Functions

5

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Mazen and Ziad are talking about hobbies.

Mazen : Where are you going, Ziad?
Ziad : (1)..... .
Mazen : To the club! (2).....?
Ziad : Because I have a tennis match today.
Mazen : Great! (3).....?
Ziad : I started playing it a year ago. It's my favourite hobby. What about you?
Mazen : (4)..... .
Ziad : Can you teach me how to play the piano?
Mazen : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

5

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

These days, family members are more helpful than before because both parents often work and at the same time their children go to school. So at weekends, they all help to do the housework, such as cooking, washing, sweeping, cleaning and dusting. Parents sometimes do the shopping and ask their children to do things while **they** are out. On Friday, Kamel's family helps around the house. Kamel tidies his bedroom and sweeps the floor. His sister does the washing and makes the beds, his brother does the dusting and irons the clothes. His mother makes the food and folds the clothes. His father washes the car and arranges the books in the study room.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Kamel's ..... washes the car and arranges the books.
   a) cousin b) mother c) sister d) father
2. Kamel's sister does the washing and makes the ..... .
   a) beds b) cooking c) sweeping d) cleaning

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Why do you think family members are more helpful these days? .....
4. When do they help with the housework? .....
5. Give a suitable title to the passage. .....
6. What does the underlined pronoun "**they**" refer to? .....

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Would you like ..... coffee?
   a) some b) lot c) few d) many
2. It's useful to ..... exercise every morning.
   a) give b) do c) make d) save
3. My sister's ..... was yesterday. She got married to our cousin.
   a) wedding b) birthday c) festival d) event
4. My father brought a mechanic to ..... our car.
   a) repair b) brake c) reduce d) break
5. When it rains, you ..... take your umbrella.
   a) should b) shouldn't c) mustn't d) need
6. My cousin was born .....; he couldn't see.
   a) deaf b) dumb c) healthy d) blind
7. The thief ..... from the prison yesterday.
   a) escaped b) stayed c) reached d) swam
8. Mountain climbing is the most ..... sport. Many people fall and die.
   a) beautiful b) safe c) dangerous d) cheap

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Listen! Your mobile ..... (ring).
2. They ..... (have) a party yesterday.
3. Can your brother ..... (taken) some photos of me?
4. ..... (This) earrings are very nice.
5. Mona is going to ..... (making) a cake.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on: 7

"A healthy diet"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

16 Qena Governorate — Qeft Educational Directorate

A Listening

Listening Text

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب. 30 4

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In cities, there's much air pollution from the ..... .
   a) traffic b) schools c) houses d) parks
2. Pollution is ..... .
   a) useful b) healthy c) unhealthy d) helpful
3. **A:** What is good for the environment? **B:** ..... .
   a) Trees b) Roofs c) Cars d) Cities
4. They're going to plant trees ..... .
   a) tomorrow b) next week c) next month d) next year

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue: 5

Mona and Samar are talking about the next holiday.

Mona : Where will you spend your next holiday?

Samar: (1)..... .

Mona : Sharm El-Sheikh! Who will you go with?

Samar: (2)..... .

Mona : (3).....?

Samar: We'll stay there for three weeks.

Mona : How will you go?

Samar: (4)..... .

Mona : (5).....?

Samar: We can sit by the water and watch the sunset. It's awesome.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions: 5

Once on a bright summer's sunny day, a grasshopper, a kind of insects, was singing and dancing when he saw an ant working hard to collect food. The grasshopper said, "Why do you work so hard in summers? Summers are for fun, relaxation, and enjoyment. Come, let us sing and enjoy".

The ant looked **surprised** and said, "I am collecting food for the winter, and I recommend you do the same." The grasshopper said, "We have got enough food at present. Why bother about winter now?". The ant ignored him and went on **her** way, working hard. When the winter came, the grasshopper had no food to eat. He saw that ant and asked for food, but she said, "When I worked hard, you wasted your time and thought that singing was the only good thing in the summer". Then the grasshopper felt sorry about that, he learned his lesson the hard way.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**surprised**" is similar in meaning to ..... .
   a) worried b) anxious c) amazed d) relaxed
2. The ant recommended the grasshopper to ..... .
   a) dance b) sing c) relax d) collect food

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What's the main idea of the story?
   .....
4. What was the lesson the grasshopper learned?
   .....
5. Do you think the ant is right to refuse to help the grasshopper? Why? Why not?
   .....
6. What does the underlined pronoun "**her**" refer to?
   .....

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 4

1. You shouldn't talk to strangers ..... you are online.
   a) why b) what c) when d) who
2. We use solar panels for ..... .
   a) apps b) electricity c) speed d) headaches
3. The queen wore a gold ..... . Everyone liked it.
   a) headscarf b) earrings c) sandals d) ring

4. Have you left ..... juice in your bottle?

a) any b) many c) some d) a few

5. The mother ..... her baby to stop him crying.

a) acted b) wasted c) served d) hugged

6. Do I need to pay to go into this park or it is .....?

a) view b) action c) cheap d) free

7. When a river ....., there's too much water in it.

a) floods b) wins c) melts d) reduces

8. When my father was young, he ..... to wear white trainers.

a) used to b) using c) used d) were used

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 5

1. If you go online, you ..... (use) strong passwords.
2. The women ..... (be) going to Japan next May.
3. Why don't you buy ..... (those) great jacket over there?
4. He ..... (knows) how to do the homework, he asks his teacher for help.
5. Football ..... (play) all over the world.

E Writing 7

6 Write an email of NINETY (90) words to Mr Shaker, the owner of a website telling him about "Your favourite recipe". Your name is Adel and your email address is adel@gmail.com. Mr Shaker's email address is shaker@shop.com

To:

From:

Subject:

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Listening

Listening Text

30

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

4

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Omar is going to his friend's birthday party ..... .
   a) yesterday b) next year c) next month d) next week
2. The party will be ..... .
   a) at a park b) at a hotel c) at home d) on the house roof
3. Omar bought ..... as a present for his friend.
   a) a camera b) a mobile c) a story d) a bag
4. Omar is very ..... to attend the party.
   a) excited b) sad c) unhappy d) scared

B Language Functions

5

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Tamer is at a clothes shop. He wants to buy a shirt.

Assistant : Hello. How can I help you?
Tamer : (1)..... .
Assistant : (2).....?
Tamer : I want it blue, please.
Assistant : Great! What about this style?
Tamer : I think it is nice. Can I try it on, please?
Assistant : (3)..... . The changing room is over there.
Tamer : It fits me. I will buy it. (4).....?
Assistant : It is L.E. 300.
Tamer : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

5

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

There are different useful jobs in our society. Teachers help students to learn different subjects. Now, they use technology to make subjects **easy** and interesting. We must respect **them**. Doctors are important. They work day and night to help ill people. Doctors help patients get better by giving them the right medicine. They work in hospitals and clinics. Doctors should be kind and helpful to win people's love and respect. Engineers also help us a lot. They help to build houses, schools, hospitals and factories. Really, engineers build modern Egypt.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. ..... makes school subjects interesting.
   a) Technology b) Medicine c) Building d) Patient
2. The underlined word "easy" means ..... .
   a) tall b) old c) difficult d) simple

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Give a suitable title to the passage. .....
4. Who helps build modern Egypt? .....
5. Why do you think doctors' work is important? .....
6. What does the underlined pronoun "them" refer to? .....

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I would like to ..... a machine to tidy my room.
   a) invite b) invent c) travel d) disappear
2. We ..... with our noses.
   a) hear b) smell c) touch d) taste
3. The ..... is the place where we watch plays.
   a) museum b) park c) theatre d) hall
4. Shoes, bags and belts are made of ..... .
   a) wool b) metal c) wood d) leather
5. Today, factories ..... old paper to produce new paper.
   a) check b) solve c) recycle d) damage
6. Hady wants to take an English course to ..... his English.
   a) improve b) ruin c) decay d) forget
7. When you don't understand the lesson, you ..... ask for your teacher's help.
   a) should b) shouldn't c) would d) could
8. What ..... they doing now?
   a) were b) are c) will d) have

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If Nader ..... (play) well, he will win the final match.
2. Mahmoud's bag is light. It has ..... (little) books.
3. **A:** ..... (be) Ahmed able to read French? **B:** Yes, he is.
4. I lost my cap. I want to buy a new ..... (ones).
5. I can ride a bike, but I ..... (can) drive a car.

E Writing

7

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Things you like at your school"

.....

.....

.....

.....

18 Luxor Governorate — Esna Educational Directorate

A Listening

Listening Text

30

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4

1. At the weekend, we go to the ..... and pick up the rubbish.
   a) cinema b) teacher c) school d) beach
2. I work as a ..... for a charity.
   a) cleaner b) doctor c) volunteer d) market
3. We always pick up plastic ..... .
   a) bottles b) chairs c) tables d) pots
4. The charity helps to ..... our local beach.
   a) play b) eat c) clean d) pick

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

5

Rasha is going to the airport to meet her brother.

Reem : Good afternoon, Rasha. How are you?

Rasha: Good afternoon, Reem. (1)..... .

Reem : Where are you going?

Rasha: (2)..... .

Reem : (3).....?

Rasha: To meet my brother. He's coming from Malaysia.

Reem : (4).....?

Rasha: His plane arrives at 8 o'clock.

Reem : I hope he arrives safely.

Rasha: (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

5

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Egypt is a great country in the Middle East. Its capital is Cairo. The main language is Arabic. The weather in Egypt is **fine** all the year, so many tourists come from all over the world to enjoy it. **They** visit many historic places, such as the Egyptian Museum to see the ancient statues. They also visit Luxor and Aswan to see the Luxor Temples and the High Dam in Aswan. Also, they can visit the Cairo Tower where they can have a look at the whole city of Cairo. It is a beautiful view. Tourists can have delicious meals at the restaurants in Cairo. They enjoy their visit and have a nice time.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The capital of Egypt is ..... .

a) Luxor b) Cairo c) Sohag d) Siwa

2. The underlined word "**fine**" in the passage means ..... .

a) bad b) fast c) nice d) dangerous

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Give a suitable title to the passage.

.....

4. Why do you think tourists like to visit Egypt?

.....

5. What does the underlined pronoun "**They**" refer to?

.....

6. What can tourists see in Luxor and Aswan?

.....

D Vocabulary and Structure

4

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I am ..... to nuts, so I must be careful about what I eat.

a) addicted b) allergic c) ready d) interested

2. He is in a/an ..... because he can't walk.

a) orchestra b) armchair c) concert d) wheelchair

3. Dinosaurs weren't small animals; they were ..... .

a) serious b) enormous c) humorous d) curious

4. Leila liked ..... milk in her tea, but not very much.

a) many b) a few c) a little d) few

5. Wind ..... are equipment that uses the wind to make electricity.

a) panels b) turbines c) cars d) blow

6. We call foods that are made from milk ..... .

a) fast food b) dairy products c) sweets d) snacks

7. We should help the government to protect our ..... .

a) chemicals b) clothes c) revision d) environment

8. That watch is the ..... my father bought me.

a) one b) once c) one's d) ones

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 5

1. I bought ..... (this) shoes last week in the market.
2. Where ..... (was) your father travel two days ago?
3. Remas can ..... (plays) the violin.
4. What will ..... (happens) if he comes late?
5. Maher eats ..... (a few) food. He wants to lose weight.

E Writing 7

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Plans for your next holiday"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Listening

Listening Text
نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

30

4

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Many ..... come to Egypt to visit ancient sites.
   a) tourists b) plates c) Egyptians d) children
2. Karnak is in ..... .
   a) Cairo b) Tanta c) Alexandria d) Luxor
3. There are a lot of different ..... at Karnak.
   a) seas b) oceans c) rivers d) ruins
4. There, you can see amazing things, such as statues and ..... .
   a) temples b) cinemas c) theatres d) stadiums

B Language Functions

5

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed and Ali are planning what to do at the weekend.

Ahmed : Hi, Ali, would you like to go out with me this weekend?
Ali : Sure. (1).....?
Ahmed : I don't know. Do you have any ideas?
Ali : (2).....?
Ahmed : That sounds great. Which film shall we watch?
Ali : (3)..... .
Ahmed : No. (4)..... .
Ali : Really! Let's watch another one.
Ahmed : (5).....?
Ali : Great idea! I like comics much.

C Reading Comprehension

5

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Everyone dreams of being happy and healthy. This dream needs lots of things to do, such as having a healthy lifestyle. Sport is one of the most important things that helps people to be healthy and happy. Sport is an activity that is "**managed**" by a set of rules. Sports are different in their rules according to their types. For example, football is different from volleyball in its rules. This activity of sports helps in moving the body and the blood which gives people healthy bodies. All the sports help the body to be strong. They also help people to be more active, so **they** work well and achieve their goals and duties in their lives. All the sports are the same in relaxing the minds of the persons who practise them.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Sports make our minds ..... .
   a) relaxed b) nervous c) complex d) dangerous
2. The word "**managed**" in the passage means ..... .
   a) played b) controlled c) practised d) trained

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage? .....
4. How do sports help people in their work? .....
5. In your opinion, what are the other things that make us healthy? .....
6. What does the underlined pronoun "**they**" refer to? .....

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Can I borrow your ..... jacket?
   a) old, blue, cotton b) old, cotton, blue
   c) cotton, old, blue d) blue, old, cotton
2. I'm thirsty. Do you have ..... water?
   a) any b) some c) few d) many
3. Cars and buses ..... much pollution.
   a) stop b) reduce c) cause d) prepare
4. My sister always ..... dinner for us.
   a) tastes b) serves c) pushes d) translates
5. My mother ..... a French article into Arabic.
   a) makes b) washes c) pushes d) translates
6. When you pull that ....., the machine will start moving.
   a) tape b) engine c) liver d) lever
7. Workers have to ..... their skills to get good jobs.
   a) improve b) communicate c) connect d) prove
8. Maya is very happy because she is going to ..... in a play next summer.
   a) add b) act c) make d) save

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. When he was young, he always ..... (plays) football.
2. Ahmed is going to ..... (making) a kite.
3. Mona, ... (chopping) the vegetables into small pieces.
4. I bought a new shirt instead of the old ..... (ones).
5. She will not watch TV if she ..... (be) too busy.

E Writing

7

6 **Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:**

"A person you are proud of"

.....

.....

20 Port Said Governorate — Port Said Educational Directorate

A Listening

Listening Text

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

30

4

1 **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. **A:** What did Lama buy? **B:** She ordered ..... .
   a) a computer b) a TV c) a mobile d) a laptop
2. She ordered it ..... .
   a) a week ago b) today c) last month d) yesterday
3. The ..... was damaged.
   a) battery b) cover c) speaker d) screen
4. Lama wants to ..... .
   a) fix it b) change it c) open it d) make another order

B Language Functions

5

2 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue:**

Hoda and Lamees are talking about food.

Hoda : Do you like all kinds of food?

Lamees : (1)..... .
a) No, I don't b) Yes, I do c) Yes, I have d) No, I haven't

Hoda : (2).....
a) What's your favourite subject? b) When will you travel to Alex?
c) What are your favourite kinds of food? d) What kind of pets do you like?

Lamees : My favourite kinds of food are rice and pasta.

Hoda : (3).....
a) Why do you like them? b) Why do you play them?
c) Why will you travel there? d) Why do you study them?

Lamees : Because they give me energy.

Hoda : Are you allergic to any kind of food?

Lamees : (4)..... .
a) No, they aren't b) Yes, they are
c) No, I am not d) Yes, I am

Hoda : What foods are you allergic to?

Lamees : (5)..... .
a) I am allergic to donkeys b) I am allergic to fish
c) I am allergic to dogs d) I am allergic to cats

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions: 5

It is well known that **modern** technology like computers and smart mobile phones has become a part of everyday life. It's common to see that a lot of people are busy using their mobile phones for shopping online, as it saves time and gives them more choices online. Also, many people spend hours playing games or watching TV and don't spend enough time exercising and that's one of the dangers of technology. Although computers have made life easier and more comfortable, **they** have bad effects on our lives. Computer addiction can also cause health problems such as bad eyesight and becoming fat. So, if you aren't addicted to technology, you will be fine.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Shopping online ..... time and gives more choices.
   a) wastes b) saves c) spends d) kills
2. The word "**modern**" means ..... .
   a) old b) ancient c) big d) new

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage? .....
4. Do you like shopping online? Why/ Why not? .....
5. What does the underlined pronoun "**they**" refer to? .....
6. How has technology like computers made life easier? .....

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 4

1. My mother ..... on me to help her with the housework.
   a) improves b) protects c) depends d) pours
2. In your opinion, what is the most important ....., the mobile phone or the plane?
   a) invention b) direction c) invitation d) adventure
3. I like watching ..... films. They are very exciting.
   a) adventure b) amazed c) boring d) interested
4. The ..... which the actors are wearing are wonderful.
   a) instruments b) costumes c) customs d) scenes
5. The screen of my phone was ..... two days ago. I want a new one.
   a) found b) aged c) damaged d) saved

6. Can you give me ..... book? I cannot get it.

a) this b) that c) these d) those

7. What is your ..... about the Museum of Egyptian Modern Art?

a) review b) portrait c) interview d) reviewer

8. If you feel tired, you ..... have a rest.

a) shall b) shouldn't c) should d) won't

5 Choose the correct form of word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d:



1. ..... (you/like) some more juice?

a) Would you like b) You would like c) Have you like d) Are you like

2. You shouldn't ..... (wasting) your time.

a) are wasted b) waste c) wasted d) were wasted

3. I haven't seen ..... (some) tigers in the zoo.

a) much b) any c) lots d) too much

4. ..... (Doesn't) play in the street.

a) Hasn't b) Haven't c) Weren't d) Don't

5. My mother can ..... (making) a cake.

a) made b) make c) makes d) to make

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:



"Healthy food"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

(2) Al-Azhar Exams (Modified)

معدل وفق أحدث المواصفات

Exam 1 — Cairo Zone

A Listening

Listening Text

20

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 2

1. If you spend a lot of time on screens, you will have ..... problems.

a) eye b) ear c) nose d) leg

2. Listening to loud music or films through ..... can damage your hearing.

a) speakers b) microphones c) headphones d) taps

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue: 3

Nahed : Are you going out this afternoon?

Nehal : (1).....

Nahed : (2).....?

Nehal : Because I have not finished my homework yet.

Nahed : (3).....?

Nehal : In an hour. When I finish, I will call you.

Nahed : OK. I will wait for your call then.

B Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 5

1. I do not like to have ..... salt in my food.

a) some b) any c) many d) a

2. ..... is a material made from an animal which is used to make shoes and bags.

a) Wool b) Gold c) Cotton d) Leather

3. ..... people can't see.

a) Blind b) Deaf c) Dumb d) Disabled

4. Heba is going ..... the race.

a) win b) won c) winning d) to win

5. I was playing tennis with my sister when it ..... to rain.

a) starting b) started c) starts d) start

C Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions: 5

Not all people think the same about shopping online. Some people think shopping online is great. They think it saves time because they do not spend much time travelling to the shops. And they can stay at home and buy anything they want in a few minutes. They think that they have many choices online. In their view, shopping online will make fewer cars on the streets, so there will be less pollution. On the other hand, some people do not think the same. They do not like shopping online. They say they always have the wrong delivery when they shop online. They do not like to waste time waiting for the delivery. They prefer to try things and see materials before buying them.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Do all people think the same about shopping online? .....
2. Where can you stay while shopping online? .....
3. What will happen if more people shop online? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ..... .
   a) spending much time b) shopping online
   c) delivery d) travelling
5. Some people do not like to ..... time waiting for a delivery.
   a) use b) waste c) make d) do

5 Read and correct the underlined word(s): 2

1. If there is a new student in our class, we **talk** to him/her. (.....)
2. Would you like **any** more chicken? (.....)
3. This is my car. The other **one's** is my father's. (.....)
4. When I was young, I **not/use** ride bikes. (.....)

D Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on: 3

"Healthy food"

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Listening

Listening Text

20

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

2

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Tamer lives in ..... .
   a) Jordan b) Japan c) Egypt d) Sudan
2. They eat a lot of ..... .
   a) fresh vegetables b) meat c) fat d) dairy products

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

3

Sami : Hi Omar, would you like to come to my house tonight?

Omar: (1)..... . What can we do?

Sami : (2)..... .

Omar: That's a great idea (3).....?

Sami : We can watch "Aladdin". It's an amazing film.

B Usage

5

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Please, ... some tea into my cup.
   a) chop b) fry c) pour d) heat
2. I don't have ..... papers.
   a) a b) any c) an d) some
3. If I go to the shops, I ..... a lot of money.
   a) spent b) spend c) will spend d) spends
4. Bags, belts and shoes are made of ..... .
   a) glass b) gold c) leather d) cotton
5. I like ..... smart, red cotton T-shirt.
   a) those b) these c) this d) it

C Reading Comprehension

5

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Heba. I'm having a great time with my family in Siwa. Today, we have a picnic on Fantanas Island. At the moment, I'm sitting by the water and watching the sunset. We're staying with my parents' friends and they are very kind. When we arrived, it was very late. They still wanted to make us dinner. They brought us fresh dates for breakfast every day. Tomorrow, we are going to visit the Siwa Salt Lake. I'm looking forward to visiting it. After that we're going to visit Shali Fortress and Siwa Museum, you can learn a lot of history there.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Where is Heba?.....
2. What is she doing at the moment?.....
3. What can you learn at Shali Fortress and Siwa Museum?.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Heba is looking forward to visiting the ..... .

a) Pyramids b) Siwa Salt Lake

c) Luxor d) Fantanas Island

5. Her parents' friends bring them fresh ..... for breakfast.

a) fish b) juice c) fruit salad d) dates

5 Read and correct the underlined word(s): 2

1. People **should** drop rubbish on the floor. (.....)
2. The teacher is going **be** angry. (.....)
3. There are **a little** grapes left. (.....)
4. My little sister **buy** a lot of sweets yesterday. (.....)

D Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on: 3

"What you should do to be healthy"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Listening

Listening Text

20

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

2

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Shopping online ..... time.
   a) wastes b) needs c) saves d) spends
2. Hoda can stay at ..... and buy what she needs.
   a) school b) shop c) ship d) home

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

3

Rami and Hany are talking about snacks.

Rami : (1).....?
Hany : My favourite snack is pizza.
Rami : Why?
Hany : (2)..... .
Rami : (3).....?
Hany : I eat it in restaurants.

B Usage

5

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My brother is ..... to watching videos online.
   a) damaged b) broken c) addicted d) allergy
2. ..... means getting ill when you eat or touch something.
   a) Addicted b) Allergic c) Delicious d) Energy
3. My dress is damaged, so my mother is ..... it.
   a) cleaning b) tidying c) sawing d) sewing
4. I have ..... friends, not many.
   a) a few b) a little c) much d) a lot
5. That jacket is mine, but this ..... is yours.
   a) ones b) one c) two d) three

C Reading Comprehension

5

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Trees are good for man and animals. Trees breathe in carbon dioxide and give out oxygen which man needs to be alive. Trees need water and sunshine to grow well. People plant **them** to get food. Planting them makes our environment clean

and beautiful. They are also home to many animals and birds. However, some people cut them down to build houses. If this continues for a long time, desertification happens, so we have to stop cutting down trees and plant them everywhere.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Why do people plant trees? .....
2. What does man need to be alive? .....
3. Do you think that trees are good for animals? Why? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. If ..... continues, desertification happens.
   a) planting trees b) cutting down trees
   c) man and animals d) carbon dioxide and oxygen
5. The underlined pronoun "**them**" refers to ..... .
   a) trees b) food c) people d) animals

5 Read and correct the underlined word(s): 2

1. Rania **reads** a nice story last night. (.....)
2. Children shouldn't **talking** to strangers. (.....)
3. It's a **linen, beautiful, blue** dress. (.....)
4. **This** glasses are my favourite. (.....)

D Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on: 3

"Your favourite snack"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam 4

A Listening

Listening Text

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

20

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 2

1. My cousins always make ..... cakes.
   a) bad b) wonderful c) dirty d) funny
2. The speaker ..... how to cook.
   a) knows b) know c) doesn't know d) has known

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue: 3

Adel and Ali are talking about tourism.

Adel : What do you think of tourism, Ali?
Ali : (1)..... .
Adel : (2).....?
Ali : Because it brings our country a lot of money.
Adel : Great! (3).....?
Ali : We should treat tourists kindly.

B Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 5

1. If I go to the shops, I ..... spend a lot of money.
   a) would b) will c) would have d) am
2. ..... is a special kind of writing for blind people.
   a) Sign b) Shapes c) Braille d) Notes
3. Don't ..... electric wires.
   a) touching b) touches c) touch d) to touch
4. I am interested ..... reading.
   a) at b) for c) to d) in
5. He can't drive because he ..... his driving test.
   a) failed b) passed c) succeeded d) managed

C Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions: 5

Learning a foreign language is not **easy**. Lots of people all over the world are learning English for different reasons. It is the most widely spoken language in the world. A tour guide needs to use English when he speaks to tourists from different countries in the world. Businessmen need to use English because **they** travel to many countries. Students need to learn English to be able to read books written in English.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Suggest a suitable title for this passage. .....
2. What does the underlined pronoun "**they**" refer to? .....
3. Do you think learning English is important for businessmen? Why? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. A tour guide needs English to speak to ..... .

   a) tourists b) farmers c) students d) doctors

5. The opposite of the underlined word "**easy**" is "..... ".

   a) different b) difficult c) fast d) amazing

5 Read and correct the underlined word(s): 2

1. If you don't know someone, you **not make** friends with them online. (.....)
2. She has got too **many** money, so she can buy the phone. (.....)
3. I think the exam **is** be easy. (.....)
4. He doesn't **plays** tennis. (.....)

D Writing

6 Write an email of FIVE (5) sentences to your friend Omar to tell him about your visit to the Egyptian Museum. Your name is Waleed. 3

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam 5

A Listening

Listening Text
نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

20

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 2

1. There is a lot of ..... pollution in our city.
   a) water b) air c) tree d) plant
2. Trees ..... air pollution.
   a) reduce b) grow c) produce d) make

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue: 3

Ahmed is talking to Adham about his mobile.

Ahmed : Is it your new mobile?
Adham : (1).....
Ahmed : (2).....?
Adham : I bought it last Friday.
Ahmed : (3).....?
Adham : To study my lessons on it.

B Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 5

1. We won't go out tonight if it ..... rainy.
   a) is b) will be c) was d) be
2. ..... isn't a dairy product.
   a) Milk b) Cheese c) Rice d) Butter
3. I don't know ..... use this mobile.
   a) how to b) to c) how d) able to
4. She started to ..... when she saw a mouse.
   a) carry b) cry c) fry d) dry
5. She's got ..... hair.
   a) a long blonde b) a blonde long c) long blonde d) blonde long

C Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions: 5

In ancient Egypt, men and women wore similar clothes. They both wore loose, white, linen clothes with a belt. Most of the time, ancient Egyptians didn't wear shoes, but people sometimes wore expensive leather sandals. Children didn't usually wear many clothes until they were about six years old. Then they start to wear the same clothes

as their parents. Although the Ancient Egyptians' clothes were simple, they loved to wear heavy, metal jewellery. Like some people today, they like to wear beautiful gold necklaces and other jewellery.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. When did children wear clothes? .....
2. What do people like to wear today? .....
3. Did Ancient Egyptians like jewellery? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. In ancient Egypt, men and women wore ..... clothes.

a) difference b) similar c) different d) cute

5. Ancient Egyptians made sandals of ..... .

a) linen b) cotton c) leather d) feather

5 Read and correct the underlined word(s): 2

1. This book is funny but that **ones** is very boring. (.....)
2. What are you going **do** tomorrow? (.....)
3. My father likes **a few** sugar in his tea, not much. (.....)
4. It's a **new, beautiful, leather** bag. (.....)

D Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on: 3

"Why learning languages is important"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Listening

Listening Text

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

20

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 2

1. Online shopping helps us to buy what we want in ..... time.
   a) a few b) a little c) much d) a lot of
2. If more people shop online, there will be fewer cars on the road and less ..... .
   a) money b) pollution c) work d) fun

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue: 3

Hind and Mona are talking about their next summer holiday.

Hind : How are you, Mona?
Mona : (1)..... .
Hind : Where will you go next summer holiday?
Mona : (2)..... .
Hind : Sharm El-Sheikh! Who will you go with?
Mona : (3)..... .

B Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 5

1. The manager was angry when he found ..... the truth.
   a) of b) out c) on d) in
2. My elder brother can ..... from Arabic into English well.
   a) invent b) find c) push d) translate
3. There are ..... expensive new flats next to the river.
   a) a b) an c) any d) some
4. I bought ..... shoes last week.
   a) this b) that c) these d) there
5. My mother always ..... lunch for us.
   a) feeds b) eats c) serves d) tastes

C Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions: 5

Water is very important for the lives of people, plants and animals. Water comes from rain. When there is little rain for a long time, some places have a drought. This means that the land becomes very dry. Egypt doesn't always have a lot of rain, so it is important for us to save water. We can save <u>it</u> if we take a short shower instead of a long one.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Where does water come from?.....
2. Why is it important for the Egyptians to save water?.....
3. Give a suitable title for the passage. .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ..... .

a) drought b) places c) water d) rain

5. Long showers ..... a lot of water.

a) waste b) save c) text d) protect

5 Read and correct the underlined word(s): 2

1. Is she know how to read French? (.....)
2. She suggested go on a trip. (.....)
3. Why don't you wear these nice scarf? (.....)
4. Don't boiling eggs more than one time. (.....)

D Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on: 3

"Environmental pollution in Egypt"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam 7

A Listening

Listening Text
نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

20

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 2

1. It's good that you don't eat ..... .
   a) healthy food b) fast food c) vegetables d) fruit
2. You should eat healthy ..... between meals.
   a) snacks b) sweets c) candies d) cookies

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue: 3

Hala and Nora are talking about the Pyramids.

Hala : Can I ask you some questions?
Nora : (1)..... .
Hala : (2).....?
Nora : They are in Giza.
Hala : How can I go there?
Nora : (3)..... .

B Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 5

1. Ali isn't hungry, so he only wants ..... rice with his chicken.
   a) much b) a little c) a lot of d) a few
2. I am very ..... of my little brother. He always wins medals in tennis.
   a) pride b) proud c) disappear d) upset
3. You ..... swim in the sea if it's very cold.
   a) shouldn't b) should c) may not d) wouldn't
4. ..... the beans in the water until they boil.
   a) Beat b) Meet c) Feed d) Heat
5. Storms and floods are ..... events.
   a) tradition b) traditional c) nature d) natural

C Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions: 5

Computers are very useful and important. Life would be difficult without computers. Computers can do very difficult sums quickly and accurately. They can store huge amounts of information. Computers are used everywhere. They can be used to help planes to take off and land. They are used by doctors to look inside the patients' bodies. Computers can be used to translate from one language to another.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. How can computers help planes? .....
2. Why are computers important? .....
3. In what way can computers help doctors? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Computers can store ..... amounts of information.

a) little b) small c) huge d) few

5. Computers can ..... from one language to another.

a) speak b) translate c) read d) sign

5 Read and correct the underlined word(s): 2

1. She **travel** to Cairo tomorrow, as she arranged. (.....)
2. I recommend **plays** football in a club. (.....)
3. I like this **cotton, red, smart** T-shirt. (.....)
4. If Hoda **visit** Italy, she will buy new shoes. (.....)

D Writing

6 Write an email of FIVE (5) sentences to your friend Kady to tell her about the importance of technology in our life. Your name is Anas. 3

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam 8

A Listening

Listening Text
نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

20

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 2

1. Make sure you have a ..... diet.
   a) balanced b) boiled c) fried d) grilled
2. To be healthy, you have to ..... well.
   a) play b) sleep c) study d) fry

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue: 3

Tamer is asking Kamal about his holiday.

Tamer : Where did you spend your holiday?
Kamal : (1).....
Tamer : (2).....?
Kamal : Because I like the weather of Matrouh.
Tamer : (3).....?
Kamal : I came back on Saturday.

B Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 5

1. Girls like wearing gold ..... in their ears.
   a) necklaces b) rings c) sunglasses d) earrings
2. **A:** There are ..... grapes left. Would you like some? **B:** Yes, please.
   a) a few b) a little c) any d) much
3. ..... mean the things that happen in a film.
   a) Ideas b) Articles c) Actions d) Views
4. Egypt is famous for growing ..... to make materials.
   a) crops b) groups c) goals d) topics
5. My village didn't ..... to have any tourists.
   a) using b) uses c) use d) used

C Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions: 5

Some people are starting to use a plant called bamboo instead of cotton to make clothes. The plant is an important crop in China where the bamboo industry

makes a lot of money. However, although bamboo grows very quickly, it is not a perfect plant. After the bamboo is picked up, people often use chemicals before they can use it to make clothes. These are bad for nature. Also, the material made from bamboo is not very soft. As a result, it is not used for expensive, luxury clothes which are usually made from cotton.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What does the bamboo industry make? .....
2. What are luxury clothes made of? .....
3. Where does the bamboo crop grow? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. People add ..... to bamboo before they use it.
   a) chemicals b) materials c) leaves d) loves
5. The material made from bamboo is ..... .
   a) soft b) heal c) weak d) rough

5 Read and correct the underlined word(s): 2

1. Next week, we are going **plants** trees on the roof of our school. (.....)
2. Some students learn best by reading about something and **took** notes. (.....)
3. I think I **does** all my shopping online when I am older. (.....)
4. We **visit** Cairo last year. (.....)

D Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on: 3

"Holiday plans"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

(3) Inclusive Exams (امتحانات الدمج)

1 Cairo — Al-Salam Directorate

A Language Functions

24

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue:

5

Hoda meets her friend Sally.

Hoda : How are you, Sally?

Sally : I am fine, thanks.

Hoda : What are you doing?

Sally : (1)..... .

a) I am reading a book
b) He is reading a book
c) She is reading a book
d) They are reading a book

Hoda : (2).....?

a) Does he like reading
b) Does she like reading
c) Do you like reading
d) Do they like reading

Sally : Yes, I like reading.

Hoda : Do you go to the library?

Sally : (3)..... .

a) Yes, they do
b) Yes, I do
c) Yes, I did
d) Yes, he does

Hoda : Goodbye.

Sally : (4)..... .

a) Hi
b) Hello
c) Goodbye
d) Fine

B Reading Comprehension

6

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

I have a friend. Omar is my friend. His father is a doctor. His mother is a teacher. Omar's father is called Dr Mustafa. He works in a hospital. He goes to work by car. His mother is called Habiba. She works in a school. She goes to school on foot. Omar is my best friend. I walk to school with my friend Omar. He likes Arabic. I like English. We are clever. We have five lessons a day. We like our school.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My friend's name is ..... .
   a) Omar
   b) Ali
   c) Hoda
   d) Mona
2. Omar's father is a/an ..... .
   a) nurse
   b) engineer
   c) teacher
   d) doctor

3. Omar's mother is a/an ..... .
a) nurse b) teacher c) engineer d) doctor
4. Omar's father goes to work ..... .
a) by bus b) on foot c) by car d) by taxi
5. Omar likes ..... .
a) Arabic b) English c) science d) French
6. They have ..... lessons a day.
a) two b) three c) five d) six

C Vocabulary and Structure

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 5

1. You are a good ..... .
a) boys b) girls c) boy d) students
2. We play football in the ..... .
a) club b) hospital c) police station d) cinema
3. A ..... is a person who repairs cars.
a) beggar b) mechanic c) doctor d) nurse
4. The ..... can help you to listen to music on the bus.
a) headphones b) robot c) screen d) chat
5. Don't ..... too much salt to the food as it is unhealthy.
a) add b) put c) pour d) get
6. A/An ..... is a small computer program that we can use on a mobile.
a) port b) clap c) touch d) app
7. Changing roads into ..... panels is a great invention.
a) moon b) water c) panic d) solar
8. I would prefer ..... abroad.
a) to travel b) travels c) travelling d) travelled
9. You mustn't ..... your car here.
a) parks b) park c) parking d) parked
10. You ..... study hard.
a) shouldn't b) mustn't c) should d) are

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 4

1. If you ..... well, you will win.
a) playing b) play c) plays d) is playing
2. I don't have ..... cheese in the fridge.
a) some b) any c) many d) few

3. Have you ..... a car?

a) get b) gets c) got d) getting

4. This is ..... father.

a) I b) me c) my d) us

5 Reorder the sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c or d: 4

a) I have dinner at seven o'clock in the evening.

b) We have three meals.

c) I have breakfast at 6 o'clock in the morning.

d) I have lunch at two o'clock in the afternoon.

1. ( ) 2. ( ) 3. ( ) 4. ( )

2 Suez

A Language Functions

24

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue: 5

Sami : Where did you go yesterday?

Amar : (1)..... .

a) To the cinema b) To the club

c) Home d) To the hospital

Sami : Why did you go to the cinema?

Amar : (2)..... .

a) To play b) To sleep

c) To walk d) To watch a film

Sami : (3).....?

a) Who did you go with b) Which did you go

c) When did you go d) What did you play

Amar : I went to the cinema with my friend.

Sami : (4).....?

a) Did you like the film b) Is it old

c) Are they strong d) Can you swim

Amar : Yes, I did.

Sami : When did you go back home?

Amar : (5)..... .

a) At nine o'clock b) No, I can't

c) Every week d) With Uncle Adel

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read the following, then answer the questions: 6

Every summer, Sara goes to her uncle's farm for a month. **She** works very **hard**, but she likes it. She loves to spend time with her cousins. Every morning, she wakes up at six o'clock. She collects the eggs and feeds the chickens. After breakfast, she helps her uncle's wife with the housework.

Sara and her cousins always spend a great time together. They climb trees and pick fruits and flowers. They are always very tired at the end of the day. Sara and her cousins always watch TV before they go to bed.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Sara goes to her uncle's farm in the ..... .
   a) spring b) fall c) summer d) winter
2. The underlined pronoun "**She**" refers to ..... .
   a) Sara's father b) cousins c) Sara d) classmates
3. The opposite of the underlined word "**hard**" is "..... ".
   a) easy b) carefully c) carelessly d) locally
4. Sara goes to her uncle's ..... every summer.
   a) garden b) farm c) home d) city
5. She wakes up at ..... o'clock.
   a) five b) seven c) six d) nine
6. Sara collects the ..... .
   a) eggs b) cats c) dogs d) flowers

C Vocabulary and Structure

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 5

1. Ali will ..... swimming next week.
   a) goes b) go c) going d) went
2. She has ..... friends.
   a) a few b) a little c) a lot d) any
3. I can ..... you with your homework.
   a) helping b) help c) helped d) helps
4. They are ..... a match.
   a) plays b) play c) played d) playing
5. She is going ..... drive home.
   a) to b) on c) at d) for

4 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**



1. Scientists will ..... a new car.

a) invent b) invite c) dive d) stay

2. You should stay ..... home when it rains.

a) on b) at c) for d) of

3. I'm ..... to bananas, so I never eat them.

a) kind b) nice c) allergic d) salty

4. People use fava beans to make ..... .

a) soup b) rice c) pasta d) falafel

5. She wears ..... when it is sunny.

a) skirts b) sunglasses c) cars d) necklaces

6. You can watch ..... in the cinema.

a) cans b) films c) statues d) games

7. This dress ..... a lot of money.

a) lasts b) pays c) plays d) costs

8. The water in the sea is very ..... .

a) sweet b) salty c) juicy d) spicy

5 **Choose the correct order of the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c or d:**



1) He studies lessons. 2) He has his breakfast.

3) He goes to school. 4) He goes back home.

a) He has his breakfast. He goes to school. He studies lessons. He goes back home.

b) He studies lessons. He goes to school. He goes back home. He has his breakfast.

c) He studies lessons. He goes back home. He has his breakfast. He goes to school.

d) He goes back home. He studies lessons. He goes to school. He has his breakfast.

Listening Texts

End of Term Practice

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Amira : Hi, Injy. Do you know how to cook?
Injy : Yes, I can cook a few things. What do you want to make?
Amira : Shall we make a cake for Hala? It's her birthday tomorrow.
Injy : Good idea! She likes healthy food, so if we want to make her something healthy, we should make a carrot cake.
Amira : Okay. We will need a recipe. Here's one on my phone.
Injy : What do we need?
Amira : We need some flour, a lot of carrots, a little sugar and some eggs.
Injy : Good. I think we have all of those. What shall I do, Amira?
Amira : Perhaps you could mix the flour and sugar in a bowl, Injy. I'll cut the carrots.
Injy : Okay. How old will Hala be?
Amira : She is fourteen tomorrow.
Injy : If she is fourteen, we should put fourteen nuts on the cake when it's cooked. She likes nuts.
Amira : That's a good idea!

1 Cairo Governorate (El-Zawya El Hamara Educational Zone)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My name is Samir. I am fourteen years old. I am a very active boy. I like doing sports. I always play football with my friends in the club. I always study hard to be a doctor.

2 Cairo Governorate (El-Salam Educational Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My little sister is called Nada. She was born blind, but it didn't stop her from being successful. She likes music. She plays the piano and joins an orchestra. I am really proud of her.

3 Giza Governorate (South Giza Educational Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Hoda loves online shopping as she thinks it saves time. She can get what she needs in a few minutes. She always shops while she is sitting on the sofa at home.

4 Giza Governorate (Educational Administration of Dokki)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Shopping on the internet is very easy. That's why Tamer always buys his needs online. He always does the shopping while he is at work. He always buys things on sale because they are cheap.

5 Alexandria Governorate (Mid Alex Educational Zone)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

There are many ways for travelling, but all of them have advantages and disadvantages. For example, the plane is the fastest one, but it is very expensive. The train is also fast, but it is sometimes uncomfortable.

6 Al-Qalyubia Governorate (East Shubra Educational Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Drones can fly, but they don't need a person to fly them: we can use remote control. This means we can control drones from the ground. In the future, drones are going to help solve some environmental problems.

7 Dakahlia Governorate (Talkha Educational Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I had a very fantastic holiday in Egypt last month. Egypt is famous for its ancient monuments. I visited a museum in Luxor. I was interested in seeing art by Egyptians.

8 Damietta Governorate (New Damietta Educational Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Egyptian cotton is famous all over the world because cotton from Egypt is very good. All of the cotton is picked by hand to keep it soft. It is often used to make luxury clothes and things for homes. Many people work in the cotton industry, from farmers to people making or selling clothes and material.

9 Sharkia Governorate (Belbeis Educational Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

In Ancient Egypt, men and women wore similar clothes. They both wore loose, white, linen clothes with a belt. Ancient Egyptians didn't wear shoes, but rich people wore expensive leather sandals.

10 Ismailia Governorate (South Ismailia Educational Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Ali loves travelling a lot. He went on a trip to Luxor with his father. They were staying at a camp. Every morning, they were travelling around the desert on camels. They came back to Cairo by train.

11 Suez Governorate (Suez Educational Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My name's Ali. My dad owns a restaurant and I help in the kitchen on Fridays. The cook is my friend and he is teaching me to make different cakes.

12 New Valley Governorate (Dakhla Educational Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My best friend is deaf. The deaf are the people who can't hear. They are useful to our country so we should help them and treat them as normal people.

13 Fayoum Governorate (East Fayoum Educational Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
Jihan ordered a laptop last month, but when it arrived, the screen was damaged. She sent them an email to change it for a new one.

14 Beni Suef Governorate (Ihnasia Educational Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
Ziad likes the desert as it is very quiet. In the desert, the weather is very cold at night so Ziad always wears heavy clothes.

15 Assiut Governorate (Manflout Educational Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
My sister is called Fatma. Her birthday party will be next Thursday. We have arranged everything. I am inviting her friends to the party. My mum is making a cake. My dad is buying balloons and soft drinks for the party.

16 Qena Governorate (Qeft Educational Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
There is much air pollution in the cities because of the traffic. It's unhealthy and causes a lot of diseases. The solution is to plant more trees so the government decided to plant a lot of trees next week. Trees are very good for the environment as they breathe out oxygen.

17 Sohag Governorate (Gerga Educational Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
Omar is going to his friend's birthday party next week. The party will be on the roof of his friend's house. He bought a camera as a present for his friend because he likes taking photos. He is very excited to attend the party and have fun with his friends.

18 Luxor Governorate (Esna Educational Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
I work as a volunteer for a charity. The charity helps to clean our local beach. At the weekends, we go to the beach and pick up the rubbish. We always pick up plastic bottles.

19 Aswan Governorate (Kom Ombo Educational Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
Egypt is famous for its ancient sites, so many tourists come to visit them. One of these attractive sites is the Karnak Temple in Luxor, where you can see lots of amazing things, such as statues and temples. There are also lots of different ruins at Karnak.

20 Port Said Governorate (Port Said Educational Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
My name is Lama. I love online shopping. I ordered a new phone a week ago, but when it arrived, the screen was damaged. I sent them an email to change it for a new one.

Al-Azhar Exams

1 Exam 1 (Cairo Zone)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
You should be careful while you are using technology. For example, too much time on screens can cause eye problems. Listening to too loud music through headphones can damage your hearing. You should use them wisely.

2 Exam 2 (Suez Zone)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
My best friend is called Tamer. He lives in Jordan. He lives with his family. They eat a lot of fresh vegetables.

3 Exam 3 (Assiut Zone)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
Hoda loves online shopping as she thinks that it saves time. She can stay at home and buy what she needs in a few minutes.

4 Exam 4

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
My cousins know how to cook. They always make wonderful cakes. I like their cakes. I don't know how to cook.

5 Exam 5

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
There is a lot of air pollution in our city. That's why the government decided to plant more trees as trees help to reduce air pollution.

6 Exam 6

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
Online shopping is great. It saves time. It helps us to buy what we want in a little time. If more people shop online, there will be fewer cars on the road and less pollution.

7 Exam 7

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
It's good that you don't eat fast food, but if you feel very hungry between meals, it's a good idea to have a snack. But you have to make sure that they are healthy.

8 Exam 8

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
To be healthy, make sure you have a balanced diet. You have to drink a lot of water. To be healthy, you have to sleep well.

ALADWAA
Gem

2nd PREP
SECOND TERM

NEW HELLO

Ongoing Assessment Booklet

2025

CONTENTS



1 Check Your Vocabulary

2 Follow up Worksheets

3 Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheets

4 Mini-Tests

5 Al-Azhar Mini-Tests

Unit 7
Lessons 1 & 2

Follow up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

يسبب تلوثا	.....	توصيل/تسليم	.....	اختراع	.....		
مفيد لـ	.....	يعرف/يكتشف عن	.....	ألواح الطاقة الشمسية	.....		
يتفق/لا يتفق مع	.....	يتبادل الأدوار	.....	سترة ذكية	.....		
دراجة نارية	.....	يترجم إلى	.....	التسوق عبر الإنترنت	.....		
يقضى/ينفق	.....	على سرعة	.....	سماعات الرأس	.....		
هام	.....	فائدة	.....	يولد كهرباء	.....		

B Quiz Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A ..... is a kind of aircraft that uses long, thin parts on its top that turn round quickly.
   a) plane b) rocket c) helicopter d) spaceship
2. The internet is a great ..... .
   a) invent b) discover c) discovery d) invention
3. Do you ..... pizza or fish for dinner?
   a) prefer b) owe c) agree d) change
4. A pencil is useful ..... writing notes and drawing.
   a) at b) for c) on d) of
5. I think the headphone ..... very useful.
   a) will be b) would be c) be d) are going to be
6. ..... lend you the book?
   a) He will b) Will he c) He is d) Is he

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My sister ..... (would) be 30 next year.
2. **A:** Will your cousins stay in Cairo? **B:** No, they ..... (will).
3. We ..... (go) to the park if the weather is nice.
4. Omar will not play outside if it ..... (be) too hot.



Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Saher and Yasser are talking about technology.

Saher : Can I ask you some questions?

Yasser: (1)..... .

Saher : (2).....?

Yasser: I think technology makes our life much easier.

Saher : Do you agree that we will have more inventions in the future?

Yasser: (3)..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I don't like to ..... time waiting for a delivery.
   a) save b) waste c) owe d) prefer
2. We all ..... the choice to either do online shopping or go to shops.
   a) make b) do c) take d) have
3. It can push you into the air ..... the speed of a fast car.
   a) at b) on c) in d) for
4. I think lots of people ..... one of these headphones.
   a) bought b) buying c) would buy d) will buy
5. If more people shop online, there ..... fewer cars on the road.
   a) are b) is c) would be d) will be

3 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Future inventions"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit 7
Lessons 3 & 4

Follow up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

يراجع/يفحص	.....	التغير المناخى	.....	يتواصل	.....
خبير	.....	لديه صداع	.....	يعطى نصيحة	.....
مسافر	.....	مقبض	.....	ألم	.....
عن طريق الخطأ	.....	يكون صداقات مع	.....	نموذج	.....
يبنى آلة	.....	يشعر بالتعب/ بالقلق	.....	يستكشف	.....
يختفى	.....	مشكلة فى	.....	فجأة	.....

B Quiz Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. "....." is when the weather gets really different.
   a) Planet b) Handle
   c) Climate change d) Headache
2. The food tasted ....., and I wasn't sure if it was still good.
   a) strange b) cool c) famous d) pretty
3. We can ..... photos of our trip with our friends.
   a) make b) share c) do d) tidy
4. Ziad likes to chat with his friends ..... social media.
   a) on b) at c) for d) with
5. You should ..... kind to others.
   a) been b) being c) be d) are
6. When you cook, you ..... be careful with hot surfaces.
   a) should b) will c) have d) need

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. What should I do if I ..... (missed) the bus?
2. Drivers ..... (should) drive when they are tired or sleepy.
3. ..... (I should) say sorry if I hurt someone's feelings?
4. Shouldn't we ..... (wearing) sunscreen when going out in the sun?

Unit 7
Lessons 3 & 4



Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Let's ..... a break and eat some snacks.
   a) make b) drop c) have d) tidy
2. My little cousin is ..... to eating candy all the time.
   a) angry b) funny c) strange d) addicted
3. The sun will ..... behind the clouds soon.
   a) push b) disappear c) pick up d) believe in
4. ..... turn off the lights when we leave the room?
   a) Should we b) We should c) Did we d) We did
5. If you want to get fit, you should ..... regularly.
   a) to exercising b) exercising c) to exercise d) exercise

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Once upon a time, there was a scientist named Tom. He wanted to invent something amazing, so he built a time machine. One day, he decided to test his invention. He set the time machine to go back to the age of dinosaurs. When he arrived, he saw huge dinosaurs walking around. Tom was amazed! Then, he travelled to the future. He saw flying cars and robots doing some work. Tom was excited to see all the changes. Finally, he returned home safely. Tom understood that with his time machine, he could explore different times and learn many new things. He was happy.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. How did Tom feel when he saw the dinosaurs in the past?

   .....

2. What is a time machine?

   .....

3. Why do you think Tom was happy about inventing the time machine?

   .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Tom built the time machine to ..... .
   a) become famous b) invent something amazing
   c) travel to space d) visit the past
5. Tom saw ..... when he travelled to the future.
   a) castles b) flying cars c) robots d) b & c

Unit 7
Lessons 5 & 6

Follow up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

ملصق إعلانى	خطر	يدمر/يضر .....
مناظرة	يطلب/يأمر	عناوين .....
مفقود	لقب العائلة	يرسل رسالة نصية .....
سعيد بشأن	بالغ من العمر	يحسن .....
يفكر/يعتقد فى	يتصل بالإنترنت	يمارس التمارين الرياضية .....
يجلب/يُحضر	إيجابى	بدون .....

B Quiz Time

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Kady and Mazen are talking about technology.

Kady : Can we talk about technology?
Mazen: (1)..... . What do you think of technology?
Kady : I think it makes communication easier.
Mazen: (2)..... . Do you think it can be bad sometimes?
Kady : Yes, it can make us waste time.
Mazen: (3).....?
Kady : When we spend too much time playing games or watching videos.
Mazen: (4).....?
Kady : We should use it carefully.
Mazen: (5)..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Don't sit on this chair. It's ..... .
   a) funny b) missing c) damaged d) aged
2. Hamsa is abroad. She ..... her mum every day.
   a) brings b) texts c) wears d) gets
3. I go ..... holiday to the beach every summer.
   a) on b) for c) at d) in
4. If you want to succeed, you ..... study hard.
   a) need b) have c) will d) should
5. We ..... not go out if it rains.
   a) will b) are c) have d) did

Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

Listening Text
نص الاستماع
فى نهاية التدريب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You will have ..... problems when you spend too much time on screens.
   a) eye b) arm c) leg d) foot
2. ..... people spend much time on screens.
   a) Much b) None of c) Lots of d) Few

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Nancy put herself in ..... to save her little brother.
   a) robot b) danger c) surname d) debate
2. I ..... exercise every morning to stay healthy.
   a) do b) make c) bring d) say
3. I studied late ..... night for my exam.
   a) with b) for c) at d) into
4. ..... you come to the party if I invite you?
   a) Should b) Will c) Must d) Are
5. You ..... spend all your money at once.
   a) will b) won't c) shouldn't d) should

3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. I think I **went** to the club this evening. (.....)
2. When your father **arrive**, we will eat together. (.....)
3. I think you **should** take that course. It's a waste of time. (.....)
4. Parents shouldn't **gave** medicine to their children without going to the doctor first. (.....)

Listening Text:

Many people spend hours playing video games or watching TV. If you spend a lot of time on screens, you will have eye problems and headaches.

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Mohamed is asking Mostafa about online shopping. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

Mohamed : Do you like online shopping?

Mostafa : (1)..... .

Mohamed : (2).....?

Mostafa : Because it saves time.

Mohamed : (3).....?

Mostafa : Yes, it is easy to buy things online.

Mohamed : What type of things do you usually order?

Mostafa : (4)..... .

Mohamed : Do you think that we will do all our shopping online in the future?

Mostafa : (5)..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He drinks a lot of coffee. He became ..... to it. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) expert b) follower c) scientist d) addicted
2. The weather was ....., with heavy rain and strong winds all day.
   a) nice b) wonderful c) horrible d) fantastic
3. There are a lot of floods because of ..... . أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
   a) climate change b) planting trees
   c) schools d) drought
4. Reading every day can help ..... your vocabulary.
   a) connect b) communicate
   c) improve d) prove
5. We will play football ..... we are free. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢
   a) why b) if c) where d) how
6. People shouldn't ..... fast in the city centre. بني سويف ٢٠٢٢
   a) driven b) driving c) drove d) drive

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. You shouldn't ..... (playing) video games all day; it's not good for your eyes.
2. If you do exercise every day, you ..... (won't) be fit. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
3. If he ..... (play) well, he will win the match. بورسعيد ٢٠٢٢
4. It's a very dangerous area. Tourists ..... (not/go) there.

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Social media"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit 7 Al-Azhar Mini-Test

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Abdullah is asking Esraa about using apps.

Abdullah : Do you use any apps to learn English?

Esraa : (1)..... . *I use a few apps for vocabulary and grammar practice.*

Abdullah : How much time should I spend learning English every day?

Esraa : At least 30 minutes a day.

Abdullah : Is it important to have a study partner?

Esraa : (2)..... . A study partner can help you.

Abdullah : (3)..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Sorry for taking your book ..... mistake.
   a) at b) by c) on d) for
2. Some people like to travel to other countries to ..... new places.
   a) explore b) invent c) damage d) waste
3. Don't spend too much time on ..... playing and checking social media.
   a) resources b) levers c) posters d) screens
4. You ..... make noise because your baby brother is asleep.
   a) won't b) don't c) aren't d) shouldn't
5. We will be late if we ..... .
   a) run b) won't run c) don't run d) didn't run

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

New technology means that forms of communication are changing all the time. For example, think about how phones have developed over the last 20 years. In the past, people used to type messages using special letters on their phones. Then, people started to touch the screens on their phones to type their messages. Now, phones are able to understand people's voices and many people are speaking to their phones to send messages. Some scientists think that phones are going to know what people think in the future. Perhaps our phones will read our facial expressions before **they** send a message!

A) Answer the following questions:

1. How did people use to send messages on a phone?
   .....
2. What are phones able to understand nowadays?
   .....
3. Do you think that phones will know what we think in the future? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "**they**" refers to ..... .
   a) messages b) phones c) people d) scientists
5. Many people are speaking to their phones to ..... .
   a) send messages b) understand them
   c) develop them d) go online

4 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. If you eat too much junk food, you **not lose** weight. (.....)
2. I hope John **be** back before 9.30. (.....)
3. I think lots of people will **used** this invention. (.....)
4. If we have more free time, we **able to** visit our grandparents. (.....)

5 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Dangers of technology"

.....

.....

Unit 8
Lessons 1 & 2

Follow up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

طاقة	ألعاب القوى	لديه حساسية (من) .....
كرة الشبكة	يقدم عرضًا	دهون .....
شائع/منتشر	مراهق	يتذوق/مذاق .....
يغسل الأطباق	نتيجة	تدريب .....
حريص	يدعو (إلى)	متبـق .....
بحث (دراسة)	في الطريق إلى البيت	منتجات ألبان .....

B Quiz Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Eating healthy food gives you more ..... .
   a) nuts b) fat c) taste d) energy
2. Fatma can't eat nuts because she is allergic ..... them.
   a) at b) about c) to d) for
3. Yoga has become very ..... as a way to stay fit and relaxed.
   a) popular b) delicious c) lucky d) sweet
4. Sea water is ..... . We can't drink it.
   a) spicy b) salty c) juicy d) sweet
5. We have ..... important news to share.
   a) a few b) many c) any d) some
6. Manal and Ola didn't receive ..... emails about the event.
   a) some b) a little c) any d) a lot

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Is there ..... (many) traffic on the way to work?
2. We ..... (wouldn't) like eating fast food.
3. She gave me ..... (a little) books to read.
4. Ahmed ..... (will) like a piece of chocolate.



Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Nada is offering cookies to Rana.

Nada: Would you like some cookies, Rana?

Rana : (1)..... . I shouldn't have too many.

Nada: (2).....?

Rana : Thank you, I love milk.

Nada: Do you prefer your milk warm or cold?

Rana : Cold, please.

Nada: (3)..... . Cookies with cold milk!

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The ..... had ten questions, and I got eight right.
   a) plate b) research c) result d) quiz
2. My brother is a ....., he is fifteen years old.
   a) kid b) baby c) teenager d) child
3. Milk and cheese are examples of dairy ..... .
   a) products b) spices c) athletics d) ovens
4. She added ..... sugar to her tea.
   a) a few b) a little c) a lot d) a
5. ..... you like swimming in the pool?
   a) Will b) Have c) Does d) Do

3 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Your favourite snack"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit 8
Lessons 3 & 4

Follow up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

قدر القلى	تعليمات	وصفة طعام .....
طازج	جاف	مُـقطع .....
يُسَخِّن	يصب (فى)	رسم تخطيطى/توضيحى .....
حساء/شوربة	يُخرج من	يقدم طعامًا/يخدم .....
البشر	يخفق بـ	عادى .....
يغلى/يسلق	سلطانية	يناقش .....

B Quiz Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mum made delicious soup for dinner, and she ..... it in a big bowl.
   a) chopped b) served c) fried d) added
2. Be careful with the ..... when you're cutting vegetables.
   a) pan b) bowl c) fork d) knife
3. Fesikh is a ..... salty fish.
   a) dry b) fresh c) boiled d) soft
4. We ..... the milk to make hot chocolate.
   a) fry b) add c) heat d) beat
5. ..... writing every day to improve your skills.
   a) Practising b) Practise c) Practised d) Practises
6. ..... play with matches.
   a) Won't b) Didn't c) Doesn't d) Don't

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Don't ..... (forgot) to ask for help when you need it.
2. ..... (Turning) off the lights before you leave.
3. ..... (Completed) your homework on time.
4. ..... (not/ touch) the hot stove, or you could burn your hand badly.

Unit 8
Lessons 3 & 4



Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Make sure you include plenty of ..... in your diet to give you energy.
   a) butter b) protein c) oil d) soup
2. Mum asked me to ..... some vegetables to make a salad.
   a) beat b) add c) pour d) chop
3. Let's follow the ..... to make delicious chocolate cake.
   a) recipe b) bowl c) diagram d) square
4. If you feel worried, ... a book before bedtime.
   a) reading b) not read c) to read d) read
5. ..... forget to feed the cat.
   a) Doesn't b) Don't c) Not d) No

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Eating healthy food is important for our bodies to stay strong and feel good. Healthy foods give us energy and help us grow. Fruits and vegetables are examples of healthy foods. They are colourful and full of vitamins that our bodies need. Apples, bananas, carrots, and spinach are some examples of healthy foods we can eat. It's also good to eat foods like whole grains, which give us energy that lasts longer. Foods like cookies and chips are not healthy because they have a lot of sugar and fat. Remember, choosing healthy foods can help us stay healthy and happy. So, let's try to eat more fruits, vegetables and whole grains every day!

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Why is it important to eat healthy food?

.....

2. Can you name some examples of healthy foods mentioned in the passage?

.....

3. How can eating healthy foods make us feel?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Fruits and vegetables are important because they ..... .
   a) have a lot of sugar and fat b) are full of vitamins
   c) make us feel tired d) are not tasty
5. The whole grains are a good food choice because they ..... .
   a) are colourful b) have a lot of sugar
   c) give us energy d) have a lot of fat

Unit 8
Lessons 5 & 6

Follow up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

يقدم	.....	وجبة/نظام غذائى	.....	متوازن	.....
كمية	.....	يمتلك	.....	يعتمد على	.....
يحدث	.....	يراجع الامتحانات	.....	سبب	.....
مطعم	.....	يدهش/يذهل	.....	يسترخى	.....
يقوم بعمل تمارين	.....	قلق على	.....	متضايق/منزعج	.....
أساسى/رئيسى	.....	يعنى	.....	يتأكد	.....

B Quiz Time

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Manar always forgets important things. Ramez advises her to make a to-do list.

Manar : Hello, Ramez. I need your help.
Ramez : Hi! (1)..... ?
Manar : I always forget important things.
Ramez : (2)..... .
Manar : (3)..... . How could I start?
Ramez : You could write down what you need to do each day.
Manar : (4)..... ?
Ramez : It's a good idea to use your mobile phone.
Manar : Thanks, Ramez.
Ramez : (5)..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I don't have time, so I don't ..... enough exercise.
   a) play b) do c) make d) teach
2. I have a very healthy ..... . I eat lots of fruit and vegetables.
   a) restaurant b) club c) point d) diet
3. My parents ..... a restaurant and I often help in the kitchen.
   a) own b) explain c) relax d) happen
4. Mum washes too ..... dishes every day.
   a) enough b) little c) many d) much
5. There isn't too ..... space in this room.
   a) much b) enough c) few d) a lot of

Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Listening Text
نص الاستماع
فى نهاية التدريب.

1. The speaker wants to do ..... .
   a) a sport b) drawing c) painting d) b & c
2. The speaker doesn't have enough ..... .
   a) time b) friends c) money d) space

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I'm really hungry after the ..... club because I do too much sport.
   a) diet b) music c) athletics d) art
2. I'm working really hard, but I'm worried ..... my exams.
   a) with b) of c) for d) about
3. I can't tell my mother that I failed my test. I don't want to ..... her.
   a) introduce b) upset c) own d) relax
4. Samy feels too ..... pain in his back.
   a) much b) enough c) any d) many
5. Do you have ..... time to finish the project?
   a) a lot b) few c) enough d) a

3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. We need to go to the greengrocer's. There are **little** potatoes left. (.....)
2. **Would** you like listening to classical music? (.....)
3. **Washing** some beans and put them in a pan. (.....)
4. I can't help you. I have **too much** problems right now. (.....)

Listening Text:

I want to go to art school to do drawing and painting, but I don't have enough time.

Unit 8 Mini-Test

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Hend asks Noha for advice to get better at cooking.

Hend : Hi Noha, can I ask for some advice?

Noha : (1)..... . What do you want?

Hend : (2)..... .

Noha : How about starting with simple recipes?

Hend : That's a good idea. (3).....?

Noha : You can find these recipes on the internet.

Hend : Why don't you recommend a recipe to start with?

Noha : (4)..... .

Hend : Pasta! (5).....?

Noha : You should also try pizza.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It's good that you don't eat ..... food.
   a) addicted b) allergic c) fast d) delicious
2. She cooks eggs in the frying ..... every morning.
   a) recipe b) pan c) fork d) knife
3. My mother always ..... dinner at 9 pm.
   a) serves b) pours c) adds d) chops
4. My brother eats a ..... diet to stay healthy.
   a) terrible b) ready c) main d) balanced
5. There is ..... rice in the fridge.
   a) a lot b) few c) some d) any
6. They don't have ..... sandwiches to eat. They want some more.
   a) enough b) much c) little d) some

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Don't ..... (threw) rubbish on the ground.
2. We'd like ..... (finish) the project early.
3. There is a ..... (few) water in the glass.
4. We spent a ..... (much) of money on our new house.

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"A balanced diet"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit 8 Al-Azhar Mini-Test

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Ali is asking for advice.

Ali : Hi Taha, I need some advice. I want to get fit.
Taha : It's good that you want to get fit. (1).....?
Ali : That's a great idea. But I don't know which exercise to do.
Taha : You can start with walking or running.
Ali : (2)..... . What else should I do?
Taha : (3)..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Hossam can't eat nuts because he is allergic ..... them.
   a) at b) to c) about d) for
2. She found a new ..... for chocolate cake.
   a) recipe b) protein c) bone d) diagram
3. Our plans for the picnic ..... on the weather.
   a) relax b) own c) depend d) happen
4. How ..... books did you read last month?
   a) many b) much c) few d) little
5. Don't eat ..... of sweets because they're not healthy.
   a) some b) a lot c) a little d) a few

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Sara. My family has a small bakery, and I love to help them in baking. My older sister is the main baker, and she teaches me how to make different types of bread and cakes. However, there's a challenge – I end up eating too many cakes! I understand the importance of exercise, but it's hard to find time because I'm always at the bakery. Besides helping out, I also go to school and complete my homework. I enjoy spending time at the bakery, but I worry about my health. I want to continue helping my family, but I need to find a balance between baking and staying healthy.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What does Sara enjoy doing with her family? .....
2. How does Sara feel about eating too many cakes? .....
3. What's your advice for Sara? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Sara's ..... teaches her how to bake.
   a) mother b) older sister c) father d) friends
5. Sara's main interest is ..... .
   a) exercise b) baking
   c) homework d) bread and cakes

4 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. I don't think the door is wide **much** to get the sofa into the room. (.....)
2. **Not** put on your jacket. It's hot. (.....)
3. **Would** you like listening to classical music? (.....)
4. Would you like **a** milk with your cookies? (.....)

5 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"A healthy snack"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Follow up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

يعزف على آلة موسيقية	يرسم منظرا طبيعيًا	يخيط ملابس (أزياء) .....
صورة فنية للوجه	فخار/خزف	يكتب نصًا/سيناريو .....
يمثل	يوصى/يرشح	مهتم بـ .....
فن الخط	نقد	النحت .....
طين/صلصال	متحمس/منفعل	مسرح .....
زاهى الألوان	قديم جدا/أثرى	تمثال .....

B Quiz Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Laila wants to be a/an ..... because she loves drawing.
   a) musician b) actress c) actor d) artist
2. We saw a/an ..... view from the top of the mountain. It was so cool.
   a) terrible b) busy c) amazing d) boring
3. ..... my point of view, it's better to exercise in the morning.
   a) At b) From c) To d) Of
4. My kids watched a funny ..... on TV last night.
   a) view b) chat c) cartoon d) review
5. Adel is able ..... with a great skill.
   a) to painting b) painting c) to paint d) paint
6. ..... start the meeting now?
   a) Are we b) We are c) Can we d) We can

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. They know .....(design) a website.
2. Are you .....(able/help) me with this task?
3. .....(Do) Nelly know how to play chess?
4. Reda .....(not) able to fix the computer by himself.



Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Meral went to the new art exhibition.

Ingy : Hi, Meral! How was your day?

Meral: Hi, Ingy! It was good. (1)..... .

Ingy : That sounds interesting! (2).....?

Meral: From my point of view, it was amazing.

Ingy : (3).....?

Meral: My favourite thing was the colours of the paintings.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Salma wrote a ..... for her school play.
   a) script b) scenery c) portrait d) painting
2. He felt ..... when he saw the presents for his birthday.
   a) terrible b) empty c) free d) excited
3. The students wore colourful ..... for the school play.
   a) concerts b) costumes c) statues d) customs
4. ..... the teacher able to explain the lesson well?
   a) Will b) Can c) Does d) Is
5. She ..... know how to draw portraits.
   a) hasn't b) haven't c) doesn't d) isn't

3 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"A visit to a museum"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Follow up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

معاق	أصم	أعمى .....
مهارة	رسام/نقاش	موسيقى/عازف .....
يتساءل/يتعجب	إشارة المرور	لغة الإشارة .....
يعزف فى حفلات موسيقية	يعانق/يحتضن	ينتج .....
عام (للجمهور)	يصيح فى وجه	يتخيل .....
يختبئ/يخفى	على كرسى متحرك	يتبادل الأدوار .....

B Quiz Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ola learns ..... language to communicate with her deaf friend.
   a) skill b) sign c) traffic d) signal
2. Some ..... people use wheelchairs to move around.
   a) disabled b) able c) disable d) unable
3. It's ..... that he didn't call us today. He calls us every day.
   a) public b) honest c) private d) strange
4. The turtle will ..... in its shell when it feels frightened.
   a) hug b) imagine c) hide d) throw
5. Shahenda ..... bake delicious cakes.
   a) able to b) is able to c) is able d) able
6. Do we know ..... to the museum from here?
   a) how to get b) to get c) get d) how

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My sisters can ..... (plays) the piano beautifully.
2. I don't know how ..... (start) this machine.
3. Kareem is ..... (not/able) run as fast as his brother.
4. I ..... (can) read without glasses. I don't see anything.



Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The movie had subtitles for the ..... audience المشاهدين.
   a) local b) honest c) blind d) deaf
2. I ..... what we will eat for lunch.
   a) hug b) wonder c) cry d) throw
3. Every Saturday, a ..... plays the guitar at the local café.
   a) character b) rival c) painter d) musician
4. Can they ..... that mountain?
   a) how to climb b) to climb c) climb d) climbing
5. ..... we able to use the internet here?
   a) Are b) Can c) Do d) Did

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

The Bright Stars Orchestra is at a school for blind children in London. Sam Smith is one of the musicians. He plays the piano excellently. He began playing when he was just seven. Sam lost his sight at birth. He enjoys playing with the orchestra because he loves music and spending time with his friends. Last summer, they travelled to Italy and Spain with the orchestra. I find the orchestra inspiring. It must be challenging to read musical notes by touch and then recall them. I would love to attend one of their performances someday.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. How old was Sam when he started playing the piano? .....
2. Why does Sam enjoy playing with the orchestra? .....
3. What countries did the orchestra travel to last summer? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The Bright Stars Orchestra is in ..... .
   a) Paris b) London c) New York d) Madrid
5. Sam plays the ..... .
   a) guitar b) lute c) piano d) flute

Follow up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

يصنع أفلامًا	.....	يوقف الحرائق	.....	أداء	.....
بدلاً من	.....	يهرب	.....	يهبط	.....
حدث	.....	معلومات	.....	أساسى/رئيسى	.....
مدينة ترفيهية	.....	يطلب/طلب	.....	مغامرة	.....
وجهة نظر/منظر	.....	يعيد تدوير ...	.....	مخيف	.....
كاتب	.....	مناقشة	.....	ناقد	.....

B Quiz Time

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ali is inviting Tamer to go to the park.

Ali : Hi Tamer, how are you?

Tamer : (1)..... .

Ali : Would you like to go to the park with me tomorrow?

Tamer : (2)..... . What time should I meet you?

Ali : (3)..... .

Tamer : (4).....?

Ali : Yes, please. I like snacks. (5).....?

Tamer : Yes, I could. I'll bring a football.

Ali : I will also bring some juice and water.

Tamer : Sounds good. See you tomorrow at 10 am.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. After reading the chapter, I wrote a short ..... to help me remember the details.
   a) summary b) theme c) discussion d) star
2. In art class, we learn how to ..... sculptures.
   a) get b) give c) present d) make
3. We can ..... near the supermarket.
   a) recycle b) park c) request d) escape
4. I can't ..... the instructions for the game.
   a) understood b) understanding c) understand d) to understand
5. Aliaa and Magda are able ..... difficult maths problems.
   a) to solve b) to solving c) solve d) solving

Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

Listening Text
نص الاستماع في نهاية التدريب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. *Jurassic World* is a ..... film.
   a) cartoon b) bad c) scary d) funny
2. The action was ..... .
   a) exciting b) boring c) sad d) dull

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I read a ..... of the new restaurant before going there.
   a) summary b) review c) scientist d) dinosaur
2. We ..... paper, plastic and cans to help the environment.
   a) request b) offer c) escape d) recycle
3. Can I ..... some help with my homework?
   a) park b) stop c) ask for d) present
4. Do you ..... how to solve this puzzle?
   a) know b) can c) able d) will
5. I am ..... go to the meeting next week. I'm very ill.
   a) able to b) not able to c) can d) can't

3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. He can **using** my car if he needs it. (.....)
2. Shahenda **not** able to attend the meeting. (.....)
3. My sister **don't** know how to do make-up. (.....)
4. Are you able to **doing** calligraphy? (.....)

Listening Text:

I recommend *Jurassic World* if you like exciting and scary films, but not if you want a good story. I thought the action was exciting.

Unit 9 Mini-Test

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ayman and Helmy are talking about Art. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢

Ayman : Hello, Helmy. Do you like art?

Helmy : (1)..... .

Ayman : (2).....?

Helmy : Yes, I can draw and paint.

Ayman : (3).....?

Helmy : I like drawing sceneries.

Ayman : Sceneries! Do you like nature?

Helmy : (4)..... .

Ayman : What else do you like to draw?

Helmy : (5)..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I read a story about schoolboys who have to live ..... an island.
   a) for b) in c) at d) on
2. The plane ..... in the sea and the pilot died.
   a) offered b) landed c) invited d) requested
3. Many of the students at the school ..... the orchestra.
   a) died b) cried c) joined d) played
4. The painting made me feel happy because it was very ..... .
   a) colourful b) free c) empty d) excited
5. ..... paint scenery?
   a) She can b) Can she c) Is she d) She is
6. Wael knows how ..... well.
   a) singing b) sing c) to singing d) to sing

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. They ..... (can) drive yet; they're too young.
2. Sally is not able ..... (carry) heavy weights.
3. ..... (Am) you know how to make a reservation?
4. My friends and I can ..... (sewed) our own clothes.

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"A visit to a museum"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit 9 Al-Azhar Mini-Test

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Sally asks Taher about mobile phones.

Sally : Can I ask you some questions?

Taher : (1)..... .

Sally : (2).....?

Taher : In my opinion, mobile phones are good.

Sally : (3).....?

Taher : Because we use them to communicate with each other.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An ..... is a person who paints or draws for a job.
   a) writer b) reviewer c) artist d) scientist
2. A ..... is someone who plays against you in a game.
   a) painter b) rival c) reporter d) musician
3. A radio ..... is someone who writes and delivers news stories on the radio.
   a) reporter b) report c) review d) reviewer
4. Nada can ..... to the people at drama club.
   a) talks b) talk c) talking d) talked
5. Do you know how ..... videos?
   a) to edit b) edit c) editing d) edits

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

"Jurassic World" is an exciting film about a park with dinosaurs. Scientists make new dinosaurs that are bigger and scarier than before. Many people come to the park because it's popular. But something bad happens when one dinosaur escapes. Disorder starts when the big dinosaur causes problems on the island. A group of people, like the park manager and a dinosaur trainer, need to stop the dinosaur and save everyone. The film talks about science, technology and what happens when we change nature. It's an exciting adventure that keeps you excited until the end.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What do they have to do when the dinosaur escapes?
   .....
2. How do you think the scientists feel when their creation causes disorder in the park? .....
3. What does the film talk about? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. ..... are some of the people who stopped the escaped dinosaur.
   a) Tourists b) Scientists
   c) Teachers d) Farmers
5. Many people come to the park in "Jurassic World" because it's ..... .
   a) unpopular b) cheap c) boring d) popular

4 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. We <u>are not</u> take photos of the paintings because cameras aren't allowed. (.....)
2. My father <u>know</u> to drive a car. (.....)
3. <u>Does</u> Hana able to practise the clarinet in her free time? (.....)
4. <u>Are</u> you know how to climb a mountain? (.....)

5 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"A review of a visit"

.....

.....

.....

Unit 10
Lessons 1 & 2

Follow up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

يحمى من	يكلف	مريح .....
يبقى دافئًا/باردًا	مدونة إلكترونية	كهربى .....
أنيق	الكتان	أسلوب .....
المعدن	مقلم/مخطط	الصوف .....
حلق/قرط	حزام	واسع/ فضفاض .....
ملاية	حذاء رياضى	مجوهرات .....

B Quiz Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Sitting by the beach and watching the waves makes me feel ..... .
   a) casual b) relaxed c) colourful d) wooden
2. My mum gave me a beautiful pair of gold ..... for my birthday.
   a) sandals b) trainers c) shorts d) earrings
3. He looks ..... in his new suit. I like it very much.
   a) smart b) weak c) ugly d) loose
4. The repair of my car's engine will ..... me a lot of money.
   a) dress b) wear c) cost d) grow
5. My grandma has a ..... box, where she keeps her jewellery.
   a) round, small, wooden b) wooden, round, small
   c) wooden, small, round d) small, round, wooden
6. Hazem wore a ..... coat.
   a) new, green, cotton b) cotton, new, green
   c) green, new, cotton d) green, cotton, new

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My mum bought a ..... (pretty/gold/long) necklace.
2. We saw a ..... (white/big) duck.
3. Aunt Nahed has a ..... (old/small) bag.
4. Soliman wore a ..... (leather/large/brown) belt.



Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Eman is asking Huda about her clothes.

Eman : What type of clothes do you wear?

Huda : (1)..... .

Eman : Traditional! (2).....?

Huda : I like them because they're comfortable.

Eman : (3).....?

Huda : My favourite colour is green.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Eyad bought a ..... for his sister's birthday.
   a) present b) blog c) style d) prize
2. The ..... in this area is usually hot and dry.
   a) sheet b) tie c) climate d) belt
3. My brother bought new ..... for the summer.
   a) sandals b) jackets c) pullovers d) jumpers
4. I found a ..... scarf.
   a) small, wool, old b) old, wool, small
   c) wool, small, old d) small, old, wool
5. My mum bought a ..... vase.
   a) Japanese, old b) red, colourful
   c) colourful, Japanese d) Japanese, colourful

3 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Your favourite style of clothes"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Follow up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

خشن/صلب	يقطف/يزيل	ممتاز/مثالى .....
يكسب مالاً	يهتم بـ	مذهل فى .....
يغير	مصنع	الطبيعة .....
صناعة	محاصيل	مواد كيميائية .....
حفل زفاف	يملك	فخم/ترف .....
تربة زراعية	جودة	مناسبة .....

B Quiz Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Eating healthy food is important ..... growing strong.
   a) of b) for c) at d) on
2. Salwa always buys shoes made of high ..... leather because they last longer.
   a) soil b) industry c) occasion d) quality
3. Being ..... can help protect the environment.
   a) perfect b) greener c) soft d) harder
4. Babies have ..... skin.
   a) soft b) hard c) rough d) loud
5. ..... is a nice T-shirt. I want to buy it.
   a) These b) Those c) They d) That
6. Look at all the pretty flowers; the pink ..... are my favourite.
   a) one b) ones c) one's d) ones'

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Do you like ..... (this) shoes?
2. Those earrings are the ..... (one) my mum gave me.
3. That bird is the ..... (ones) that was singing.
4. Get me ..... (that) keys from the table.



Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He studied hard for the test, ... a result, he got high marks.
   a) such as b) such c) like d) as
2. I don't ..... his opinion. It's nearly wrong.
   a) make up b) get to c) look for d) care about
3. Tourists visit Egypt because it is famous ..... its ancient art.
   a) by b) for c) of d) at
4. That is my favourite book, not this ..... .
   a) ones b) ones' c) one's d) one
5. Which of ..... drinks that I have do you want?
   a) those b) these c) this d) that

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Egypt is famous for growing crops to make material. The Ancient Egyptians grew plants by the Nile to make linen. Almost everyone wore clothes made of linen and they also used the plants to make baskets. Today, Egyptian cotton is famous all over the world because cotton from Egypt is very good. It is often used to make luxury clothes. Many people work in the cotton industry, from farmers to people making or selling clothes and material. The climate and soil in Egypt are perfect for growing cotton. All of the cotton is picked by hand to keep it soft. When you grow cotton, it uses a lot of water and chemicals.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is cotton used for?

.....

2. Who works in the cotton industry?

.....

3. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. People used linen to make ..... .
   a) clothes b) baskets c) a & b d) nothing
5. Egypt has good climate and ..... for growing cotton.
   a) soil b) water c) air d) sand

Follow up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

زبون	.....	صاحب المتجر	.....	إعلان	.....
يناسب/يلائم	.....	أداة	.....	يتزوج	.....
للبيع	.....	خزانة ذات أدراج	.....	يناقش	.....
يقيس (ملابس)	.....	يتحقق من/يتأكد	.....	غرفة تغيير الملابس	.....
مفيد	.....	تمثال	.....	يبحث عن	.....
شيء	.....	هدية لـ	.....	في القمة	.....

B Quiz Time

1 Complete the following dialogue: البحيرة ٢٠٢٢

Huda wants to buy a new coat at the clothes shop.

Shop assistant : Can I help you?
Huda : (1)..... .
Shop assistant : (2).....?
Huda : I'd like it medium, please.
Shop assistant : Medium! What colour would you like?
Huda : (3)..... .
Shop assistant : (4).....?
Huda : Of course! Where is the changing room?
Shop assistant : It's over there!
Huda : (5)..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I saw a new handbag ..... sale online.
   a) in b) out c) of d) for
2. My cousin is going to ..... married next week.
   a) have b) get c) do d) move
3. Mum ..... the price of the fruits before buying them from the market.
   a) moved b) bought c) checked d) married
4. The new smartphones are much faster than the old ..... .
   a) ones b) one c) one's d) ones'
5. He has a ..... shirt.
   a) pretty, cotton, striped b) striped, pretty, cotton
   c) cotton, pretty, striped d) pretty, striped, cotton

Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

Listening Text
نص الاستماع في نهاية التدريب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The speaker is selling a ..... .

a) tie b) handbag c) tool d) scarf

2. It's made of ..... .

a) plastic b) metal c) leather d) wool

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I have a cool, old wooden ..... of drawers.

a) statue b) advert c) tool d) chest

2. People try on their clothes in the ..... room.

a) customer b) present c) changing d) size

3. I will ..... you the time of the meeting.

a) email b) check c) fit d) move

4. What do you think of ..... idea?

a) this b) these c) they d) those

5. I lost my iPhone and bought a new ..... .

a) ones b) one c) one's d) ones'

3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. She went home and sat on her **wooden, old, comfortable** bed. (.....)
2. Who are **these** people over there? (.....)
3. I'll have a piece of cake. Would you like to have **ones**? (.....)
4. My mother bought **big, some great** oranges. (.....)

Listening Text:

I'm selling a nice strong tool that you can use in the garden. It is made of metal with wood at the top.

Unit 10 Mini-Test

1 Complete the following dialogue: السويس ٢٠٢٣

Sameh is talking to a salesman to buy a new suit.

Salesman : How can I help you?

Sameh : (1)..... .

Salesman : (2).....?

Sameh : I want a black one, please.

Salesman : (3).....?

Sameh : It is size 38. Can I try it on?

Salesman : (4)..... .

Sameh : How much does it cost?

Salesman : (5)..... .

Sameh : It's perfect. I'll take it.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Women like wearing a ..... to cover their heads.
   a) belt b) headscarf c) skirt d) dress
2. I love wearing ..... when I go for a run in the park.
   a) sandals b) shoes c) boots d) trainers
3. The Ancient Egyptians grew plants ..... the Nile to make linen.
   a) by b) on c) to d) at
4. Of all the ..... in my family, my mother is the person I am proud of most.
   a) managers b) numbers c) members d) teenagers
5. **A:** Is there a restaurant near here? **B:** Yes, there is ..... by the beach.
   a) ones b) one c) one's d) ones'
6. He bought ....., new trousers.
   a) linen b) smart c) leather d) black

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Sama has a ..... (cotton/pink/small) skirt.
2. This laptop is too slow; I need a faster ..... (ones).
3. ..... (This) star is shining so brightly tonight.
4. I don't like ..... (this) jeans; they're too small.

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Your favourite style of clothes"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit 10 Al-Azhar Mini-Test

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Tamer is buying a T-shirt.

Tamer : Hello, do you have any T-shirts?
Shopkeeper : (1)..... . What size are you looking for?
Tamer : I need a medium size.
Shopkeeper : (2).....?
Tamer : I'd like it blue. (3).....?
Shopkeeper : It's 300 pounds.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I like to be ..... in my clothes.
   a) tired b) colourful
   c) comfortable d) traditional
2. It's important to care ..... the environment and our planet.
   a) on b) about c) by d) at
3. The material made from bamboo is not used for expensive, ... clothes.
   a) soil b) industry c) crop d) luxury
4. Which of ..... cakes would you like for dessert?
   a) this b) these c) they d) that
5. **A:** Would you like a cup of tea? **B:** No, thanks, I had ..... an hour ago.
   a) one b) ones c) one's d) ones'

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Egyptian linen is a special fabric made from plants in Egypt. It's famous for being very soft and feeling luxurious. Egyptians have been making linen for a long time, even since ancient times. To make Egyptian linen, they collect the plants, **soak** them in water, and then turn the fibres into threads. These threads are woven together to make the fabric. People all over the world love Egyptian linen because it's really good quality. They use it to make things like bedsheets and clothes. It's a favourite for people who want to feel comfortable every day.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the best title for this text? .....
2. Why is Egyptian linen popular all over the world?.....
3. How do they make linen fabric? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Egyptian linen is ..... .
   a) soft b) luxurious c) hard d) a & b
5. The underlined word "**soak**" means ..... .
   a) lift b) put c) remove d) check

4 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. We wanted a **metal grey** table. (.....)
2. New cars need less petrol than old **one**. (.....)
3. Where did you get **that** sunglasses? (.....)
4. My mother bought a **gold beautiful** necklace. (.....)

5 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Egyptian cotton"

.....

.....

.....

Unit 11
Lessons 1 & 2

Follow up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

يثبّت ألواحًا شمسية	.....	يولد كهرباء	.....	بيئي	.....
ينصهر/يذوب	.....	توربينات الرياح	.....	يذهب للترحال	.....
يحسن	.....	الحياة البرية	.....	يقود عبر	.....
يفيض/فيضان	.....	عاصفة	.....	يرمي بعيدًا	.....
منشور عبر الإنترنت	.....	يعيد استخدام ...	.....	السكان المحليون	.....
بمفردك	.....	كوكب	.....	معدات	.....

B Quiz Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Snow slowly began to ..... in the warm afternoon sun.
   a) flood b) cause c) melt d) solve
2. Uncle Emad learned how to ..... the washing machine by following the instructions.
   a) catch b) drive c) join d) install
3. I always wake up early to ..... the bus to school.
   a) keep b) catch c) find d) get
4. We need to ..... the amount of plastic we use every day.
   a) reduce b) get c) turn d) kill
5. Are you ..... start a new project?
   a) must b) should c) going to d) will
6. Omar ..... repair his bike this weekend. He's planned to repair it.
   a) is going to b) will c) is d) must

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. ..... (he/going/take) the bus to work?
2. Mum is going ..... (make) dinner for us.
3. We are ..... (going/paint) the house this weekend.
4. I ..... (not/ going) call my friend tonight. I am very busy.



Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Eyad is asking Asmaa about her favourite activity.

Eyad :What's your favourite activity, Asmaa?

Asmaa : (1)..... .

Eyad :That sounds interesting! (2).....?

Asmaa : I really enjoy taking pictures of nature and wildlife.

Eyad :(3).....?

Asmaa : Yes, I need a good camera and sometimes different lenses for various shots.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There's a lot of air ..... from the traffic in our city.
   a) invitation b) location c) solution d) pollution
2. Throwing ..... old phones is bad for the environment.
   a) down b) up c) to d) away
3. Every summer, my friends and I ..... trekking along the coast for a week.
   a) go b) catch c) make d) get
4. The store is closing; it ..... be empty soon.
   a) must b) should c) will d) is going to
5. I ..... to learn a new language. I've decided to do this.
   a) am going b) will c) have d) are

3 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Plans for your holiday"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Follow up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

يذهب فى رحلة	.....	يطور	.....	مجموعة/مصفوفة	.....
متطوع	.....	يهتم/يعتنى بـ	.....	الحفاظ على	.....
بذرة	.....	متصل بـ	.....	يتحلل/يتعفن	.....
أدغال	.....	يروى الأرض	.....	يشارك فى	.....
نظام	.....	مذكرات/يوميات	.....	يسلف	.....
طائرة بدون طيار	.....	منظم	.....	معقد	.....

B Quiz Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Is there a ..... dress for a formal event?
   a) dirty b) busy c) suitable d) connected
2. We have decided to buy a ..... for our tap at home to make sure that our drinking water is clean.
   a) tool b) system c) filter d) fitter
3. The farmer ..... his crops every morning.
   a) irrigates b) invents c) develops d) lends
4. The boys want to go ..... a trip to the Nile.
   a) at b) on c) in d) about
5. Aunt Sally ..... to see us next week. I'm looking forward to seeing her.
   a) come b) comes c) is coming d) came
6. Why ..... money?
   a) he is saving b) is he saving
   c) he saving d) he is going to save

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Sandy's cousins ..... (be/drive) to New York tomorrow morning.
2. He can't join us. He ..... (have) dinner with his friends tonight.
3. My sister ..... (go) to the dentist tomorrow.
4. Where ..... (will) they having the next meeting?



Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We need to work ..... the project together to finish it soon.
   a) in b) on c) at d) by
2. Morad keeps a ..... to write down his ideas and experiences.
   a) diary b) dairy c) date d) daily
3. Please remember to close the ..... behind you so the dog can't run out.
   a) canal b) mangrove c) gate d) filter
4. I ..... my friend at 3 o'clock at the park tomorrow.
   a) meet b) will meet c) meeting d) am meeting
5. We ..... the new film tonight. We have tickets for 9.30 pm.
   a) are watching b) going to watch
   c) watching d) watch

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Drones are flying machines that don't need a person to fly them. We can control drones from the ground using remote control. In the future, drones will help solve environmental problems. Companies will use drones instead of trucks for deliveries, which will help the environment because drones are quiet and cause less air pollution. Drones can also help in protecting wildlife by flying over far areas to check for problems like floods or fires. They can even help people by going to dangerous places, like checking wind turbines, and planting trees by dropping seeds in hard-to-reach places without needing breaks.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. How are drones different from other flying machines?.....
2. In what ways can drones be helpful in solving environmental problems?
   .....
3. Can you think of any other tasks drones might be able to help with in the future?.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Drones are ..... than other trucks for deliveries.
   a) faster b) quieter c) cheaper d) bigger
5. Drones can help in protecting wildlife by ..... .
   a) making loud noises
   b) causing air pollution
   c) flying over far areas to check for problems
   d) driving on roads

Follow up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

يبقى على القارب	.....	يشعر بالملل	.....	إيجابى	.....
تسلق الصخور	.....	يخمن	.....	يساعد فى	.....
التزلج على الرمال	.....	قلعة/حصن	.....	منشفة/فوطة	.....
معبد	.....	ركوب الخيل	.....	يفوت حصة	.....
السباحة بأنبوبة تنفس	.....	أطلال	.....	بطاقة بريدية	.....
يتخذ ترتيبات	.....	ركوب منطاد الهواء الساخن	.....	القفز بالمطاط	.....

B Quiz Time

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Dina is inviting Doaa to go to the new café this afternoon.

Dina : Would you like to go to the new café this afternoon?

Doaa : (1)..... . I have some work to finish.

Dina : (2).....?

Doaa : That sounds good. I think I'm free tomorrow.

Dina : (3).....?

Doaa : We could go after work.

Dina : After work is great!

Doaa : Why don't we invite our friend Basmala?

Dina : (4)..... . Thanks for inviting us.

Doaa : (5)..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Tomorrow is my birthday party, and we need to ..... some arrangements.
   a) get b) miss c) make d) do
2. I ..... the answer and it was right.
   a) stayed b) guessed c) called d) missed
3. I always use a cotton ..... after having a shower.
   a) fortress b) temple c) hotel d) towel
4. We ..... shopping later today. Do you want to come?
   a) will b) are going to c) are going d) going to
5. Karma ..... to the dentist next week. She's got an appointment.
   a) goes b) went c) is going d) go

Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Listening Text
نص الاستماع في نهاية التدريب.

1. Which place did they visit yesterday?
   a) The city. b) The museum. c) The mountains. d) The sea.
2. What did they do in the coral reefs?
   a) Diving. b) Swimming. c) Trekking. d) a and b.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The children enjoyed star ..... and making wishes on shining stars.
   a) riding b) hearing c) looking d) gazing
2. There's a lot of danger in rock ..... .
   a) climbing b) riding c) watching d) going
3. Some tourists like to visit the desert to try ..... .
   a) swimming b) sandboarding c) snorkelling d) diving
4. We ..... married in June. We've arranged everything.
   a) will get b) are going to get
   c) are getting d) get
5. Can you pass me the remote? I ..... some TV.
   a) watch b) watched
   c) watching d) am going to watch

3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. We **have** a dinner party. Everything is arranged. (.....)
2. How are they going **solving** this problem? (.....)
3. We **spend** a week in Hurghada, we have booked a hotel. (.....)
4. They are **going get** a new computer. (.....)

Listening Text:

Yesterday, we visited the mountains. It was very hot! The day before yesterday, we went diving in the coral reefs at Shoura al Manquata.

Unit 11 Mini-Test

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Kareem and Sameer are talking about what they are going to do after school.

Kareem : What are you doing after class?

Sameer : (1)..... .

Kareem : What are you going to do at home?

Sameer : I'm going to do my homework. (2).....?

Kareem : (3)..... .

Sameer : Great! I like tennis very much.

Kareem : Why don't you come?

Sameer : (4)..... . We can play doubles.

Kareem : (5).....?

Sameer : We're going to meet at four.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When you heat ice, it ..... .
   a) brings b) melts c) catches d) saves
2. I think electric cars will help to ..... pollution in the future.
   a) reduce b) save c) install d) repair
3. I don't eat raw (غير ناضج) meat because it can have harmful ..... .
   a) salt b) bacteria c) sugar d) light
4. I always look ..... to getting home to my children.
   a) towards b) forward c) after d) for
5. Look at those clouds, it ..... .
   a) rains b) will rain
   c) is going to rain d) is raining
6. This is my last day here. I ..... back to England tomorrow.
   a) am going b) am going to
   c) going d) go

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I ..... (be) making a cake for my friend's birthday party.
2. We ..... (not/ going) to the movies tonight.
3. My sisters ..... (going) to help mum in the kitchen later.
4. Ahmed is ..... (have) a picnic with her friends tomorrow.

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Environmental problems"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit 11 Al-Azhar Mini-Test

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Hala and Nada are discussing what they are going to do tonight.

Hala : Would you like to go to the movies tonight?

Nada : (1)..... . It looks a bit boring to me.

Hala : (2).....?

Nada : I think I'd get cold and bored. It's cold in the park.

Hala : You could come to my home, and we can cook dinner together.

Nada : (3)..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The mechanic will ..... our car.
   a) increase b) reduce c) damage d) repair
2. People sometimes use a ..... to film animals from the sky.
   a) control b) drone
   c) lorry d) conversation
3. I'll ..... arrangements to meet you at the airport.
   a) make b) do c) take d) give
4. We ..... to visit our grandparents during the summer holiday.
   a) are going to b) going c) are going d) going to
5. I ..... how to swim this summer.
   a) am learning b) learns
   c) going to learn d) learning

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Yesterday evening, I watched a programme about floods. Floods were good for the land because they carried fertile soil and fresh water. This helped plants to grow. High floods were very dangerous for people who lived near the Nile. High floods destroyed houses. So, some people became homeless. That was why Egypt built two dams. The dams were built to stop dangerous floods of the past. The High Dam opened in 1971. It's 3.83 km in length. It is also 111 m high. Now, most of the water stays behind the walls of the dam to be used in time of need.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What were floods good for?

   .....

2. If there were no floods, what would happen?

   .....

3. Give a title to the passage.

   .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. We built dams in Aswan to ..... floods.
   a) drop b) stop c) drip d) eat
5. Floods carried ..... water.
   a) fresh b) sweet c) sugary d) fizzy

4 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. Is your sister **attend** the concert next Friday? (.....)
2. Our class **visit** a museum next week. Our teacher has bought the tickets. (.....)
3. Look at the sun! It **be** a beautiful day. (.....)
4. What **you are** going to do tomorrow? (.....)

5 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"A visit to a good place"

.....

.....

.....

Unit 12
Lessons 1 & 2

Follow up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

تعليمات	.....	يستنتج/يستنبط	.....	يبحث فى القاموس	.....
المتعلِّم	.....	معمل	.....	اتجاهات	.....
مدير	.....	يلخص	.....	يقوم بعمل تجربة	.....
دراسات	.....	يقوم ببحث	.....	يلخص	.....
يشرح	.....	يحقق حلمًا	.....	قائمة طعام	.....
يتفق مع	.....	بث صوتى/إذاعى	.....	فخور بـ	.....

B Quiz Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We will ..... our discussion after the break.
   a) laugh b) count c) act d) continue
2. Renad ..... to study in a quiet environment.
   a) laughs b) prefers c) follows d) summarises
3. Please ..... the signs to come out safely.
   a) choose b) agree c) follow d) discuss
4. They had to cut ..... the old tree in the garden.
   a) down b) out c) back d) after
5. How often ..... you exercise?
   a) does b) do c) are d) were
6. Where did you ..... on holiday last year?
   a) goes b) going c) went d) go

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. She ..... (use) volunteer at the local community.
2. My cousins ..... (playing) video games all day yesterday.
3. When will Ahmed ..... (finishing) his project?
4. Which car ..... (do) they going to buy?



Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Aisha and Zeinab are talking about learning.

Aisha : Hi Zeinab! How are you?

Zeinab : (1)..... . How about you?

Aisha : I'm fine, too. (2).....?

Zeinab : I'd like to learn by watching. (3).....?

Aisha : I prefer reading books and taking notes.

Zeinab : That's interesting!

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It's useful to ..... notes while reading to remember what you read.
   a) take b) give c) achieve d) practise
2. My father doesn't agree ..... my opinion.
   a) by b) down c) with d) up
3. He looked ..... after losing the game.
   a) proud b) disappointed c) excited d) helpful
4. Which restaurant are you ..... choose for dinner?
   a) going to b) going c) will d) have
5. I ..... enjoy reading, but now I can't put books down.
   a) won't b) will c) used to d) didn't use to

3 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Your future plans"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit 12
Lessons 3 & 4

Follow up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

مميزات	.....	محبط من	.....	يعطى الهويات	.....
تحدث ضوضاء/ضجة	.....	يتصل بـ	.....	حريص على	.....
لهجة/لغة بلد ما	.....	الاتصال بالعين	.....	مستحيل	.....
قومى/وطنى	.....	تعبيرات الوجه	.....	مجتمع	.....
يقلد الأصوات	.....	متعدد اللغات	.....	يتواصل مع	.....
يقضى وقتًا مع	.....	ينضم/يضم	.....	خبير	.....

B Quiz Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The new software has many ..... over the old version. It's very good.
   a) experts b) results c) disadvantages d) advantages
2. The dog was happy with the boy's ..... .
   a) sound b) stroke c) quality d) dialect
3. They didn't ..... their identities to keep them secret.
   a) speak b) copy c) spend d) give
4. The cook was a/an ..... at making sauces. All people liked them very much.
   a) dialect b) expert c) quality d) identity
5. ..... you working yesterday at 9 o'clock?
   a) Do b) Will c) Did d) Were
6. Why ..... you live in France?
   a) does b) have c) do d) are

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Hend ..... (visit) the English Club at 3 tomorrow.
2. ..... (Does) you like English?
3. ..... (Do) Tara phone you yesterday?
4. While we ..... (sit) under the tree, it started to rain.

Unit 12
Lessons 3 & 4



Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. ..... are the things that make you different to other people.
   a) Areas b) Identities c) Communities d) Languages
2. He speaks more than four languages. He is ..... .
   a) multilingual b) international c) national d) bilingual
3. She is a/an ..... in maths and helps students understand difficult problems.
   a) expert b) dialect c) quality d) result
4. If I finish my homework early, I ..... TV.
   a) watching b) watches c) watch d) will watch
5. I'm sorry. We can't come at 10 o'clock. We ..... a vet because of our cat.
   a) are meeting b) meet
   c) will meet d) are going to meet

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Some people find it easy to learn another language, while others find it hard. How can you learn English? There are many ways to make learning English easier and fun.

First, you need to enjoy learning English. If you believe you can learn, you will. You don't have to understand everything right away, and it's okay to make mistakes. We learn from our mistakes.

Second, you need to practise English. You can write for the school magazine or exchange letters and emails with friends. This helps you get better at writing in English. Try speaking English every day. You can practise with classmates outside class. You'll all make mistakes, but over time, you'll get better at communicating.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What can you do to make learning English more interesting?.....
2. How important is it to practise English every day?.....
3. What advice would you give to someone who finds it hard to learn English?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. ..... improves your English writing skills.
   a) Reading books b) Watching movies
   c) Writing emails d) Listening
5. ..... can improve your English speaking skills.
   a) Speaking only with classmates
   b) Avoiding making mistakes
   c) Practising with classmates outside classes
   d) Speaking only with English speakers

Follow up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

إعلان لـ	.....	خطة دراسية	.....	موضوع	.....
بيان شخصى	.....	يدير/يتمكن	.....	يدرك	.....
أثاث	.....	غير معروف	.....	جنسية	.....
بمفرده	.....	يعمل بطاقات تعليمية	.....	يكمل استمارة	.....
دورة صيفية	.....	فى السياق	.....	يكسر	.....
تعليق/يعلق	.....	مقال	.....	يتلقى رسالة/أخبارًا من	.....

B Quiz Time

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Reda wants to start a new hobby and asks for advice.

Reda : Can I ask for your advice about something?

Walaa : (1)..... . What do you need help with?

Reda : (2)..... . What do you suggest?

Walaa : You should try something you're interested in. (3).....?

Reda : I enjoy painting and photography.

Walaa : I think photography is great.

Reda : (4).....?

Walaa : Because you can do it anywhere.

Reda : What equipment do I need for photography?

Walaa : (5)..... . There are many types of cameras.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. During the hot summer, the fan is useful ..... keeping us cool.
   a) for b) at c) on d) of
2. I ..... flashcards to remember new words and their meanings in English.
   a) make b) do c) keep d) stay
3. To borrow books from the library, I need to ..... a form and get a library card.
   a) sound b) take c) complete d) make
4. I usually ..... tea with milk.
   a) am drinking b) was drinking c) drank d) drink
5. Who ..... writing to?
   a) he is b) is he c) will he d) he will

Unit 12
Lessons 5 & 6

Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

Listening Text
نص الاستماع في نهاية التدريب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Where is Mario from?
   a) Japan. b) England. c) China. d) Italy.
2. When are the exams?
   a) Next month. b) Next year. c) Next week. d) Next May.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My ..... of birth is on October 11th.
   a) dairy b) diary c) history d) date
2. My ..... is American because I was born in the United States.
   a) identity b) advice c) nationality d) language
3. The teacher advised us to ..... our writing by checking for spelling mistakes.
   a) revise b) spend c) give d) go away
4. We ..... watch scary films. We dislike them.
   a) aren't b) weren't c) didn't d) don't
5. ..... mum going to cook spaghetti for dinner?
   a) Is b) Does c) Did d) Will

3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. Sara didn't answer your call because she **work**. (.....)
2. The last time I **go** to Alex was in August. (.....)
3. I **play** tennis with my friends next Friday at 4. (.....)
4. My mum **used** to get up early, but now she does. (.....)

Listening Text:

My name's Mario and I'm from Italy. I want to improve my English because I want to do well in my exams next year.

رقم الإيداع: ٢٠١١٥ / ٢٠٢٤
ترخيص وزارة التربية والتعليم رقم:
٢٦٧/٢/١٠/١٠٣
خدمة العملاء: 16766
NAHDET MISR PUBLISHING HOUSE

جميع الحقوق محفوظة © لدار نهضة مصر للنشر
يحظر طبع أو نشر أو تصوير أو تخزين
أى جزء من هذا الكتاب بأية وسيلة إلكترونية أو ميكانيكية
أو بالتصوير أو خلاف ذلك إلا بإذن كتابى صريح من الناشر.

ALADWAA
Gem

اللغة الانجليزية



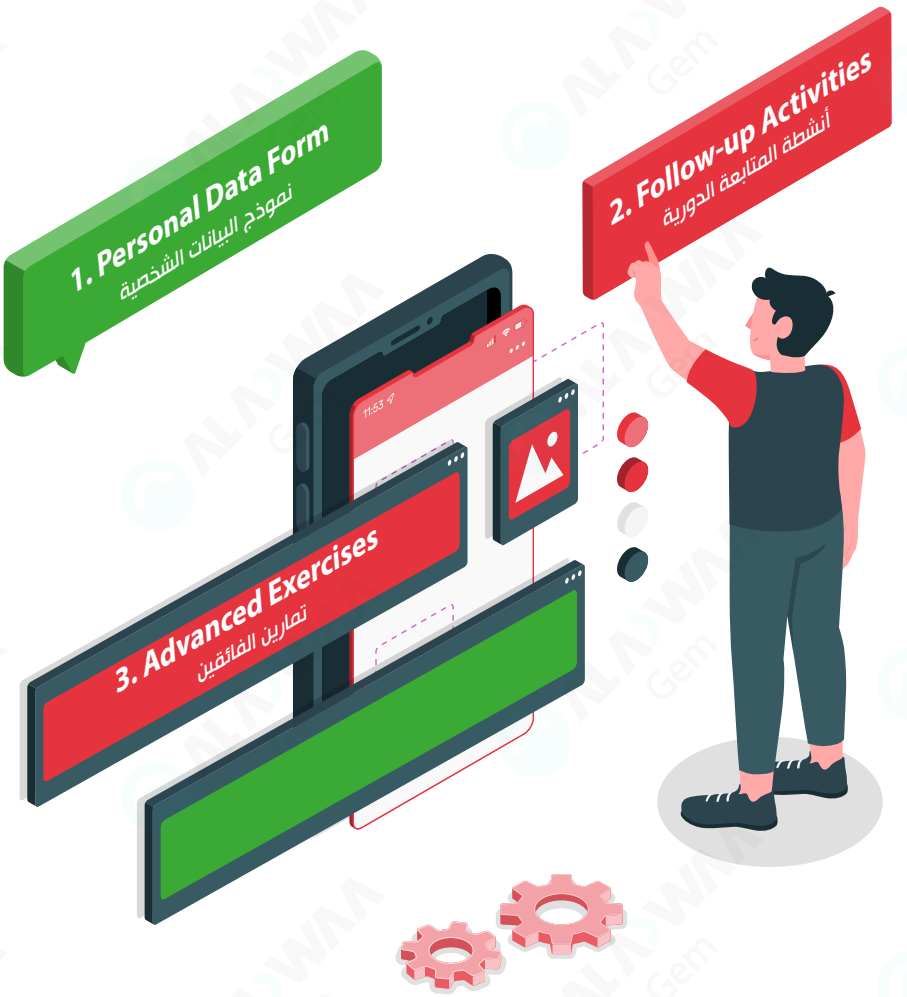
Teacher's Materials

2024
25

الصف 2 الإعدادى

الفصل الدراسى الثانى

CONTENTS


1. Personal Data Form
نموذج البيانات الشخصية
2. Follow-up Activities
أنشطة المتابعة الدورية
3. Advanced Exercises
تمارين الفائقين

1. PERSONAL DATA FORM

يقوم الطالب بكتابة المعلومات الخاصة به فى هذا الجزء وتقديمها للمعلم.

نموذج البيانات الشخصية (للطلبة المتقدمين للحصول على درس خاص)

Name: الاسم بالكامل

Grade: الصف الدراسى

School: اسم المدرسة

Birth Date: تاريخ الميلاد

Telephone: رقم الهاتف (أرضى/موبايل)

Home: ..... Mobile: .....

For emergencies, call: للطوارئ، اتصل:

Name: ..... Telephone Number: .....

Signature of Student: ..... توقيع الطالب

Signature of Parent: ..... توقيع ولى الأمر

قم بعمل هذا التدريب لكى يتمكن معلمك من تحديد نقاط الضعف لديك ليقوم بتطويرها.

Describe your ability in English: (Circle the best description.)

Understanding is	always difficult	sometimes difficult	never difficult
Speaking is	always difficult	sometimes difficult	never difficult
Reading is	always difficult	sometimes difficult	never difficult
Writing is	always difficult	sometimes difficult	never difficult

With My Best Wishes

Mr: ..... .

Expert Teacher of English

2 Follow-up Activities

Name: .....

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 7 Lessons 1&2

Main Vocabulary

التسوق عبر الإنترنت	.....	فائدة	.....
توصيل/تسليم	.....	موارد	.....
كهرباء	.....	ينجح فى	.....
ألواح الطاقة الشمسية	.....	البيئة	.....

Prepositions & Language Expressions

يولد كهرباء	.....	يترجم إلى	.....
لديه اختيار	.....	مشهور بـ	.....
يتبادل الأدوار	.....	يتفق مع	.....

Definitions

.....	a device we use to listen to music, radio broadcasts, etc. without other people hearing

(1 - 7) Poor (8 - 12) Good (13 - 15) Excellent

Name: .....

Unit 7 Lessons 1&2 — Quiz

10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

7

1. What is the most important .....; the mobile, the internet or the plane?

a) invention **b)** invitation **c)** advice **d)** space

2. She often spends her ..... time cooking delicious dishes.

a) full **b)** empty **c)** used **d)** free

3. He is happy because he ..... his exams.

a) failed **b)** succeeded **c)** passed **d)** lost

4. The road is not big enough for cars, but you can go down it on a ..... .

a) train **b)** plane **c)** motorbike **d)** ferry

5. Solar panels get their energy from the ..... .

a) moon **b)** sun **c)** planet **d)** Earth

6. I hope they ..... build lots of wind turbines in Egypt.

a) will **b)** would **c)** have **d)** has

7. I will give you a key if I ..... at home.

a) won't **b)** don't **c)** am not **d)** haven't

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

3

1. If I'm busy, I ..... (not/able) to go shopping with my friends.

2. Maybe they will ..... (made) a jacket to help people be cooler.

3. If you ..... (not/do) any exercise, you won't be healthy.

(1 - 4) Poor (5 - 7) Good (8 - 10) Excellent

Name: .....

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 7 Lessons 3&4

Main Vocabulary

يُبعِد	.....	التغير المناخى	.....
مقبض	.....	خبير	.....
يسمح	.....	يستكشف	.....
كوكب	.....	ألم	.....

Prepositions & Language Expressions

يكون صداقات مع	.....	عن طريق الخطأ	.....
يشعر بالتعب	.....	لأول مرة	.....

Words and Opposites

يفتح (جهاز)	.....	يغلق (جهاز)	.....
يظهر	.....	يختفى	.....

Definitions

.....	websites and apps that allow people to talk to each other on the internet

(1 - 7) Poor (8 - 12) Good (13 - 15) Excellent

Name: .....

Unit 7 Lessons 3 &4 Quiz

10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

7

1. Most children are ..... to video games.

a) addicted **b)** famous **c)** worried **d)** afraid

2. To travel around an area to find out about it means to ..... it.

a) disappear **b)** push **c)** pull **d)** explore

3. The tourists took the road south ..... mistake.

a) by **b)** with **c)** in **d)** at

4. "....." means websites and apps that allow people to talk to each other.

a) Social media **b)** Technology **c)** Information **d)** Addiction

5. Rayan always ..... his phone for any new messages.

a) pulls **b)** checks **c)** explores **d)** drops

6. He has a headache, so he ..... take some rest.

a) should **b)** should to **c)** shouldn't **d)** shouldn't to

7. They should study more ..... they want to pass their exams.

a) after **b)** unless **c)** while **d)** if

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

3

1. Should I stay or ..... (I/should) go?
2. You should ..... (drinking) water every day.
3. Children ..... (should) watch too much TV.

(1 - 4) Poor (5 - 7) Good (8 - 10) Excellent

Name: .....

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 7 Lessons 5&6

Main Vocabulary

صحى/بصحة جيدة	.....	يحسن	.....
يرسل رسالة نصية	.....	يدمر/يضر	.....
عنوان (كتاب/مقال)	.....	خطر	.....
إنسان آلى	.....	مفقود	.....

Prepositions & Language Expressions

يدون	.....	يصاب بصداع	.....
يذهب فى إجازة	.....	يتصل بالإنترنت	.....
من وجهة نظرى	.....	يتطلع إلى	.....

Definitions

.....	the name that you share with other members of your family; last name

(1 - 7) Poor (8 - 12) Good (13 - 15) Excellent

Name: .....

Unit 7 Lessons 5 & 6 — Quiz

10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

7

1. People should know the ..... of technology in our life.

   a) expressions **b)** dangers **c)** posters **d)** robots

2. My sister spends many hours ..... her friends on the internet.

   a) texting **b)** making **c)** having **d)** staying

3. My brother wants to travel to England to ..... his English.

   a) text **b)** speak **c)** improve **d)** prove

4. The ..... music can bring you a headache.

   a) low **b)** loud **c)** wide **d)** slow

5. It's a good idea to ..... exercise every day.

   a) give **b)** spend **c)** make **d)** do

6. It's a horrible film. You ..... watch it.

   a) should **b)** shouldn't **c)** must **d)** have to

7. What should he do if he ..... get his money?

   a) don't **b)** mustn't **c)** shouldn't **d)** doesn't

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

3

1. You have a good laptop. You shouldn't ..... (changing) it.
2. Do you think ..... (should/I) look for a new job?
3. We should go for a walk if the weather ..... (clear) up.

(1 - 4) Poor (5 - 7) Good (8 - 10) Excellent

Name: .....

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 8 Lessons 1&2

Main Vocabulary

محبوب/شعبى/شائع	.....	تدريب	.....
كثير العصارة	.....	يتذوق/ مذاق	.....
محظوظ	.....	مراهق	.....
نتيجة	.....	يعرض/يقدم	.....
يدعو (إلى)	.....	ألعاب القوى	.....

Prepositions & Language Expressions

يغسل الأطباق	.....	على وجبة الإفطار	.....
يتناول وجبة خفيفة	.....	فى الطريق إلى البيت	.....

Definitions

.....	getting ill when you eat or touch something

(1 - 7) Poor (8 - 12) Good (13 - 15) Excellent

Name: .....

Unit 8 Lessons 1&2 — Quiz

10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

7

1. He was ..... enough because they chose him for the team.

a) messy **b)** spicy **c)** lucky **d)** salty

2. We eat healthy food to give us ..... .

a) salt **b)** fat **c)** engine **d)** energy

3. We ..... them to our party.

a) replied **b)** explored **c)** invented **d)** invited

4. ..... food makes you thirsty.

a) Juicy **b)** Salty **c)** Delicious **d)** Tasty

5. Shahenda was well-liked and ..... with her classmates.

a) spicy **b)** horrible **c)** terrible **d)** popular

6. ..... you like some tea?

a) Do **b)** Will **c)** Would **d)** Are

7. I ..... playing basketball in my spare time.

a) 'd like to **b)** 'd like **c)** like **d)** like to

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

3

1. They've got ..... (a) interesting idea. You should listen to them.

2. I would like ..... (have) a car.

3. Are you thirsty? There's ..... (a few) juice left in this bottle.

(1 - 4) Poor (5 - 7) Good (8 - 10) Excellent

Name: .....

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 8 Lessons 3&4

Main Vocabulary

يقدم طعامًا/يخدم	.....	جاف	.....
زيت	.....	طازج	.....
شوكة	.....	يغلى/يسلق	.....
سلطانية	.....	يخفق	.....
يقلى	.....	عظام	.....

Prepositions & Language Expressions

يُخرج من	.....	من الخارج	.....

Words and Opposites

غير معتاد	.....	معتاد	.....
رخيص	.....	غالٍ	.....
ضعيف	.....	قوى	.....

(1 - 7) Poor (8 - 12) Good (13 - 15) Excellent

Name: .....

Unit 8 Lessons 3&4 — Quiz

10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

7

1. They ..... good fish in this restaurant.

a) pour **b)** catch **c)** chop **d)** serve

2. We touch with our ..... .

a) eyes **b)** feet **c)** fingers **d)** toes

3. Don't ..... hot water into this glass or it will break.

a) pour **b)** chop **c)** heat **d)** beat

4. Our garden gives us ..... vegetables. We use them in our food.

a) bad **b)** fresh **c)** old **d)** ugly

5. This ..... cuts well, doesn't it?

a) knife **b)** pot **c)** fridge **d)** plate

6. ..... forget to tidy up your room.

a) Doesn't **b)** Didn't **c)** Don't **d)** Won't

7. Ali, ... over here, please.

a) come **b)** comes **c)** coming **d)** came

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

3

1. ..... (not/eat) too much fat or sugar.

2. Please, don't ..... (smoking) in this room.

3. ..... (Helping) me with the homework, please.

(1 - 4) Poor (5 - 7) Good (8 - 10) Excellent

Name: .....

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 8 Lessons 5&6

Main Vocabulary

يسترخى	.....	يمتلك	.....
نادٍ /حصة ألعاب القوى	.....	وجبة/نظام غذائى	.....
يعتمد على	.....	يشرح	.....
يقدم	.....	يزعج/منزعج	.....

Prepositions & Language Expressions

يقوم بالرسم/بالتلوين	.....	ولهذا السبب	.....
يتأكد	.....	نصيحة لـ	.....
قلق على	.....	يتحدث مع/إلى	.....
يراجع للامتحانات	.....		

(1 - 7) Poor (8 - 12) Good (13 - 15) Excellent

Name: .....

Unit 8 Lessons 5 & 6 — Quiz

10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

7

1. Students should revise well ..... the exams.
   a) about **b)** to **c)** at **d)** for
2. I'll go to the kitchen to ..... sure I turned the oven off.
   a) make **b)** get **c)** have **d)** do
3. I'd like to know the ..... why you didn't attend the meeting yesterday.
   a) main **b)** reason **c)** result **d)** meal
4. You can't ..... on your parents forever.
   a) save **b)** own **c)** protect **d)** depend
5. We can't say for sure what will ..... in the future.
   a) happen **b)** imagine **c)** cause **d)** prepare
6. I think she eats ..... sweets. She'll be sick and fat!
   a) too many **b)** too much **c)** enough **d)** few
7. There is ..... sugar in your coffee. I think you don't need more.
   a) any **b)** enough **c)** too little **d)** too many

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

3

1. We don't have ..... (time/enough) to have another coffee; we need to leave now.
2. I don't like the weather here. There is ..... (too/rain).
3. ..... (Many) salt in your food isn't bad for your health.

(1 - 4) Poor (5 - 7) Good (8 - 10) Excellent

Name: .....

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 9 Lessons 1&2

Main Vocabulary

مسرح	.....	نص كتابى/سيناريو	.....
النحت	.....	ملابس خاصة بمناسبة/أزياء	.....
متحمس/منفعل	.....	نسيج	.....
آلة موسيقية	.....	فنان	.....
أنشطة	.....	يعزف/مسرحية	.....

Prepositions & Language Expressions

يقوم بوضع مكياج	.....	يستعد لـ	.....
يدفع مالاً	.....	مهتم بـ	.....

Definitions

.....	things that are made from clay, such as cups and plates

(1 - 7) Poor (8 - 12) Good (13 - 15) Excellent

Name: .....

Unit 9 Lessons 1&2 — Quiz

10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

7

1. "....." is art made from stone or wood that looks like people, animals or other things.

   a) Clay **b)** Structure **c)** Sculpture **d)** Pottery

2. "Cello" is my favourite musical ..... .

   a) food **b)** pottery **c)** costume **d)** instrument

3. A ..... saved a little girl from a fire on a house.

   a) pilot **b)** accountant **c)** programmer **d)** firefighter

4. She is interested in ....., like pottery, sculpture and drawing.

   a) action **b)** art **c)** scenery **d)** drama

5. You look nice without ..... make-up.

   a) acting **b)** taking **c)** making **d)** doing

6. He's amazing. He ..... speak five languages, including Chinese.

   a) able to **b)** can **c)** knows how **d)** can't

7. We ..... able to buy a new house. We don't have enough money.

   a) haven't **b)** cannot **c)** aren't **d)** don't

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

3

1. Are you ..... (able) come to my wedding?
2. He ..... (know) how to play the piano.
3. Where are my keys? I ..... (can) find them.

(1 - 4) Poor (5 - 7) Good (8 - 10) Excellent

Name: .....

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 9 Lessons 3&4

Main Vocabulary

فخور (بـ)	.....	خصم/ند/منافس	.....
لغة الإشارة	.....	يتساءل/يتعجب	.....
أمين	.....	جريدة/صحيفة	.....
مهارة	.....	شخصية	.....

Prepositions & Language Expressions

يعزف فى حفلات موسيقية	.....	باستخدام اليد	.....
لديه صعوبات	.....	يصيح فى وجه	.....
يدون ملاحظات	.....	مدرسة خاصة لـ	.....

Definitions

.....	put your arms around someone and hold them closely, usually because you love them

(1 - 7) Poor (8 - 12) Good (13 - 15) Excellent

Name: .....

Unit 9 Lessons 3 & 4 — Quiz

10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

7

1. I can't ..... life without the internet.

a) cry **b)** wonder **c)** live **d)** imagine

2. We have a number of ..... players in our team. They play in other countries.

a) special **b)** private **c)** international **d)** local

3. The orchestra is getting ready for a ..... .

a) football **b)** concert **c)** chess **d)** volleyball

4. When my grandfather visits us, he ..... me a warm hug.

a) buys **b)** gives **c)** has **d)** gets

5. I hate waiting for ..... transport.

a) special **b)** private **c)** public **d)** general

6. Do you ..... swim, Kamal?

a) able **b)** know **c)** can **d)** know how to

7. Mona ..... to answer the phone because she is too busy.

a) can **b)** can't **c)** isn't able **d)** doesn't know

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

3

1. They can ..... (painting) beautiful portraits.

2. ..... (Are) Maria able to write scripts?

3. My little brothers ..... (not/know) how to swim well.

(1 - 4) Poor (5 - 7) Good (8 - 10) Excellent

Name: .....

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 9 Lessons 5&6

Main Vocabulary

ملخص	.....	أساسى/رئيسى	.....
يعيد تدوير	.....	مخيف	.....
يركن سيارة	.....	مغامرة	.....
حدث	.....	يهرب	.....
ممثلة	.....	رائع/مدهش	.....

Prepositions & Language Expressions

يوقف الحرائق	.....	يؤدى فن حسن الخط	.....
بدلاً من	.....	يطلب	.....

Definitions

.....	a large park with machines to ride on, restaurants, etc.

(1 - 7) Poor (8 - 12) Good (13 - 15) Excellent

Name: .....

Unit 9 Lessons 5 & 6 — Quiz

10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

7

1. The Japanese ..... more than half of their waste paper.

a) cycle **b)** recycle **c)** fly **d)** watch

2. Can you give us a/an ..... of what you are reading now?

a) summary **b)** conclude **c)** present **d)** introduce

3. Some people find it difficult to ask ..... help.

a) to **b)** for **c)** about **d)** in

4. I read a film ..... to know what the film is about.

a) review **b)** revision **c)** view **d)** opinion

5. Adel Emam is one of the greatest ..... in Egypt.

a) planets **b)** moons **c)** stars **d)** suns

6. Do you know how to ..... a musical instrument?

a) plays **b)** play **c)** played **d)** playing

7. I can write English well, but my sister ..... .

a) can **b)** can't **c)** is **d)** isn't

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

3

1. My brother can ..... (cooking) very well.
2. ..... (Do) you able to speak French?
3. (Does) ..... you know how to ride a bike?

(1 - 4) Poor (5 - 7) Good (8 - 10) Excellent

Name: .....

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 10 Lessons 1&2

Main Vocabulary

مسترخٍ/مستريح	.....	مقلم/مخطط	.....
مجوهرات	.....	مشابه/مماثل	.....
بلوفر	.....	شقة	.....
عقد/قلادة	.....	مدونة إلكترونية	.....

Prepositions & Language Expressions

يحمى من	.....	يبقى دافئًا/باردًا	.....
يرتدى	.....	الأفضل لـ	.....

Words and Opposites

غير مريح	.....	مريح	.....
معقد/صعب	.....	بسيط	.....
غير محبوب	.....	شائع/ محبوب	.....

(1 - 7) Poor (8 - 12) Good (13 - 15) Excellent

Name: .....

Unit 10 Lessons 1&2 — Quiz

10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

7

1. Hot ..... and lots of rain are good for the growth of plants.

a) air **b)** climate **c)** sky **d)** weather

2. **A:** What ..... is this dress made of? **B:** Cotton.

a) material **b)** item **c)** clothing **d)** object

3. Take a deep breath, and you will feel ..... .

a) relaxing **b)** tired **c)** worried **d)** relaxed

4. I wore my ..... yesterday because it was very sunny. It really protected my eyes.

a) shoes **b)** boots **c)** sunglasses **d)** gloves

5. He always wears ..... when he does a sport as they're very comfortable.

a) gloves **b)** sandals **c)** boots **d)** trainers

6. My uncle is a ..... man.

a) tall, kind, thin **b)** kind, tall, thin

c) thin, kind, tall **d)** kind, thin, tall

7. He's wearing a pair of ..... .

a) socks, old, dirty **b)** socks, dirty, old

c) dirty, old, socks **d)** old, dirty, socks

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

3

1. ..... (pretty/a/young) girl walked into the room.
2. He has ..... (interesting/a lot of/old) books.
3. She bought a ..... (plastic/new/red) watch.

(1 - 4) Poor (5 - 7) Good (8 - 10) Excellent

Name: .....

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 10 Lessons 3&4

Main Vocabulary

مصنع	.....	تربة زراعية	.....
الطبيعة	.....	مراهق	.....
فخم/ترف	.....	محاصيل	.....
الحكومة	.....	مناسبة	.....
جودة	.....	حفل زفاف	.....

Prepositions & Language Expressions

يكسب مالًا	.....	يؤدى وظيفة	.....
يهتم بـ	.....	فى جميع أنحاء العالم	.....

Definitions

.....	something produced by a scientific process

(1 - 7) Poor (8 - 12) Good (13 - 15) Excellent

Name: .....

Unit 10 Lessons 3 & 4 — Quiz

10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (7)

1. Our factory produces clothes of very high ..... .

a) size **b)** shape **c)** quality **d)** soil

2. Bad weather damaged the farmer's ..... .

a) shops **b)** subjects **c)** chemicals **d)** crops

3. Can I ..... these trousers for a smaller size?

a) own **b)** move **c)** pick **d)** change

4. I am a ..... of our school football club.

a) character **b)** part **c)** person **d)** member

5. She died as a/an ..... of her illness.

a) result **b)** reason **c)** cause **d)** occasion

6. Look at ..... kids playing in the garden over there; they're so cute.

a) one **b)** ones **c)** these **d)** those

7. Which of ..... drinks that I have do you want?

a) those **b)** these **c)** ones **d)** one's

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: (3)

1. I want those books, not these ..... (one).
2. ..... (Those) bottle over there is empty.
3. Can you help me carry ..... (these) bag?

(1 - 4) Poor (5 - 7) Good (8 - 10) Excellent

Name: .....

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 10 Lessons 5&6

Main Vocabulary

يرسل إيميل	.....	.....	صاحب المتجر
يناسب/يلائم	.....	.....	أداة
شيء	.....	.....	خزانة ذات أدراج
تمثال	.....	.....	إعلان
مفيد	.....	.....	يتحقق من/يتأكد

Prepositions & Language Expressions

يبحث عن	.....	.....	للبيع
يتزوج	.....	.....	ينتقل إلى مسكن جديد

Definitions

.....	a person who buys goods or services

(1 - 7) Poor (8 - 12) Good (13 - 15) Excellent

Name: .....

Unit 10 Lessons 5&6 — Quiz

10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

7

1. My father usually ..... his important objects in his bedroom.

a) moves **b)** throws **c)** saves **d)** keeps

2. There is a huge ..... at the entrance of the museum.

a) state **b)** status **c)** statue **d)** strike

3. The book is full of ..... information. We knew a lot from it.

a) silly **b)** difficult **c)** useful **d)** noisy

4. You look ..... in that dress. It's really smart.

a) boring **b)** fantastic **c)** bad **d)** horrible

5. They had a meeting to ..... the future of the company.

a) say **b)** talk **c)** give **d)** discuss

6. I lost my iPad and bought a new ..... .

a) one **b)** ones **c)** one's **d)** ones'

7. Can I use ..... pencil?

a) this **b)** there **c)** these **d)** those

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

3

1. He needs new shoes. The old ..... (one) are too small.
2. Jack has three pens, two blue ones and a red ..... (ones).
3. Look at ..... (this) man over there.

(1 - 4) Poor — (5 - 7) Good — (8 - 10) Excellent

Name: .....

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 11 Lessons 1&2

Main Vocabulary

يقترب من	.....	ألواح الطاقة الشمسية	.....
بيئى	.....	الحياة البرية	.....
معدات	.....	ينصهر/يذوب	.....
حريق/نار	.....	يحسن	.....
غسالة	.....	يُثَبِّت/يركب	.....

Prepositions & Language Expressions

يجد حلًا	.....	يولد كهرباء	.....
يذهب للترحال	.....	يقود عبر	.....

Definitions

.....	equipment that uses the wind to make electricity

(1 - 7) Poor (8 - 12) Good (13 - 15) Excellent

Name: .....

Unit 11 Lessons 1&2 — Quiz

10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

7

1. We should use ..... on buildings in sunny countries like Egypt.
   a) turbines **b)** solar panels **c)** airplanes **d)** glasses
2. There was a fire in the flats and firefighters ..... a family.
   a) changed **b)** invited **c)** saved **d)** reduced
3. I practised drawing every day to ..... my artwork.
   a) improve **b)** save **c)** check **d)** flood
4. Dad ..... a new light in my room because it was too dark.
   a) threw **b)** sold **c)** broke **d)** installed
5. The ice cream ..... quickly in the hot weather.
   a) melted **b)** based **c)** planned **d)** picked
6. I'm ..... help my father to save wildlife from the flood water.
   a) go to **b)** go **c)** going **d)** going to
7. We're going ..... trees on the roof of our school next week.
   a) to plant **b)** to planting **c)** plant **d)** planting

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

3

1. We're ..... (go) to reuse old things to help the environment.
2. Their station is the next one. They are going ..... (get) off the bus.
3. Omar ..... (be) going to go to sleep early today because tomorrow is a holiday.

(1 - 4) Poor (5 - 7) Good (8 - 10) Excellent

Name: .....

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 11 Lessons 3&4

Main Vocabulary

حذاء رياضى	.....	الكيمياء	.....
متطوع	.....	يطور	.....
سلة القمامة	.....	طائرة بدون طيار	.....
يشارك	.....	محيط	.....
اختراع	.....	يلوث	.....

Prepositions & Language Expressions

يروى الأرض	.....	متصل بـ	.....
يشاهد مسرحية	.....	يشارك فى	.....

Definitions

.....	the place or position of a particular area of land

(1 - 7) Poor (8 - 12) Good (13 - 15) Excellent

Name: .....

Unit 11 Lessons 3&4 — Quiz

10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

7

1. Most boys want to ..... in the football school team.

a) take part **b)** take out **c)** take out of **d)** take from

2. If we leave some fruits outside the fridge for a long time, they will ..... .

a) clean **b)** kill **c)** grow **d)** decay

3. My dad usually takes his ..... if he travels abroad to put his things in.

a) suitcase **b)** tools **c)** equipment **d)** machine

4. He likes to write everything that happened to him every day on his ..... .

a) storybook **b)** book **c)** dairy **d)** diary

5. I asked my best friend to ..... me his pencil.

a) borrow **b)** lend **c)** take **d)** look

6. Hala ..... shopping with her mum on Wednesday afternoon.

a) goes **b)** went **c)** is going **d)** go

7. I ..... my friends for dinner after work at 8 tomorrow.

a) will meet **b)** am meeting

c) meet **d)** am going to meet

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

3

1. I predict that Tamer ..... (not/get) the job.
2. They ..... (fly) to London on Friday evening at 8:15.
3. Paulo ..... (drive) to New York tomorrow morning.

(1 - 4) Poor (5 - 7) Good (8 - 10) Excellent

Name: .....

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 11 Lessons 5&6

Main Vocabulary

تسلق الصخور	.....	التزلج على الرمال	.....
أطلال	.....	السباحة بأنبوبة تنفس	.....
منشفة/فوطة	.....	النظر للنجوم	.....
صيد السمك	.....	مشاهدة الطيور	.....
يخمن	.....	القفز بالمطاط	.....

Prepositions & Language Expressions

على الإفطار	.....	يفوت حصة	.....
يتخذ ترتيبات	.....	يساعد فى	.....

Words and Opposites

خائف	.....	شجاع	.....

(1 - 7) Poor (8 - 12) Good (13 - 15) Excellent

Name: .....

Unit 11 Lessons 5&6 — Quiz

10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

7

1. "....." are the parts of a building that is left after the rest has been destroyed.

   a) Ruins **b)** Walls **c)** Blocks **d)** Roofs

2. Have you tried horse ..... before?

   a) diving **b)** watching **c)** riding **d)** climbing

3. Rock climbing looks a bit ..... to me.

   a) bored **b)** tired **c)** afraid **d)** scary

4. We can ..... electricity from the sun using solar panels.

   a) do **b)** make **c)** keep **d)** save

5. Heavy rain causes the river to ..... .

   a) flood **b)** pick **c)** dry **d)** bring

6. I ..... my friend after school. We agreed to meet at the park.

   a) met **b)** meet **c)** will meet **d)** am meeting

7. ..... watching the new *Superman* film tonight?

   a) Are you **b)** You are **c)** Will you **d)** You will

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

3

1. What time ..... (you/are) leaving tomorrow?
2. I ..... (visiting) my parents at the weekend.
3. Don't touch that dog. It ..... (attack) you.

(1 - 4) Poor (5 - 7) Good (8 - 10) Excellent

Name: .....

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 12 Lessons 1&2

Main Vocabulary

يناقش	.....	يتبع	.....
يلخص	.....	مدير	.....
بث صوتى/إذاعى	.....	تجربة	.....
يفضل	.....	معمل	.....

Prepositions & Language Expressions

يؤلف	.....	يتفق مع	.....
يستنتج/يستنبط	.....	فخور (بـ)	.....
يمارس لغة	.....	محبط بشأن ...	.....

Definitions

.....	a list of the food that you can eat in a restaurant

(1 - 7) Poor (8 - 12) Good (13 - 15) Excellent

Name: .....

Unit 12 Lessons 1&2 — Quiz

10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

7

1. The rain stopped for a while, but it will ..... later, so take your umbrella.

   a) discuss **b)** continue **c)** summarise **d)** follow

2. We should ..... the traffic rules to stay safe on the road.

   a) follow **b)** give **c)** present **d)** make

3. The waiter gave us a ..... and asked if we wanted drinks too.

   a) date **b)** tool **c)** visitor **d)** menu

4. Mum is doing her ..... to become a nurse and help sick people.

   a) skills **b)** studies **c)** castles **d)** visitors

5. Let's watch our favourite TV ..... with the funny talking animals.

   a) show **b)** shop **c)** advice **d)** diagram

6. She usually ..... a walk in the park after dinner.

   a) takes **b)** took **c)** will take **d)** took

7. My mum ..... a delicious cake yesterday.

   a) bakes **b)** baked **c)** will bake **d)** bake

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

3

1. They ..... (going/buy) their new house next month.
2. My cousins ..... (spending) their holiday in Alexandria every summer.
3. Nehal ..... (go) to the concert if she gets the tickets.

(1 - 4) Poor (5 - 7) Good (8 - 10) Excellent

Name: .....

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 12 Lessons 3&4

Main Vocabulary

صفة/ميزة	.....	متعدد اللغات	.....
نتيجة	.....	قومى/وطنى	.....
ينضم/يضم	.....	اللغة الأم	.....
لهجة/لغة بلد ما	.....	ملعب/حقل	.....

Prepositions & Language Expressions

يقلد الأصوات	.....	محبط من	.....
يقضى وقتًا مع	.....	يتصل بـ	.....
حريص على	.....	يتواصل (مع)	.....

Definitions

.....	people who know lots about a subject

(1 - 7) Poor (8 - 12) Good (13 - 15) Excellent

Name: .....

Unit 12 Lessons 3&4 — Quiz

10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

7

1. ..... my point of view, it's important to watch and listen to what animals are trying to tell us.

a) In **b)** From **c)** On **d)** Of

2. He is going to tell us about how animals ..... with each other.

a) contact **b)** communicate **c)** connect **d)** say

3. He is ..... . He can speak many languages.

a) local **b)** national **c)** different **d)** multilingual

4. Some animals like birds can ..... sounds.

a) copy **b)** say **c)** write **d)** follow

5. ..... are people who know lots about a subject.

a) Skills **b)** Identities **c)** Experts **d)** Advantages

6. He was my friend. We used ..... best friends.

a) be **b)** to be **c)** being **d)** to being

7. My mum always ..... angry when I make a lot of noise.

a) getting **b)** got **c)** get **d)** gets

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

3

1. My father and I ..... (repair) our car at the moment.
2. It's cloudy. It ..... (rain).
3. The people who live in Switzerland near Italy ..... (speaks) Italian.

(1 - 4) Poor (5 - 7) Good (8 - 10) Excellent

Name: .....

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 12 Lessons 5&6

Main Vocabulary

تعليق	.....	يدرك	.....
دورة صيفية	.....	يراجع	.....
منظم	.....	يدير/يتمكن	.....
أثاث	.....	جنسية	.....
مدرسة لغات	.....	استمارة طلب	.....

Prepositions & Language Expressions

يؤدى أنشطة	.....	مفيد لـ	.....
يتحسن	.....	يختبر على	.....

Definitions

.....	a sound that comes from your mouth

(1 - 7) Poor (8 - 12) Good (13 - 15) Excellent

Name: .....

Unit 12 Lessons 5&6 — Quiz

10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

7

1. To improve is to ..... better at something.

a) stay **b)** have **c)** make **d)** get

2. Always ..... flashcards of words that you need to remember.

a) say **b)** present **c)** do **d)** make

3. When you are ....., you are able to plan things carefully.

a) organised **b)** disappointed **c)** broken **d)** good

4. To remember words well, write them in ..... .

a) text **b)** context **c)** message **d)** vocabulary

5. Many students decided to have a summer ..... to improve their English.

a) course **b)** address **c)** number **d)** fire

6. The boys ..... football yesterday evening.

a) play **b)** played **c)** were playing **d)** will play

7. What ..... doing now?

a) is he **b)** does he **c)** will he **d)** did he

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

3

1. Where ..... (you/go) yesterday?

2. What ..... (they/want) to eat for breakfast?

3. What ..... (Nelly/do) when it started to rain?

(1 - 4) Poor (5 - 7) Good (8 - 10) Excellent

3. Advanced Questions

Unit 7

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She ..... the door open to get out of the room.
a) took away **b)** picked **c)** **pulled** **d)** locked

2. I ..... Tamer should accept this job. It's terrible.
a) am thinking **b)** am not thinking
c) **don't think** **d)** think

3. I can't find my favourite toy; it's ..... .
a) lose **b)** losing **c)** **missing** **d)** missed

4. You ..... never speak to your mother like this.
a) won't **b)** will **c)** shouldn't **d)** **should**

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If everyone ..... (shopped) online, the shops in our towns and cities will close. (shops)

2. I ..... (take) you to the cinema if you'd like. (will take)

3. What ..... (should/you) do to feel better is to go home. (you should)

4. Children ..... (shouldn't) not drink sugary drinks. It's not very healthy. (should)

Unit 8

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My favourite snack is ..... potato chips.
a) beaten **b)** chopped **c)** boiled **d)** **fried**

2. The ..... course of the meal was delicious.
a) worried **b)** upset **c)** **main** **d)** calm

3. She likes ..... and dance.
a) **to sing** **b)** to singing **c)** sing **d)** singing

4. Nesma, ... on Fridays. You can enjoy your holiday without working.
a) studies **b)** doesn't study **c)** study **d)** **don't study**

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. There is ..... (any) uniform for each grade in our school. (a)

2. ..... (Some) my friends are good at playing football. (Some of)

3. If Ali doesn't come, ... (will phone) him. (phone)

4. ..... (Little) sugar in your food is harmful for your health. (Much)

Unit 9

1 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. In the museum, I saw a wonderful ..... .

a) script **b)** scenery **c)** description **d)** **portrait**

2. He was a famous ....., but he doesn't play in concerts now.

a) reporter **b)** doctor **c)** painter **d)** **musician**

3. My brother works as a reader to the ..... .

a) deaf **b)** **blind** **c)** dwarf **d)** dumb

4. I ..... this film if you like exciting and scary films.

a) guess **b)** practise **c)** advise **d)** **recommend**

2 **Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. I hope to ..... (able) speak English very well after this course finishes. (be able to)

2. Who ..... (can me help) with the homework? (can help me)

3. I don't know ..... (how) to put my bag, here or over there. (where)

4. Ouch, it hurts! I ..... (able) move my arm at all. (am not able to)

Unit 10

1 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The clouds ..... cotton candy in the sky.

a) **looked like** **b)** look liked **c)** look likes **d)** looking like

2. We met ..... people at the Pyramids.

a) **two very smart** **b)** very two smart

c) very smart two **d)** smart very two

3. I ..... lots of jobs to do at home today.

a) do **b)** **have** **c)** make **d)** take

4. ..... belongs to my brother.

a) Those toys **b)** **That toy** **c)** These ones **d)** One

2 **Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. What about ..... (those) news? (that)

2. The clown was wearing a ..... (big /green/yellow) hat. (big green and yellow)

3. ..... (This flower) smell amazing. (These flowers)

4. A: Let's watch a film. **B:** ..... (That) a good idea. (That's)

Unit 11

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My toy box is full, and I have no space for any ..... toys.
a) extra **b)** based **c)** safe **d)** many

2. I used a/an ..... on my phone to make the picture of the sunset look colourful.
a) array **b)** suitcase **c)** control **d)** filter

3. We are going to go out and ..... a picnic.
a) had **b)** having **c)** have **d)** has

4. He ..... his piano every day this week.
a) is practising **b)** practises **c)** practised **d)** practise

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Be careful or a car ..... (hit) you. (will hit)

2. Salah is the best player in the match. He ..... (score) a goal. (will score)

3. Salah is running fast towards the goal. He ..... (score) a goal. (is going to score)

4. I predict that Tamer ..... (not/get) the job. (won't get)

Unit 12

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To remember new words, put them in ..... sentences.
a) wrote **b)** written **c)** writing **d)** write

2. You can study with our friendly teachers and ..... the afternoons with them.
a) spent **b)** spends **c)** spending **d)** spend

3. If someone asks you for directions, tell ..... where to go.
a) him **b)** her **c)** them **d)** they

4. You are always busy ..... things.
a) in repairing **b)** with repairing **c)** to repairing **d)** repairing

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. He ..... (want) to eat a sandwich now. (wants)

2. The train ..... (leave) at 9:00 a.m. tomorrow. (leaves)

3. When someone ..... (reading) loudly, they have a headache. (reads)

4. In the southwest of Switzerland, people speak a dialect ..... (call) Romansh. (called)